JULY 1976

UNITED STATES STANDARD

FOR

TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES

(TERPS)

CONSOLIDATED REPRINT - AUGUST 1993

This reprint includes Changes 1 thru 15

ARMY ..... TM 95-226
NAVY ..... OPNAV Inst. 3722.16C
AIR FORCE ..... AFM 55-9
COAST GUARD ..... CG 318
FAA Handbook 8260.3B

THIRD EDITION

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

0579LD0544418

RECORD OF CHANGES

DIRECTIVE NO. 8260.3B

CHANGE TO BASIC	SUPPLEMENTS			OPTIONAL USE	CHANGE TO BASIC	SUPPLEMENTS			OPTIONAL USE

FAA Form 1320-5 (5-68) SUPERSEDES PREVIOUS EDITION

GPO : 1968 OF—308-383

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-2000

IN REPLY REFER TO

OPNAVINST 3722.16C CH-8
N885
1 Feb 1994

OPNAV INSTRUCTION 3722.16C CHANGE TRANSMITTAL 8

From: Chief of Naval Operations

Subj: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

Encl: (1) Consolidated Reprint - Includes Changes 1 thru 15

1. Purpose. To revise the Table of Contents, descent gradient table for high altitude jet penetrations using arcs less than 15 miles, provide visibility credit for ODALS on a precision straight-in approach, specific guidance to compute required procedural parameters for some military PAR systems, adds criteria for triple simultaneous ILS procedures, refines criteria for computing visibility for "copter-to-runway" approaches, deletes requirement for Middle Marker for ILS approaches.

2. Action. Replace the basic instruction and all changes through change transmittal 7 with enclosure (1) of this change transmittal.

J. S. FALLS
By direction

Distribution:
(Same as basic)

Stocked:
Naval Aviation Supply Office
Physical Distribution Division, Code 103
5801 Tabor Avenue
Philadelphia, PA 19120-5099 (100 copies)

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE DISTRIBUTION AND REQUISITION

U.S. Navy:

OPNAVINST 3722.16C
7 JUL 1976
Distribution:

SNDL

A6	(HEADQUARTERS, U.S. MARINE CORPS)
21A	(FLEET COMMANDERS IN CHIEF)
22A	(FLEET COMMANDERS)
24A	(NAVAL AIR FORCE COMMANDERS)
26JJ	(FLEET AREA CONTROL AND SURVEILLANCE FACILITY)
27G	(SUPPORT FORCE) (COMNAVSUPPFORANTARCTICA, Only)
28A	(CARRIER GROUP)
C3B	(NAVAL PERSONNEL AT FAA ACTIVITIES)
FA5	(AIR FACILITY LANT)
FA6	(AIR STATION LANT)
FA7	(STATION LANT) (GUANTANAMO BAY, Only)
FA24	(BASE LANT)
FB6	(AIR FACILITY PAC)
FB7	(AIR STATION PAC)
FB10	(STATION PAC) (ADAK, Only)
FB34	(FLEET ACTIVITIES)
FC4	(AIR FACILITY NAVEUR)
FC5	(SUPPORT ACTIVITY NAVEUR)
FKA1A	(AIR SYSTEMS COMMAND HQ) (PMA-213)
FKM19	(PUBLICATIONS AND PRINTING SERVICE)
FKR1A	(AIR STATION NAVAIRSYSCOM)
FR3	(AIR STATION COMNAVAIRRESFOR)
FR4	(AIR FACILITY COMNAVAIRRESFOR)
FR5	(AIR RESERVE)
FT1	(CHIEF OF NAVAL EDUCATION AND TRAINING)
FT2	(CHIEF OF NAVAL AIR TRAINING)
FT5	(CHIEF OF NAVAL TECHNICAL TRAINING)
FT6	(AIR STATION CNET)
FT13	(AIR TECHNICAL TRAINING CENTER)
V3	(MARINE CORPS AIR BASES COMMANDERS)
V4	(MARINE CORPS AIR FACILITY)
V5	(MARINE CORPS AIR STATION)

CNO N88, N885, N885F, N885G(35)

SECNAV/OPNAV DIRECTIVES
CONTROL OFFICE
WASHINGTON NAVY YARD, BLDG. 200
901 M STREET SE
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20374-5074 (25 Copies)

Stocked:
NAVY AVIATION SUPPLY OFFICE
ASO CODE 103
5801 TABOR AVENUE
PHILADELPHIA, PA 19120-5099 (100 Copies)

U.S. Army:

In accordance with DMA Catalog of Maps, Charts, and Related Products
Submit requisition to:
USAASO
Cameron Station
Alexandria, VA 22314

U.S. Air Force:

Submit requisition to:
DMAODS/DDCP
Washington, D.C. 20315

U.S. Coast Guard:

In accordance with COMDTNOTE 5600:
Submit requisition to:
DOT Warehouse
ATTN: M-494.3
1725/35 15th Street NE
Washington, D.C. 20002

PUBLIC AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION. This Handbook is in no way restricted, and the employee to whom it is issued will make it available for review by the public upon request. The public may purchase this document from:

Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY TECHNICAL MANUAL — TM 95-226
DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY — OPNAV Inst. 3722.16C
DEPARTMENT OF THE AIR FORCE MANUAL — AFM 55-9
UNITED STATES COAST GUARD MANUAL — CG 318
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION HANDBOOK — 8260.3B

UNITED STATES STANDARD

FOR

TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES

(TERPS)

July 7, 1976

DEPARTMENTS OF THE ARMY, THE NAVY, AND THE AIR FORCE
THE UNITED STATES COAST GUARD, AND
THE FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

DISTRIBUTION ZFS-826; FAS/FAF/FAT-O (normal); FIA-O (minimum)
FFS 1, 2, 4, 7 (all employees); FFS-3, 5, 6, 8 (minimum)
AAC-954B (25 copies); AAC-840 (1 copy)

For sale by the U.S. Government Printing Office
Superintendent of Documents, Mail Stop: SSOP, Washington, DC 20402-9328
ISBN 0-16-036242-3

FOREWORD

This publication prescribes standardized methods for use in designing instrument flight procedures. It is to be used by all personnel charged with the responsibility for the preparation, approval, and promulgation of terminal instrument procedures. Compliance with criteria contained herein is not a substitute for sound judgment and common sense. These criteria do not relieve procedures specialists and supervisory personnel from exercising initiative or taking appropriate action in recognizing both the capabilities and limitations of aircraft and navigational aid performance. These criteria are predicated on normal aircraft operations for considering obstacle clearance requirements.

The FAA recognizes that the increase in air traffic volume and technical improvements to air navigation systems require continuing emphasis on updating flight procedures standards.

This emphasis will be directed toward reassessment of three basic factors which contribute to overall system accuracy; e.g., ground element, airborne element, and flight technical (pilotage) element.

Analysis of individual ground system performance, using flight check information in the immediate vicinity of the facility used will be pursued in the development of standard values for assessing the dimensions of obstacle clearance areas.

Additionally, recognition will be given to airborne receiver performance to assure that credit is given to accepted improvements made in the state of the art. Concurrently, a review of airborne receiver performance is being conducted to determine whether existing standards need to be changed.

Pilotage error standards will be investigated to determine whether recent technological and operational advances indicate a change to the present standards is required.

Our overall objective is to assure that credit is allowed for improvements made in the ground and airborne environment and to assure that maximum safe use of airspace is realized.

With this in mind, an annual review of this publication by the signatory agencies, in coordination
* with other interested parties, will be conducted at the call of the FAA, Office of Flight Operations. *
More frequent reviews shall be conducted if required by a signatory agency. The FAA will provide approved changes to this publication by means of revision notices as required.

Recommendations concerning changes or additions should be provided to one of the following approving authorities as appropriate:

* OFFICE OF FLIGHT OPERATIONS, FAA, Washington, D.C. 20591 (Civil Procedures) *
DIRECTOR, U.S. Army Air Traffic Control Activity, Aeronautical Services Office (USAATCA–ASO), Cameron Station, Alexandria, Va. 22314
* CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS, OP–554, Washington, D.C. 20350 *
HEADQUARTERS, U.S. Air Force XOORF, Washington, D.C. 20330
COMMANDANT, (G–OSR–2/73) U.S. Coast Guard, Washington, D.C. 20590

These criteria have been officially adopted by the Federal Aviation Administration, the United States Army, the United States Navy, the United States Air Force, and the United States Coast Guard. They are applicable at any location where the United States exercises jurisdiction over flight procedures in terminal areas. In addition, these criteria may be utilized for the development of special instrument approach procedures for use by U.S. military and air carriers at foreign airports.

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARIES OF THE ARMY, NAVY, AIR FORCE, AND TRANSPORTATION.

OFFICIAL:

J. C. PENNINGTON
Brigadier General, United States Army
The Adjutant General

BERNARD W. ROGERS
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

OFFICIAL:

J. W. NANCE
Rear Admiral, U.S. Navy
Assistant Vice Chief of Naval Operations/Director of Naval Administration

OFFICIAL:

VAN L. CRAWFORD, Jr.
Colonel, USAF
Director of Administration Services

LEW ALLEN, Jr.
General, United States Air Force
Chief of Staff

NORMAN C. VENZKE
Rear Admiral, United States Coast Guard
Chief, Office of Operations

*

KENNETH S. HUNT
Director of Flight Operations
Federal Aviation Administration *

TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page No.
Foreword		iii
CHAPTER 1.	ADMINISTRATIVE	
Section 1.	Scope	1
1.	Purpose	1
2.	Distribution	1
3.	Cancellation	1
4.	Existing Procedures	1
5.	Types of Procedures	1
6.	Word Meanings	1
7.-119	Reserved	
Section 2.	Eligibility, Approval, and Retention	1
120.	Eligibility	1
121.	Requests for Procedures	1
122.	Approval	2
123.	Retention and Cancellation	2
124.-129.	Reserved	3
Section 3.	Responsibility and Jurisdiction	3
130.	Responsibility	3
131.	Jurisdiction	3
132.-139.	Reserved	3
Section 4.	Establishment	3
140.	Formulation	3
141.	Nonstandard Procedures	3
142.	Changes	4
143.-149.	Reserved	4
Section 5.	Coordination	4
150.	Coordination	4
151.	Coordination Conflicts	4
152.-159.	Reserved	4

Section 6.	Identification of Procedures	5
160.	Identification of Procedures	5
161.	Straight-In Procedures Identification	5
162.	Circling Procedure Identification	5
163.	Differentiation	5
164.-169.	Reserved	5
Section 7.	Publication	5
170.	Submission	5
171.	Issuance	5
172.	Effective Date	5
173.-199.	Reserved	5
CHAPTER 2.	GENERAL CRITERIA	
200.	Scope	7
201.-209.	Reserved	7
Section 1.	Common Information	7
210.	Units of Measurement	7
211.	Positive Course Guidance	7
212.	Approach Categories	7
213.	Approach Category Application	8
214.	Procedure Construction	8
215.	Controlling Obstacle(s)	8
216.-219.	Reserved	8
Section 2.	En Route Operations	8
220.	Feeder Routes	8
221.	Minimum Safe Altitudes	8
222.-229.	Reserved	10
Section 3.	Initial Approach	
230.	Initial Approach Segment	10
231.	Altitude Selection	10
232.	Initial Approach Segments Based on Straight Courses and Arcs with Positive Course Guidance	10
233.	Initial Approach Segment Based on Dead Reckoning (DR)	11
234.	Initial Approach Segment Based on a Procedure Turn	13
235.	Initial Approach Segment Based on a High Altitude Teardrop Penetration	14

236.	Initial Approach Course Reversal Using Noncollocated Facilities and a Turn of 120° or Greater to Intercept the Inbound Course	15
237.-239.	Reserved	16-1
Section 4.	Intermediate Approaches	16-1
240.	Intermediate Approach Segment	16-1
241.	Altitude Selection	16-1
242.	Intermediate Approach Segment Based on Straight Courses	17
243.	Intermediate Approach Segment Based on an Arc	18
244.	Intermediate Approach Segment within a Procedure Turn (PT)	18
245.-249.	Reserved	20-1
Section 5.	Final Approach	19
250.	Final Approach Segment	19
251.	Visual Portion of the Final Approach Segment	19
252.	Descent Gradient	21
253.-259.	Reserved	21
Section 6.	Circling Approach	21
260.	Circling Approach Area	21
261.	Circling Approach Area Not Considered for Obstacle Clearance	21
262.-269.	Reserved	21
Section 7.	Missed Approach	22
270.	Missed Approach Segment	22
271.	Missed Approach Alignment	22
272.	Missed Approach Point (MAP)	22
273.	Straight Missed Approach Point	22
274.	Straight Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance	22
275.	Turning Missed Approach Area	23
276.	Turning Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance	26
277.	Combination Straight & Turning Missed Approach Area	27
278.	End of Missed Approach	29
279.	Reserved	29

Section 8.		Terminal Area Fixes	29
	280.	General	29
	281.	Fixes Formed by Intersection	29
	282.	DME Fixes	29
*	283.	Fixes Formed by Radar	29 *
	284.	Fix Displacement Area	29
	285.	Intersection Fix Displacement Factors	29
	286.	Other Fix Displacement Factors	31
	287.	Satisfactory Fixes	31
	288.	Using Fixes for Descent	33
	289.	Obstacles Close to a Final Approach or Stepdown Fix	34
Section 9.		Holding	35
	290.	Holding Patterns	35
	291.	Alignment	35
	292.	Area	35
	293.	Obstacle Clearance	36
	294.-299.	Reserved	36
CHAPTER 3.		TAKEOFF & LANDING MINIMUMS	
	300.	Application	37
	301.-309.	Reserved	37
Section 1.		General Information	37
	310.	Establishment	37
	311.	Publication	37
	312.-319.	Reserved	37
Section 2.		Altitudes	37
	320.	Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA)	37
	321.	MDA for Straight-In Approach	37
	322.	MDA for Circling Approach	37
	323.	Minimums Adjustments	37
	324.	Decision Height (DH)	38
	325.-329.	Reserved	38
Section 3.		Visibilities	38
	330.	Establishment of Visibility Minimums	38
	331.	Effect of HAT/HAA and Facility Distance on Straight-In and Circling Visibility Minimums	39
	332.	Effect of Obstacles	40
	333.	Runway Visual Range (RVR)	40

334.	Runway Requirements for Approval of RVR	40
335.	Comparable Values of RVR and Ground Visibility	40
336.-339.	Reserved	40
Section 4.	Visibility Credit for Lights	40
340.	General	40
341.	Standard Lighting Systems	40
342.	Operational Conditions	40
343.	Visibility Reduction	41
344.	Other Lighting Systems	42
345.-349.	Reserved	42
Section 5.	Standard Minimums	42
350.	Standard Straight-In Minimums	42
351.	Standard Circling Minimums	42
352.-359.	Reserved	42
Section 6.	Alternate Minimums	42
360.	Standard Alternate Minimums	42
361.-369.	Reserved	42
Section 7.	Departures	42
370.	Standard Takeoff Minimums	42
371.-399.	Reserved	44-1
CHAPTER 4.	ON-AIRPORT VOR (NO FAF)	
400.	General	45
401.-409.	Reserved	45
Section 1.	Low Altitude Procedures	45
410.	Feeder Routes	45
411.	Initial Approach Segment	45
412.	Intermediate Segment	45
413.	Final Approach Segment	45
414.	Missed Approach Segment	47
415.-419.	Reserved	47
Section 2.	High Altitude Teardrop Penetrations	47
420.	Feeder Routes	47
421.	Initial Approach Segment	47
422.	Intermediate Segment	47
423.	Final Approach Segment	47

424.	Missed Approach Segment	49
425.-429.	Reserved	49
CHAPTER 5.	TACAN, VOR/DME, AND VOR WITH FAF	
500.	General	51
501.-599.	Reserved	51
Section 1.	VOR with FAF	51
510.	Feeder Routes	51
511.	Initial Approach Segment	51
512.	Intermediate Approach Segment	51
513.	Final Approach Segment	51
514.	Missed Approach Segment	55
515.-519.	Reserved	56
Section 2.	TACAN and VOR/DME	56
520.	Feeder Routes	56
521.	Initial Segment	56
522.	Intermediate Segment	56
523.	Final Approach Segment	56
524.	Missed Approach Segment	57
525.-599.	Reserved	57
CHAPTER 6.	NDB PROCEDURES, ON-AIRPORT FACILITY, NO FAF	
600.	General	59
601.-609.	Reserved	59
Section 1.	Low Altitude Procedures	59
610.	Feeder Routes	59
611.	Initial Approach Segment	59
612.	Intermediate Segment	59
613.	Final Approach Segment	59
614.	Missed Approach Segment	61
615.-619.	Reserved	61
Section 2.	High Altitude Penetrations	61
620.	Feeder Routes	61
621.	Initial Approach Segment	61
622.	Intermediate Segment	61
623.	Final Approach Segment	61
624.	Missed Approach Segment	63
625.-699.	Reserved	63

CHAPTER 7. NDB WITH FAF

700. General 65
701.-709. Reserved 65

Section 1. NDB with FAF 65

710. Feeder Routes 65
711. Initial Approach Segment 65
712. Intermediate Approach Segment 65
713. Final Approach Segment 65
714. Missed Approach Segment 68
715.-799. Reserved 68

CHAPTER 8. VHF/UHF DF PROCEDURES

800. General 71
801.-809. Reserved 71

Section 1. VHF/UHF DF Criteria 71

810. En Route Operations 71
811. Initial Approach Segment 71
812. Intermediate Approach Segment 72
813. Final Approach Segment 72
814. Missed Approach Segment 73
815.-819. Reserved 73

Section 2. Communications 73

820. Transmission Interval 73
821.-829. Reserved 73

Section 3. Minimums 73

830. Approach Minimums 73
831.-899. Reserved 73

CHAPTER 9. INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM (ILS)

900. General 75
901. Definition of Types 75
902.-909. Reserved 75

Section 1.		ILS Category I Components	75	
	910.	System Components	75	
*	911.	Compass Locator (LOM, LMM)	75	*
	912.	Distance Measuring Equipment (DME)	75	
*	913.	Inoperative Components	75	*
	914.-919.	Reserved	75	
Section 2.		ILS Category I Criteria	75	
	920.	Feeder Routes	75	
	921.	Initial Approach Segment	75	
	922.	Intermediate Segment	76	
	923.	Descent Gradient	76	
	924.	Altitude Selection	76	
	925.-929.	Reserved	76	
Section 3.		ILS Category I Final Approach	77	
*	930.	Final Approach Segment	77	*
	931.	Final Approach Obstacle Clearance Surface	77	
	932.	Transitional Surfaces	77	
	933.	Deleted	78	
	934.	Obstacle Clearance Outside the DH Point	78	
*	935.	Obstacle Clearance Inside the DH Point	78	*
	936.	Glide Slope	78	
	937.	Relocation of Glide Slope	80	
	938.	Decision Height	80	
	939.	Reserved	80	
Section 4.		ILS Category I Missed Approach	81	
	940.	Missed Approach Segment	81	
	941.	Missed Approach Point (MAP)	81	
	942.	Straight Missed Approach	81	
	943.	Turning Missed Approach	81	
	944.	Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance	82	
	945.	Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach Area	82	
	946.-949.	Reserved	82	
Section 5.		Localizer and LDA	82	
	950.	Feeder Routes, Initial Approach, and Intermediate Segments	82	
	951.	Use of Localizer Only	83	
	952.	Alignment	83	
	953.	Area	83	
	954.	Obstacle Clearance	84	

	955.	Descent Gradient	84
	956.	Minimum Descent Altitude	84
	957.	Missed Approach Segment	84
	958.-959.	Reserved	84
Section 6.		ILS Category II	84
	960.-969.	Reserved	84
Section 7.		ILS Category III	84
	970.-979.	Reserved	84
Section 8.		Reserved	84
	980.-989.	Reserved	84
Section 9.		Simultaneous ILS Procedures	84
	990.	General	84
	991.	System Components	84
*	992.	Inoperative Components	84 *
	993.	Feeder Routes	84
	994.	Initial Approach Segment	84
	995.	Intermediate Approach Segment	85
	996.	Final Approach Segment	85
*	997.	Final Approach Course Standards	85
	998.	Missed Approach Segment	85
	999.	Reserved	85 *
CHAPTER 10.		RADAR PROCEDURES	
	1000.	General	87
	1000.-1009.	Reserved	87
Section 1.		Precision Approach Radar (PAR)	87
	1010.	System Components	87
	1011.	Inoperative Components	87
	1012.	Lost Communication Procedures	87
	1013.	Feeder Routes and Initial Approach Segments	87
	1014.	Intermediate Approach Segment	87
	1015.	Descent Gradient	87
	1016.	Altitude Selection	88
	1017.-1019.	Reserved	88

Section 2.	PAR Final Approach	88
1020.	Final Approach Segment	88
1021.	Final Approach Obstacle Clearance Surface	88
1022.	Transitional Surfaces	89
1023.	Deleted	89
1024.	Obstacle Clearance Outside the DH Point	89
1025.	Obstacle Clearance Inside the DH Point	89
1026.	Glide Slope	89
1027.	Relocation of Glide Slope	90
1028.	Decision Height (DH)	90
1029.	Reserved	90
Section 3.	PAR Missed Approach	90
1030.	Missed Approach Segment	90
1031.	Missed Approach Point (MAP)	90
1032.	Straight Missed Approach	90
1033.	Turning Missed Approach	92
1034.	Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance	92
1035.	Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach	93
1036.-1039.	Reserved	93
Section 4.	Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR)	93
1040.	General	93
1041.	Initial Approach Segment	93
1042.	Intermediate Approach Segment	95
1043.	Altitude Selection	96
1044.	Final Approach Segment	96
1045.	Deviation from Established Radar Patterns	98
1046.	Radar Monitor	98
1047.	Lost Communication Procedures	98
1048.	Missed Approach Segment	98
1049.	Reserved	98
Section 5.	Simultaneous PAR Procedures	98
1050.	General	98
1051.-1059.	Reserved	98
Section 6.	Airborne Radar Procedures	98
1060.	General	98
1061.-1099.	Reserved	98

CHAPTER 11. HELICOPTER PROCEDURES

Section 1. Administrative 99

1100. General 99
1101. Terminology 99
1102. Deleted 99
1103. Type of Procedure 99
1104. Facilities for which Criteria are not Provided 99
1105. Procedure Identification 99

Section 2. General Criteria 99

1106. Application 99
1107. Point in Space Approach 100
1108. Approach Categories 100
1109. Procedure Construction 100
1110. Descent Gradient 100
1111. Initial Approach Segments Based on Straight Courses and Arcs with Positive Course Guidance 100
1112. Initial Approach Based on a Procedure Turn 100
1113. Intermediate Approach Segment Based on Straight Courses 101
1114. Intermediate Approach Segment Based on an Arc 101
1115. Intermediate Segment within a Procedure Turn Segment 101
1116. Final Approach 101
1117. Missed Approach Point 101
1118. Straight Missed Approach Point 101
1119. Straight Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 102
1120. Turning Missed Approach Area 102
1121. Turning Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 102
1122. Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach 102
1123. Holding Alignment 102
1124. Holding Area 102

Section 3. Takeoff and Landing Minimums 102

1125. Application 102
1126. Altitudes 102
1127. Visibility 102
1128. Visibility Credit 103
1129. Takeoff Minimums 104

Section 4.	On-Heliport VOR (No FAF)	104
1130.	General	104
1131.	Initial and Intermediate Segments	104
1132.	Final Approach Segment	104
Section 5.	TACAN, VOR/DME, and VOR with FAF	104
1133.	Final Approach Segment	104
1134.	Reserved	104
1135.	Missed Approach Point	104
1136.	Arc Final Approach Segment Radius	105
1137.	Arc Final Approach Segment Alignment	105
1138.	Reserved	105
Section 6.	On-Heliport NDB, No FAF	105
1139.	General	105
1140.	Final Approach Segment	105
Section 7.	NDB Procedures with FAF	106
1141.	General	106
1142.	Final Approach Segment	106
1143.	Missed Approach Point	106
Section 8.	Reserved	106
1144.-1149.	Reserved	106
Section 9.	ILS Procedures	106
1150.	General	106
1151.	Intermediate Approach Segment	106
1152.	Final Approach Segment	106
1153.	Missed Approach Area	106
1154.	Microwave ILS	106
1155.	Localizer and LDA	106
Section 10.	Precision Approach Radar (PAR)	107
1156.	Intermediate Approach Segment	107
1157.	Reserved	107
1158.	Final Approach Segment	107
1159.	Final Approach Alignment	107
1160.	Final Approach Area	107
1161.	Reserved	107
1162.	Final Approach Obstacle Clearance Surface	107
1163.	Transitional Surfaces	108
1164.	Obstacle Clearance	108

1165.	Glide Slope	108
1166.	Relocation of the Glide Slope	108
1167.	Adjustment of DH	108
1168.	Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance	108
1169.	Straight Missed Approach Area	109
1170.	Turning Missed Approach Area	110
1171.	Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach Area	110
Section 11.	Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR)	111
1172.	Initial Approach Segment	111
1173.	Intermediate Approach Segment	112
1174.	Final Approach Segment	112
1175.	Missed Approach Point	112
1176.-1199.	Reserved	112
CHAPTER 12.	DEPARTURE PROCEDURES	
1200.	General	113
1201.	Application	113
1202.	Diverse Departures	113
1203.	Departure Routes	114
1204.	Early Turns	122
1205.	Climb Gradients	123
1206.	End of Departure	123
1207.	Published Information	123
1208.	Required Ceiling and Visibility Minimums	124
1209.-1299.	Reserved	124
CHAPTER 13.	RESERVED	125
CHAPTER 14.	SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITIES (SDF) PROCEDURES	
1400.	General	137
1401.-1409.	Reserved	137
1410.	Feeder Routes	137
1411.	Initial Approach Segment	137
1412.	Intermediate Approach Segment	137
1413.	Final Approach Segment	137
1414.	Missed Approach Segment	138
1415.	Back Course Procedures	138
1416.-1499.	Reserved	138

* CHAPTER 15.	AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV)	
1500.	General	15-1
1501.	Terminology	15-1
1502.	Procedure Construction	15-2
1503.	Identification of RNAV Instrument Approach Procedures (IAP)	15-6
1504.	Reference Facilities	15-6
1505.	Waypoints	15-6
1506.	RWY WP and APT WP	15-7
1507.	Holding	15-7
1508.-1509.	Reserved	15-7
Section 1.	En Route Criteria	15-7
1510.	En Route Obstacle Clearance Areas	15-7
1511.	Obstacle Clearance	15-11
1512.	Feeder Routes	15-11
1513.-1519.	Reserved	15-12
Section 2.	Terminal Criteria	15-12
1520.	Term Turning Area Expansion	15-12
1521.	Initial Approach Segment	15-13
1522.	Intermediate Segment	15-15
1523.	Final Approach Segment	15-16
1524.-1529.	Reserved	15-18
Section 3.	Missed Approach	15-18
1530.	General	15-18
1531.	Missed Approach Segment	15-18
1532.	Missed Approach Point	15-19
1533.	Straight Missed Approach	15-19
1534.	Turning Missed Approach	15-21
1535.	Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach	15-21
1536.	Clearance Limit	15-24
1537.-1539.	Reserved	15-24
Section 4.	Approach Minimums	15-24
1540.	Approach Minimums	15-24
1541.-1599.	Reserved	15-24 *
CHAPTER 16.	RESERVED	171

CHAPTER 17. ENROUTE CRITERIA

1700.-1709. Reserved 173

Section 1. VHF Obstacle Clearance Areas 173

1710. Enroute Obstacle Clearance Areas 173
1711. Primary Areas 173
1712. Secondary Areas 173
1713. Turning Area 174
1714. Application of Turning Area Criteria 175
1715. Turn Area Template 175
1716. Changeover Points (COP) 178
1717. Course Change Effect 179
1718. Minimum Enroute Instrument Altitudes (MEA) 179
1719. Protected Enroute Areas 180

Section 2. VHF Obstacle Clearance 180

1720. Obstacle Clearance, Primary Area 180
1721. Obstacle Clearance, Secondary Areas 180
1722. Obstacle Clearance Graph 181
1723.-1729. Reserved 182

Section 3. Altitudes 182

1730. Minimum Crossing Altitudes (MCA) 182
1731. Enroute Minimum Holding Altitudes 183
1732.-1739. Reserved 183

Section 4. Navigational Gaps 183

1740. Navigational Gap Criteria 183
1741.-1749. Reserved 185

Section 5. Low Frequency Airways or Routes 185

1750. LF Airways or Routes 185
1751.-1759. Reserved 186

Section 6. Minimum Divergence Angles 186

1760. General 186
1761. VHF Fixes 186
1762. LF or VHF/LF Fixes 187
1763.-1799. Reserved 187

Appendix 1. (3 Pages)

1. Appendix Application 1
2. Glossary 1

Appendix 2. (17 Pages)

1. Secondary Areas 1
2. Secondary Area Obstacle Problems 1
3. Width of Intermediate Approach Secondary Area 1
4. Intermediate Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance 1
5. Initial Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance 1
6. Width of Final Approach Secondary Area 1
7. Final Approach Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance 5
8. VHF/UHF DF and High Altitude Penetrations 6
9. Computing Glide Slope Threshold Crossing Height 6
10. Computation of GPI when TCH is Known 10
* 11. Application of ILS/PAR Obstacle Clearance Criteria . . . . . 11 *
12. Analysis of Obstacle Clearance 14

Appendix 3. (2 Pages)

1. References 1

Appendix 4. (5 Pages)

1. Table of Tangents 1

Appendix 5. (7 Pages)

1. Approach Lighting Systems 1
2. Nonstandard Systems 1
3. ALSF-1 1
4. ALSF-2 2
5. SALS 3
6. SSALS, SSALF, and SSALR 3
7. MALS, MALSF, and MALSR 4
8. ODALS 5
9. LDIN 6
10. REIL 7
12. MIRL 7
13. TDZ/CL 7

Appendix 6. (21 Pages)

1. Alphabetical Index 1

List of Tables

*	1.	Descent Gradient on an ARC	11
	1A.	Procedure Turn Completion Altitude Difference	14 *
	2.	Penetration Turn Distance/Divergence	15
	2A.	Minimum Distance from Rollout Point to Point of Intersection	16-1
	3.	Minimum Intermediate Course Length	17
	4.	Circling Approach Area Radii	21
	5.	Turning Missed Approach Radii	23
	5A.	Stepdown Fixes in Intermediate Segment	34
	6.	Effect of HAT/HAA on Visibility Minimums	39
	6A.	Effect of Facility Distance on Visibility Minimums	39
	7.	Comparable Values of RVR and Ground Visibility	40
	8.	Standard Lighting Systems	41
*	9.	Civil Standard Straight-In Minimums	43 *
	10.	Military Standard Straight-In Minimums	44
	11.	Standard Circling Minimums	44a
	12.	Standard Alternate Minimums	44a
	13.	Standard Civil Takeoff Minimums	44a
	14.	Minimum Length of Final Approach Segment - VOR	55
	15.	Minimum Length of Final Approach Segment - NDB	67
	16.	Deleted.	
	17.	Deleted.	
	18.	Intersection Angle vs. Length of Intermediate Segment - ILS	76
	19.	ILS Category I GS Angle vs. Slopes of Surfaces	78
	20.	Intermediate Segment Angle of Intercept vs. Segment Length	87
	21.	GS Angle vs. Final Approach Surface, PAR	89
	22.	Interception Angle vs. Length of Intermediate Segment	95
	23.	Procedure Turn Completion Altitude Difference	100
	24.	Minimum Intermediate Course Length	101
	25.	Effect of MDA Height on Visibility Minimums	104
	26.	Minimum Length of Final Approach Segment (Miles)	104
	27.	Intermediate Segment Angle of Intercept vs. Segment Length	107
	28.	Final Approach Glide Slope Surface Slope Angles	108
	29.	Minimum DH - GS Angle Relationship	108
	30.	Beginning Point of Missed Approach Surface	109
	31.	Departure Turn Radii	117
*	15-1.	VOR/DME En Route and Terminal Fix Displacement Tolerance	15-29
	15-2.	Final/Missed Area Fix Displacement Tolerance	15-30
	15-3.	Non-VOR/DME Fix Displacement Tolerance	15-31

15-4. Minimum Length of Final Approach Segment (NM) 15-31
15-5. Effect of Crosstrack Tolerance on Visibility Minimums 15-32
15-6. Minimum Leg Length from MAP to Next WP Using RNAV Missed Approach Procedure ..... 15-32 *

List of Figures

1. Segment of an Approach Procedure 9
2. Minimum Sector Altitudes 10
3. Initial Approach Interception Angle Greater than 90 Degrees 10
4A. Most Common DR Segment 10
4B. DR Segment with Boundary Inside the Intermediate Segment 12
4C. DR Segment with Boundary Interceptive the Intermediate Segment 12
* 4D. DR Segment with Boundary Inside the Straight Initial Segment 12-1
4E. DR Initial Segment with Boundary Outside the Intermediate Segment ..... 12-1 *
5. Procedure Turn Areas 13
6. Procedure Turn Initial Approach Area 14
7. Deleted.
8. Typical Penetration Turn Initial Approach Area 15
8A. Examples of Initial Approach Course Reversal 16
9. Penetration Turn Initial Approach Obstacle Clearance 16-2
10. Typical Approach Segments 17
11. Intermediate Area within the Procedure Turn Area 19
12. Intermediate Area within the Procedure Turn Area 19
13. Intermediate Area within the Procedure Turn Area 19
14. Intermediate Area within the Procedure Turn Area 20
14A. Intermediate Area within Procedure Turn Area 20
14B. Use of PT Fix for IF 20-1
14C. Visual Descent Point Obstacle Clearance Surface (With VASI) 20-2
14D. Visual Descent Point Obstacle Clearance Surface (With VASI) 20-2
14E. Visual Descent Point Obstacle Clearance Surface (Without VASI) 20-2
15. Construction of Circling Approach Area 21
16. Straight Missed Approach Area 22
17. Straight Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 22
18. Missed Approach Cross Section 23

19. Turning Missed Approach Area 23
20. Turning Missed Approach Area 24
21. Turning Missed Approach Area 24
22. Turning Missed Approach Area 25
23. Turning Missed Approach Area 25
24. Turning Missed Approach Area 26
25. Turning Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 27
26. Turning Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 27
27. Combination Missed Approach Area 28
28. Intersection Fix Displacement 30
29. Intermediate or Initial Approach Fix Errors 31
30. Minimum Divergence Angle for Holding Fixes 32
31. Measurement of Final Approach Fix Error 32
32. Final Approach Fix Error Buffer 32
33. Distance for Descent Gradient Application 33
34. Obstacle Clearance Area Between Fixes 33
34A. Construction of Fix Displacement Area for Obstacle Clearance 33
35. Final Segment Stepdown Fix 34
35A. Fix Displacement Nomograph 34
35B. Fix Displacement Computations 35
36. Obstacles Close-in to a Fix 36
37. Holding Pattern Template Application 36
37A. Climbing in a Holding Pattern 36
* 37B. Distance Remoted (d_R) 38-2
37C. Elevation Differential Area (EDA) 38-2
37D. Application of Lateral Coverage Angles of Table 8 . . . . . 41 *
38. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course, VOR 46
39. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course 46
40. Final Approach Primary and Secondary Areas 46
41. Procedure Turn Altitude 47
42. Use of Stepdown Fix 47
43. Penetration Turn 48
44. Typical Low Altitude Approach Segments 52
45. Typical High Altitude Segments 53
46. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course 53
47. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course 53
48. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course 54
49. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course 54
50. Final Approach Trapezoid 54
51. Typical Straight-in Final Approaches 55
52. Missed Approach Point 56
53. Arc Final Approach Alignment 56
54. Arc Final Approach Area 57
55. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course 50
56. Alignment Options for Final Approach Course 60
57. Final Approach Primary & Secondary Areas 60
58. Procedure Turn Altitude 61

	59.	Use of Stepdown Fix	61
	60.	Penetration Turn	62
	61.	Alignment Options for Final Approach Course NDB	65
	62.	Alignment Options for Final Approach Course NDB	65
	63.	Alignment Options for Final Approach Course NDB	66
	64.	Alignment Options for Final Approach Course NDB	66
	65.	Final Approach Trapezoid, NDB	66
	66.	Typical Final Approach Areas, NDB	67
	67.	Missed Approach Point NDB	68
	68.	Deleted.	
	69.	Deleted.	
	70.	Deleted.	
	71.	Deleted.	
	72.	Low Altitude DF Approach Area	71
	73.	High Altitude DF Approach Area	71
	74.	DF Intermediate Approach Area	72
	75.	Intermediate Segment vs. Angle of Intersection	76
	76.	ILS Category I Final Approach Area	77
	77.	ILS Category I Final Approach Area Obstacle Clearance	79
	78.	GS Antenna Location vs. Height	80
	79.	Adjustment of DH	81
	80.	ILS Straight Missed Approach Area	81
	81.	ILS Turning Missed Approach Area	82
	82.	Combination Missed Approach Area	83
	83.-95.	Reserved.	
*	96A.	Initial Approach Segment, Simultaneous ILS	86
	96B.	Initial Approach Segment for Triple Simultaneous ILS	86
	97A.	Dual Simultaneous ILS "No Transgression and Normal Operating Zones"	86-1
	97B.	Triple Simultaneous ILS "No Transgression and Normal Operating Zones"	86-1 (and 86-2) *
	98.	PAR Final Approach Area	88
	99.	PAR Obstacle Clearance Nomograph	91
	100.	PAR Straight Missed Approach Area	92
	101.	PAR Turning Missed Approach Area	92
	102.	Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach Area	94
	103.	Typical ASR Approach Segments	96
	104.	Examples of ASR Final Approach Area Dimensions	97
	105.	Helicopter Procedure Turn Area	100
	106.	Combination Missed Approach Area	103
	107.	Final Approach Primary and Secondary Area	104
	108.	Missed Approach Points	105
	109.	Final Approach Primary and Secondary Area	105
	110.	PAR Final Approach Area	107
	111.	Final Approach Area Surface and Obstacle Clearance	109

113.	Straight Missed Approach	110
114.	Turning Missed Approach Area	111
115.	Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach	112
116A.	Zone 1 Diverse Departure	113
116B.	Zone 2 Diverse Departure	113
116C.	Zone 3 Diverse Departure	114
116D.	Straight Departure Area without Course Guidance	114
116E.	Straight Departure with Course Guidance from On Airfield Facility	114
116F.	Straight Departure with Course Guidance from Off Airfield Facility	115
116G.	Straight Departure with Offset Departure Course	116
116H.	Departure Area when Localizer is Used for Course Guidance	116
116I.	Turn of More than 15° but Less than 30° Over Facility	118
116J.	Turn of 30° or More Over Facility	119
116K.	Turning Departure	120
116L.	Combination Straight and Turning Departure	121
116M.	Combination Straight and Turning Departure (to Intercept Radial or Bearing)	122
116N.	Distance from DER (NM) & Runway Reduction (1000's of Feet)	123
14-1.	Final Approach Areas with FAF	138
* 15-1.	Cones of Ambiguity	15-3
15-2.	Area Navigation Route Width Summary	15-4
15-3.	Location of Airport WP	15-7
15-4.	VOR/DME Basic Area	15-8
15-5.	VOR/DME Basic Area	15-8
15-6.	Unequal Joining Route Segments	15-8
15-7.	Unequal Joining Route Segments with a Turn	15-9
15-8.	Termination Points	15-9
15-9.	Expanded Turning Areas	15-10
15-10.	Feeder Routes Connecting Non-VOR/DME Basic Areas	15-12
15-11.	VOR/DME Secondary Areas Splay 4.9°	15-12
15-12.	Turn Anticipation Splay	15-13
15-13.	Shallow-Angled Turn Anticipation Illustrations. Tapering Intermediate and Constant Width Segment. ROC Applications	15-13
15-14.	Turn Anticipation Areas	15-14
15-15.	Holding Pattern and Final Approach, and Associated ROC	15-14
15-16.	Initial, Intermediate, Final Approach, and Associated ROC	15-14
15-17.	Initial, Intermediate, Final Approach, and Associated ROC	15-14
15-18.	VOR/DME Basic Area	15-15
15-19.	RNAV Descent Angle	15-18 *

* 15-20.	Straight Missed Approach at the RWY WP	15-19
15-21.	Straight Missed Approach at an ATD Fix	15-20
15-22.	Construction of Straight Missed Approach when Turns ≤ 15° Cause Outside Boundary to Cross Inside MAP Fix Displacement Tolerance at RWY WP	15-20
15-23.	Construction of Straight Missed Approach when Turns ≤ 15° Cause Outside Boundary to Cross Inside MAP Fix Displacement Tolerance at an ATD Fix	15-21
15-24.	Wide and Narrow Missed Approach Methodology	15-22
15-25.	RNAV Turning Missed Approach, 90° or Less	15-25
15-26.	RNAV Turning Missed Approach, More than 90° Up to 120°	15-25
15-27.	Direct Turning Missed Approach, ≤ 90° Tie-Back Point C_1 to Point C	15-25
15-28.	Direct Turning Missed Approach, > 90° Tie-Back Point C_1 to Point D	15-25
15-29.	Direct Turning Missed Approach, > 90°	15-26
15-30.	Direct Turning Missed Approach > 180°	15-26
15-31.	RNAV Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach 90° Turn or Less	15-26
15-32.	RNAV Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach More than 90° Up to 120°	15-26
15-33.	Climb to Altitude, Straight and Turning Missed, C_1 Prior to Base Line	15-27
15-34.	Climb to Altitude, Straight and Turning Missed Approach > 90°	15-27
15-35.	Climb to Altitude, Straight and Turning Missed Approach > 90°	15-27
15-36.	Climb to Altitude, Straight and Turning Missed Approach > 180°	15-28 *
17-1.	Primary Obstacle Clearance Area	173
17-2.	Primary Obstacle Clearance Area	173
17-3.	Secondary Obstacle Clearance Area	173
17-4.	Secondary Obstacle Clearance Areas	173
17-5.	Turn Angle vs. Distance	175
17-6.	Fix Displacement	175
17-7.	Turning Area Template	176
17-8.	Turning Area - Intersection Fix	176
17-9.	Turning Area - Intersection Fix	177
17-10.	Turning Area - Overhead the Facility	177
17-11.	COP Effect	178
17-12.	COP Effect	178
17-13.	Offset COP	179
17-14.	Dogleg Segment	179
17-15.	Course Change Effect	179
17-16.	Application of Secondary Areas	179
17-17.	Cross Section, Secondary Obstacle Clearances	181
17-18.	Plan View, Secondary Area Obstacle Clearances	181

	17-17.	Cross Section, Secondary Obstacle Clearances	181
	17-18.	Plan View, Secondary Area Obstacle Clearances	181
	17-19.	Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance	182
	17-20.	MCA Determination Point	182
	17-21.	Determination of MCA	182
	17-22.	MEA with Navigation Gap at Turning Point	183
	17-23.	Navigation Course Guidance Gap	184
	17-24.	LF Segment Primary Obstacle Clearance Area	185
	17-25.	LF Segment Secondary Obstacle Clearance Area	185
	17-26.	LF Segment Obstacle Clearance with 25 NM of Enroute Facility	186
	17-27.	LF Segment Obstacle Clearance Over 25 NM from Enroute Facility	186
	17-28.	Minimum Divergence Angle for Radio Fix	187
	121.	Secondary Area Obstacle Problems	App. 2 page 2
	122.	Width of Intermediate Secondary Area	App. 2 page 3
	123.	Initial & Intermediate Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance	App. 2 page 4
	124.	Width of Final Approach Secondary Area	App. 2 page 5
	125.	Final Approach Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance	App. 2 page 6
	126.	Final Approach Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance	App. 2 page 7
	127.	Final Approach Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance	App. 2 page 8
	128.	Computing TCH	App. 2 page 8
	129.	RPI/GPI/TCH Computations for ILS with Rapidly Dropping Terrain	App. 2 page 10
	129A.	RPI/GPI/TCH Computations for ILS with Relatively Smooth Terrain	App. 2 page 11
	129B.	RPI/GPI/TCH Computation for PAR	App. 2 page 12
	129C.	RPI/GPI/TCH Computation for USN/USA PAR	App. 2 page 12-1
	130.	Relationship of GS Angle, TCH, and Distance from GPI	App. 2 page 13
*	131.	Final Approach Area Segments	App. 2 page 14 *
	132.	GS Angle vs. Slope of Surfaces	App. 2 page 15
*	133.	Application of Obstacle Clearance	App. 2 page 16 *
	134.	Standard U.S. ALSF-1	App. 5 page 1
	135.	Systems Equivalent to U.S. Standard A_1	App. 5 page 2
	136.	Systems Equivalent to SALS, SSALS, SSALF, MALS, and MALSF	App. 5 page 3
	137.	Simplified Short Approach Light Systems	App. 5 page 3
	138.	Systems Equivalent to SSALR and MALSR	App. 5 page 4
	139.	Medium Intensity Approach Lighting Systems	App. 5 page 5
	140.	Omnidirectional, Lead-In, and Runway End Identifier Lighting Systems	App. 5 page 5
	141.	Systems Equivalent to U.S. ODALS	App. 5 page 6

142. System Equivalent to LDIN . . . . . App. 5 page 6
143. Touchdown Zone Centerline Lights . . . . . App. 5 page 7

CHAPTER 1. ADMINISTRATIVE

Section 1. Scope

1. PURPOSE. This Handbook contains criteria which shall be used to formulate, review, approve, and publish procedures for instrument approach and departure of aircraft to and from civil and military airports. These criteria are for application at any location over which an appropriate United States agency exercises jurisdiction.

* **2. DISTRIBUTION.** This order is distributed to selected Federal Aviation Administration addressees. For distribution within the Department of Defense see pages v and vi. *

3. CANCELLATION. The United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS) 8260.3A, TM 11-2557-26, OPNAV Inst. 3722.16B, JAFM 55-9, and CG 318, dated February 6, 1970, are canceled.

4. EXISTING PROCEDURES. Existing procedures shall comply with these standards. Approval of nonstandard procedures as required is specified in paragraph 141.

5. TYPES OF PROCEDURES. Criteria are provided for the following types of authorized terminal instrument procedures:

a. Precision Approach.

(1) **Straight-In.** A descent in an approved procedure where the navigation facility alignment is normally on the runway centerline and glide slope information is provided. For example, Precision Approach Radar (PAR) and Instrument Landing System (ILS) procedures are Precision Approaches.

(2) **Simultaneous.** A procedure which provides for approaches to parallel runways. This procedure typically uses two ILS-equipped parallel runways. Simultaneous approaches, when authorized, shall be radar monitored. Military commanders may approve simultaneous approaches based upon dual precision radar.

b. Nonprecision Approach.

(1) **Straight-In.** A descent in an approved procedure in which the final approach course alignment and descent gradient permits authorization of straight-in landing minimums.

c. Circling. A descent in an approved precision or nonprecision approach procedure to circling minimums from which a circle to land maneuver is performed, or an approach procedure which does not meet criteria for authorizing straight-in landing minimums.

d. Departure Procedures. Procedures designed to provide obstacle clearance during instrument departures.

* **6. WORD MEANINGS.** Word meanings as used in this manual:

a. Shall means that application of the criteria is mandatory.

b. Should means that application of the criteria is recommended.

c. May means that application of the criteria is optional. *

7.-119. RESERVED.

Section 2. Eligibility, Approval, and Retention

120. ELIGIBILITY.

a. Military Airports. Procedures at military airports shall be established as required by the commander in accordance with the directives of the appropriate military department.

b. Civil Airports. Terminal instrument procedures shall be provided at civil airports open to the aviation public whenever a reasonable need is shown. No minimum number of potential instrument approaches is specified; however, the responsible FAA office must determine that a public procedure will be beneficial to more than a single user or interest. Private procedures, for the exclusive use of a single interest, may be provided

on a reimbursable basis in accordance with FAR 171 where applicable, if they do not unduly conflict with the public use of airspace. Reasonable need is deemed to exist when the instrument flight procedure will be used by:

(1) A certificated air carrier, air taxi, or commercial operator OR;

(2) Two or more aircraft operators whose activities are directly related to the commerce of the community OR;

(3) Military aircraft.

121. REQUESTS FOR PROCEDURES. Requests for military procedures are processed as described by the appropriate military service. No special form is required for requesting civil procedures. Civil requests may be made by letter to the appropriate Regional Office. Requests for civil procedures shall be accepted from any aviation source, provided the request shows that the airport owner/operator has been advised of this request..(This advice is necessary only when the request is for an original procedure to an airport not already served by an approach procedure.) Airport owners/operators will be advised of additional requests for procedures by the FAA as soon as possible after receipt thereof.

122. APPROVAL. Where a military requirement or reasonable civil need has been established, a request for an instrument approach procedure and/or instrument departure procedure for an airport shall be approved if the following minimum standards are met:

a. Airport. The airport landing surfaces must be adequate to accommodate the aircraft which can be reasonably expected to use the procedure. Runway lighting is required for approval of night instrument operations. The airport must have been found acceptable for IFR operations as a result of an airport airspace analysis conducted pursuant to FAA Handbook 7400.2 "Procedures for Handling Airspace Matters," and/or appropriate military directives as applicable. Only circling minimums shall be approved to airports where the runways are not clearly defined.

b. Navigation Facility. All electronic and visual Navigation facilities used must successfully pass flight inspection.

c. Obstacle Marking and Lighting. Obstacles which penetrate FAR 77 imaginary surfaces are obstructions and therefore should be marked and lighted, insofar as is reasonably possible, in accordance with FAA Advisory Circular AC 70/7460.1, "Obstruction Marking and Lighting." Those penetrating the FAR 77 approach and transitional surfaces should be removed or made conspicuous in accordance with that Advisory Circular. Normally, objects which are shielded need not be removed or made conspicuous.

NOTE: *In military procedures the appropriate military directives apply.*

d. Weather Information. Terminal weather observation and reporting facilities must be available for the airport to serve as an alternate airport. Destination minimums may be approved when a general area weather report is available prior to commencing the approach and approved altimeter settings are available to the pilot prior to and during the approach consistent with communications capability.

e. Communications. Air-to-ground communications must be available at the initial approach fix minimum altitude and when the aircraft executing the missed approach reaches the missed approach altitude. At lower altitudes communications shall be required where essential to the safe and efficient use of airspace. Air-to-ground communication normally consists of UHF or VHF radio, but HF communication may be approved at locations which have a special need and capability. Other suitable means of point-to-point communication, such as commercial telephone, are also required to file and close flight plans.

123. RETENTION AND CANCELLATION. Civil instrument procedures shall be canceled when a reevaluation of the usefulness of an instrument approach procedure indicates that the benefits derived are not commensurate with the costs of retaining the procedure. This determination will be based upon an individual evaluation of requirements peculiar to each specific location, and will consider airport

complexity, military requirements, planned airport expansion, and the need for a backup or supplement to the primary instrument approach system. Certain special procedures exist, generally based on privately operated navigation facilities. When a procedure based on a public facility is published, special procedures for that airport shall be canceled unless retention provides an operational advantage to the user. Before an instrument procedure is canceled, coordination with civil and military users shall be effected. Care shall be taken not to cancel procedures required by the military or required by air carrier operators at provisional or alternate airports. Military procedures shall be retained or canceled as required by the appropriate military authority.

124.–129. RESERVED.

Section 3. Responsibility and Jurisdiction

130. RESPONSIBILITY.

a. Military Airports. The United States Army, Navy, Air Force, and Coast Guard shall establish and approve terminal instrument procedures for airports under their respective jurisdictions. The FAA will accept responsibility for the development and/or publication of military procedures when requested to do so by the appropriate military department through an interagency agreement. Military terminal instrument procedures are official procedures. The FAA shall be informed when military procedures are canceled.

b. Civil Airports. The FAA shall establish and approve terminal instrument procedures for civil airports.

c. Military Procedures at Civil Airports. Where existing FAA approach or departure procedures at civil airports do not suffice, the military shall request the FAA to develop procedures to meet military requirements. These requirements may be met by modification of an existing FAA procedure or development of a new procedure. The FAA shall formulate, coordinate with the military, and industry, publish and maintain such procedures. The military shall inform the FAA when such procedures are no longer required.

131. JURISDICTION. The United States Army, Navy, Air Force, and Coast Guard Commanding Officers, or FAA Regional Directors having jurisdiction over airports are responsible for initiating action in accordance with these criteria to establish or revise terminal instrument procedures when a reasonable need is identified, or where:

a. New facilities are installed.

b. Changes to existing facilities necessitate a change to an approved procedure.

c. Additional procedures are necessary.

d. New obstacles or operational uses require a revision to the existing procedure.

132.–139. RESERVED.

Section 4. Establishment

140. FORMULATION. Proposed procedures shall be prepared in accordance with the applicable portion of this publication as determined by the type and location of navigation facility and procedure to be used. To permit use by aircraft with limited navigational equipment, the complete procedure should be formulated on the basis of a single navigation facility whenever possible. However, the use of an additional facility of the same or different type in the procedure to gain an operational advantage is permitted.

141. NONSTANDARD PROCEDURES. The standards contained in this manual are based on reasonable assessment of the factors which contribute to errors in aircraft navigation and maneuvering. They are designed primarily to assure that safe flight operations for all users result from their application. The dimensions of the obstacle clearance areas are influenced by the need to provide for a smooth, simply computed progression to and from the enroute system. Every effort shall be made to formulate procedures in accordance with these standards; however, peculiarities of terrain, navigation information, obstacles, or traffic congestion may require special consideration where justified by operational requirements. In such cases,

nonstandard procedures which deviate from these criteria may be approved, provided they are fully documented and an equivalent level of safety exists. A nonstandard procedure is not a substandard procedure, but is one which has been approved after special study of the local problems has demonstrated that no derogation of safety is involved. The Office of Flight Operations, FAA, Washington, D.C. is the approving authority for nonstandard civil procedures. Military procedures which deviate from standards because of operational necessity, and in which an equivalent level of safety is not achieved, shall include a cautionary note to identify the hazard and shall be marked "not for civil use".

142. CHANGES. Changes in instrument procedures shall be prepared and forwarded for approval in the same manner as in the case of new procedures. Changes so processed will not be made solely to include minor corrections necessitated by changes in facility frequencies, variation changes, etc., or by other minor changes not affecting the actual instrument procedure. Changes which require reprocessing are those which affect fix, course, altitude or published minimum.

143.–149. RESERVED.

Section 5. COORDINATION

150. COORDINATION. It is necessary to coordinate terminal instrument procedures to protect the rights of all users of airspace.

a. Military Airports. All terminal instrument procedures established or revised by military activities for military airports shall be coordinated with the FAA or appropriate agency or an overseas host nation. When a procedure may conflict with other military or civil activities, the procedure shall also be coordinated with those activities.

b. Civil Airports. Prior to establishing or revising terminal instrument procedures for civil airports, the FAA shall, as required, coordinate such procedures with the appropriate civil aviation organizations. Coordination with military activities is required when a military operating unit is based at the airport or when the proximity of a military airport may cause procedural conflicts.

c. Air Traffic Control. Prior to establishing or revising terminal instrument procedures for a military or civil airport, the initiating office shall coordinate with the appropriate FAA Air Traffic office to insure compatibility with air traffic flow and to assess the impact of the proposed procedure on current or future air traffic programs.

d. Airspace Actions. Where action to designate controlled airspace for a procedure is planned, the airspace action should be initiated sufficiently in advance so that effective dates of the procedure and the airspace action will coincide.

e. NOTAM's. A NOTAM to change minimums may be issued in case of emergencies; i.e., facility outages, facility out–of–tolerance conditions, new construction which penetrates critical surfaces, etc. NOTAM's may also be issued when a supporting facility is added and a significant change in minimums will result, or when a procedure turn altitude is modified as the result of construction or terrain, or when a facility restriction is removed. However, a complete new procedure may not be issued by NOTAM, except where military requirements dictate. If it becomes necessary to expedite the publication of a complete civil procedure, or to revise the effective date of procedures, the Washington office, AFO–700, will be contacted to determine the most effective course of action. ATC shall be advised of the required NOTAM action prior to issuance and normal coordination shall be effected as soon as practicable.

151. COORDINATION CONFLICTS. In areas under the FAA jurisdiction, coordination conflicts which cannot be resolved at the field level shall be submitted to the appropriate FAA region for additional coordination and resolution. Problems which are unresolved at the regional level shall be * forwarded to the Office of Flight Operations, * FAA, Washington, D.C. for action. If the problem involves a military procedure, parallel action through military channels shall be taken to expedite coordination at the appropriate level.

152.–159. RESERVED.

Section 6. Identification of Procedures

160. IDENTIFICATION OF PROCEDURES. Terminal instrument procedures shall be identified to be meaningful to the pilot, and to permit ready identification in air traffic control phraseology.

161. STRAIGHT-IN PROCEDURE IDENTIFICATION. Procedures which meet criteria for authorization of straight-in landing minima shall be identified by the type of navigational aid(s) which provide final approach guidance and the runway to which the final approach course(s) are aligned; e.g. ILS Rwy 18R, LOC, BC Rwy 7, TACAN Rwy 36, LDA Rwy 4, NDB Rwy 21, VOR Rwy 15, VOR/DME Rwy 6, ILS or TACAN Rwy 9, etc. A slash (/) shall indicate that more than one type of equipment must be used to execute the final approach; e.g. VOR/DME, etc. When procedures are combined, the word 'or' shall indicate either type of equipment may be used to execute the final approach; e.g., ILS or TACAN, ILS or NDB, VOR/DME or TACAN, etc. When the same final approach guidance is used to the same runway, the procedures shall be identified as follows: TACAN 1 Rwy 36, TACAN 2 Rwy 36, VOR 1 Rwy 18, VOR 2 Rwy 18, etc.

162. CIRCLING PROCEDURE IDENTIFICATION. When a procedure does not meet criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization, it shall be identified by the type of navigational aid which provides final approach guidance, and an alphabetical suffix. The first procedure formulated shall bear the suffix "A" even through there may be no intention to formulate additional procedures. If additional procedures are formulated, they shall be identified alphabetically in sequence, e.g., VOR-A, VOR/DME-B, NDB-C, NDB-D, LDA-E, etc. A revised procedure will bear its original identification.

163. DIFFERENTIATION. Where high altitude procedures are required the high altitude procedure identification shall be prefixed with the letters "HI", e.g., HI-VOR Rwy 5.

164-169. RESERVED.

Section 7. Publication

170. SUBMISSION. Terminal instrument procedures shall be submitted by the approving authority on forms provided by the originating agency. A record of coordination shall be maintained by the originating agency. Procedures shall be routed in accordance with current orders or directives of the originating agency.

171. ISSUANCE. The following are designated as responsible offices for the release of approved terminal instrument procedures for each agency.

a. Army. Director, U.S. Army Aeronautical Services Office.

* *b. Navy and Marine Corps.* OPNAVSUPPACT Naval Flight Information Group. *

c. Air Force. Chief, Airspace and Air Traffic Services, HQ, USAF.

d. Coast Guard. Commandant, U.S. Coast Guard.

e. Civil. Administrator, Federal Aviation Administration.

172. EFFECTIVE DATE. Terminal instrument procedures and revisions thereto shall be processed in sufficient time to permit publication and distribution in advance of the effective date. Effective dates should normally coincide with scheduled airspace changes except when safety or operational effectiveness is jeopardized. In case of emergency, or when operational effectiveness dictates, approved procedures may be disseminated by NOTAM (see paragraph 150e). Procedures disseminated by NOTAM must also be processed promptly in the normal fashion and published in appropriate terminal instrument procedures charts and in the Federal Register when required.

173.-199. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 2. GENERAL CRITERIA

200. SCOPE. This chapter contains only that information common to all types of terminal instrument procedures. Criteria which do not have general application are located in the individual chapters concerned with the specific types of facilities.

201.–209. RESERVED.

Section 1. Common Information

210. UNITS OF MEASUREMENT. Units of measurement shall be expressed as set forth below:

a. Bearings, Courses, and Radials. Bearings and courses shall be expressed in degrees magnetic. Radials shall also be expressed in degrees magnetic, and shall further be identified as radials by prefixing the letter "R" to the magnetic bearing FROM the facility. For example, R-027 or R-010.

b. Altitudes. The unit of measurement for altitude in this publication is feet. Published heights below the transition level (18,000 feet) shall be expressed in feet above MSL; e.g. 17,900 feet. Published heights at and above the transition level (18,000 feet) shall be expressed as Flight Levels; e.g., FL 180, FL 190, etc.–reference FAR 91.81, Air Traffic Control Handbook 7110.65 Par. 85.

c. Distances. All distances shall be expressed * in nautical miles (6076.1 feet per NM) and tenths * thereof, except when applied to visibilities, which shall be expressed in statute miles and the appropriate fractions thereof. Expression of visibility values in nautical miles is permitted in overseas areas where it coincides with the host nation practice. Runway visual range (RVR) shall be expressed in feet.

d. Speeds. Aircraft speeds shall be expressed in knots.

e. Determination of Correctness of Distance and Bearing Information. The approving agency is the authority for correctness of distance and bearing information, except that within the United States, its territories, and possessions, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration is the authority for measurements between all civil navigation aids and between those facilities incorporated as part of the National Airspace System.

211. POSITIVE COURSE GUIDANCE. Positive course guidance (PCG) shall be provided for feeder routes, initial (except as provided for in paragraph 233b), intermediate, and final approach segments. The segments of a procedure wherein PCG is provided should be within the service volume of the facility(ies) used, except where Expanded Service Volume (ESV) has been authorized. PCG may be provided by one or more of the navigation systems for which criteria has been published herein.

* 212. APPROACH CATEGORIES. Aircraft performance differences have an effect on the airspace and visibility needed to perform certain maneuvers. Because of these differences, aircraft manufacturer/operational directives assign an alphabetical category to each aircraft so that the appropriate obstacle clearance areas and landing and departure minimums can be established in accordance with the criteria in this manual. The categories (CAT) used and referenced throughout this manual are: CAT A, B, C, D, and/or E. Aircraft categories are defined in Federal Aviation Regulations (FAR) Part 97. *

213. APPROACH CATEGORY APPLICATION. The approach category operating characteristics shall be used to determine turning radii minimums, and obstacle clearance areas for circling and missed approach.

214. PROCEDURE CONSTRUCTION. An instrument approach procedure may have four separate segments. They are the initial, the intermediate, the final, and the missed approach segments. In addition, an area for circling the airport under visual conditions shall be considered. The approach segments begin and end at designated fixes; however, under some circumstances certain segments may begin at specified points where no fixes are available. The fixes are named to coincide with the associated segment. For example, the intermediate segment begins at the intermediate fix and ends at the final approach fix. The order in which this chapter discusses the segments is the same order in which the pilot would fly them in a completed procedure; that is from an initial, through an intermediate, to a final approach. In constructing the procedure, the final approach course should be identified first because it is the least flexible and most critical of all the segments. When the final approach has been determined, the other segments should be blended with it to produce an orderly maneuvering pattern which is responsive to the local traffic flow. Consideration shall also be given to any accompanying controlled airspace requirements in order to conserve airspace to the extent it is feasible. See Figure 1.

215. CONTROLLING OBSTACLE(S). The controlling obstacle in the primary area of the final approach segment shall be identified in procedures submitted for publication.

216.–219. RESERVED.

Section 2. En route Operations

220. FEEDER ROUTES. When the initial approach fix is part of the en route structure there may be no need to designate additonal routes for aircraft to proceed to the initial approach fix (IAF). In some cases, however, it is necessary to designate feeder routes from the en route structure to the initial approach fix. Only those feeder routes which provide an operational advantage shall be established and published. These should coincide with the local air traffic flow. The length of the feeder route shall not exceed the operational service volume of the facilities which provide navigational guidance unless additional frequency protection is provided. En route airway obstacle clearance criteria shall apply to feeder routes. The minimum altitude established on feeder routes shall not be less than the altitude established at the IAF.

221. MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDES. A minimum safe altitude is the minimum altitude which provides at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance for emergency use within a specified distance from the navigation facility upon which a procedure is predicated. These altitudes will be rounded to the next higher 100-foot increment. Such altitudes will be identified as minimum sector altitudes or emergency safe altitudes and shall be established as follows:

a. Minimum Sector Altitudes. Minimum sector altitudes shall be established for all procedures within a 25-mile radius of the navigational facility. When the distance from the primary facility to the airport exceeds 25 miles the radius shall be expanded to include the airport landing surfaces up to a maximum distance of 30 miles. When the procedure does not use an omnidirectional facility (LOC BC with a fix for the FAF), the primary omnidirectional facility in the area will be used. A common safe altitude may be established for the entire area around the facility or sector altitudes may be established to offer relief from obstacles. Sectors shall not be less than 90°in spread. Sector altitudes may be raised and combined with adjacent higher sectors when a height difference does not exceed 300 feet. The sector altitude established shall also provide 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance in the adjacent sector or periphery area within four miles of the sector division or the periphery boundary line. See Figure 2.

b. Emergency Safe Altitudes. Emergency safe altitudes shall be established with a 100-mile radius of the navigation facility at the option of the approving authority. They are normally used only in military procedures. Where a requirement exists for these altitudes, they shall be established with a common altitude for the entire area. Where these

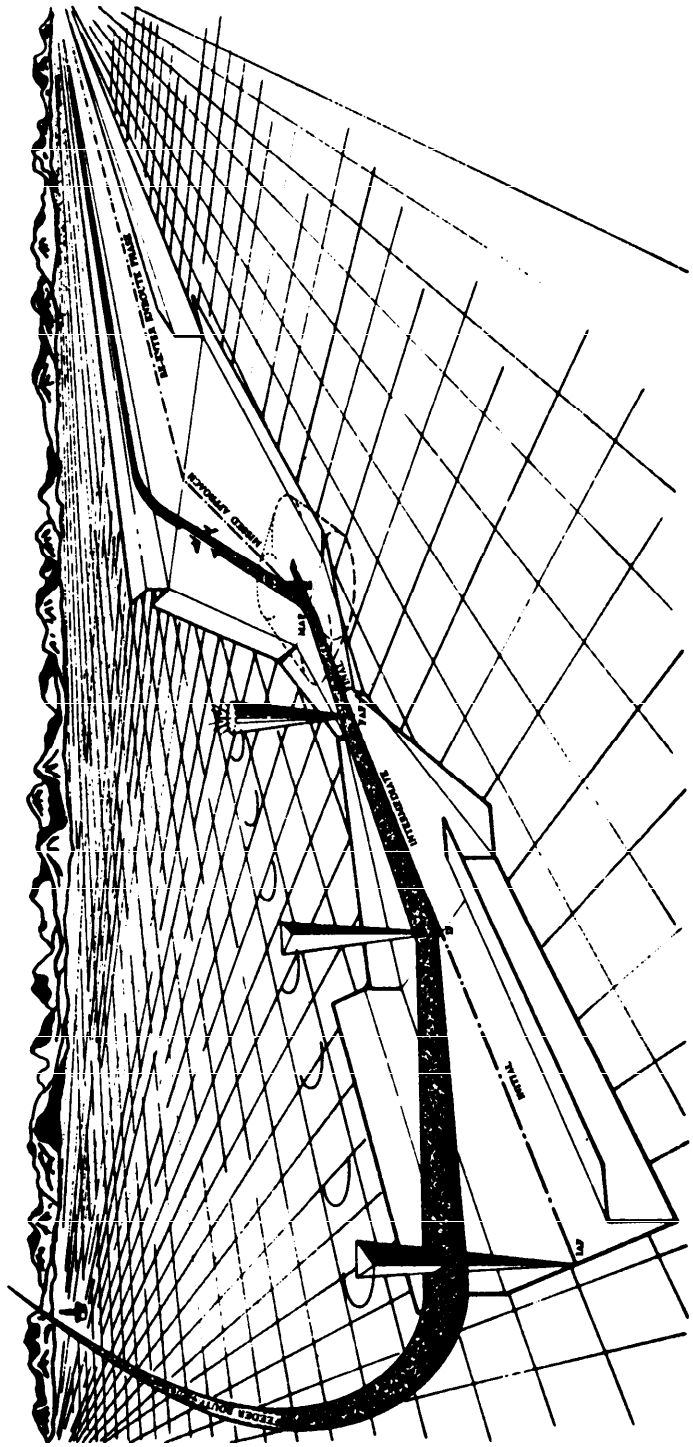


Figure 1. SEGMENTS OF AN APPROACH PROCEDURE. Par 214.

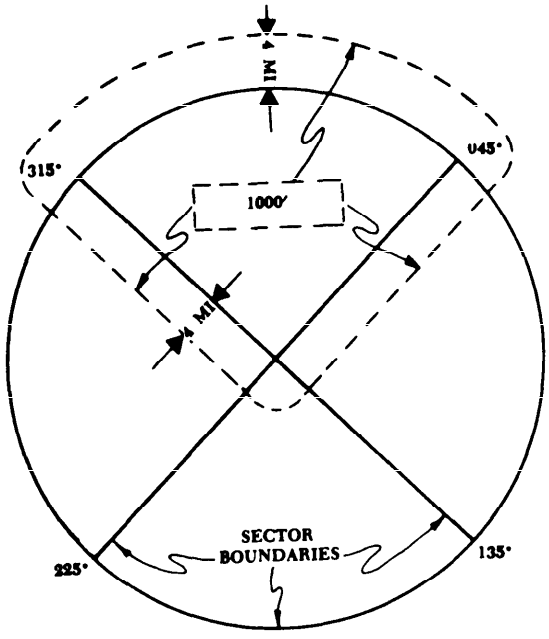


Figure 2. MINIMUM SECTOR ALTITUDES. Par 221.

altitudes are established in designated mountainous areas, they shall provide 2000 feet of obstacle clearance. These altitudes shall be identified on published procedures as "emergency safe altitudes".

222.-229. RESERVED.

Section 3. Initial Approach

230. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The instrument approach commences at the Initial Approach Fix (IAF). In the initial approach the aircraft has departed the enroute phase of flight, and is maneuvering to enter an intermediate segment. When the intermediate fix is part of the enroute structure, it may not be necessary to designate an initial approach segment. In this case the approach commences at the intermediate fix and intermediate segment criteria apply. An initial approach may be made along an arc, radial, course, heading, radar vector, or a combination thereof. Procedure turns, holding pattern descents, and high altitude penetrations are initial segments. Positive course guidance is required except when dead reckoning courses can be established over limited distances. Although more than one initial approach may be established for a procedure, the number should be limited to that which is justified by traffic flow or other operational requirements. Where holding is required prior to entering the initial approach segment, the holding fix and initial approach fix should coincide. When this is not possible the initial approach fix shall be located within the holding pattern on the inbound holding course.

231. ALTITUDE SELECTION. Minimum altitudes in the initial approach segment shall be established in 100-foot increments; i.e., 1549 feet may be shown as 1500 feet and 1550 feet shall be shown as 1600. The altitude selected shall not be below the procedure turn altitude where a procedure turn is required. In addition, altitudes specified in the initial approach segment must not be lower than any altitude specified for any portion of the intermediate or final approach segment.

232. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENTS BASED ON STRAIGHT COURSES AND ARCS WITH POSITIVE COURSE GUIDANCE.

a. Alignment.

(1) Courses. The angle of intersection between the initial approach course and the intermediate course shall not exceed 120 degrees. When the angle exceeds 90 degrees, a radial or bearing which provides at least 2 miles of lead shall be identified to assist in leading the turn onto the intermediate course. See Figure 3.

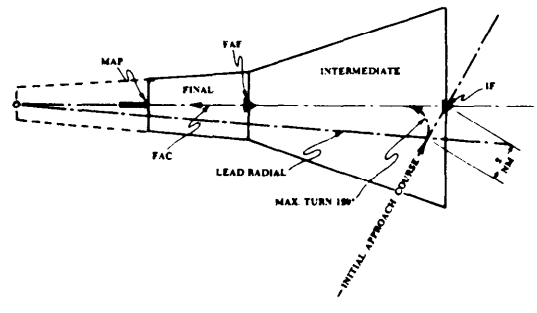


Figure 3. INITIAL APPROACH INTERCEPTION ANGLE GREATER THAN 90 DEGREES. Par 232.a.(1)

(2) **Arcs.** An arc may provide course guidance for all or a portion of an initial approach. The minimum arc radius shall be 7 miles, except for high altitude jet penetration * procedures, in which the minimum radius should be at least 15 miles. When an arc of less than 15 miles is used in high altitude procedures, the descent gradient along the arc shall not exceed the values in table 1. An arc may join a course at or * before the intermediate fix. When joining a course at or before the intermediate fix, the angle of intersection of the arc and the course shall not exceed 120°. When the angle exceeds 90°, a radial which provides at least 2 miles of lead shall be identified to assist in leading the turn onto the intermediate course. DME arc courses shall be predicated on DME collocated with a facility providing omnidirectional course information.

Table 1. DESCENT GRADIENT ON AN ARC.

MILES	MAX FT. PER NM
15	1,000
14	720
13	640
12	560
11	480
10	400
9	320
8	240
7	160

b. Area. The initial approach segment has no standard length. The length shall be sufficient to permit the altitude change required by the procedure and shall not exceed 50 miles unless an operational requirement exists. The total width of the initial approach segment shall be 6 miles on each side of the initial approach course. This width is divided into a primary area, which extends laterally 4 miles on each side of the course, and a secondary area, which extends laterally 2 miles on each side of the primary area. See figure 10. When any portion of the initial approach is more than 50 miles from the navigation facility, the criteria for en route airways shall apply to that portion.

c. Obstacle Clearance. The obstacle clearance in the initial approach primary area shall be a minimum of 1,000 feet. In the secondary area 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum obstacle clearance required at any given point in the secondary area is shown in Appendix 2, figure 123. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be made as specified in paragraph 323a. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See paragraph 231.

d. Descent Gradient. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the initial approach is 250 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 500 feet per mile. The OPTIMUM descent gradient for high altitude penetrations is 800 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 1,000 feet per mile.

233. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT BASED ON DEAD RECKONING (DR). See ILS Chapter for special limitations.

a. Alignment. Each DR course shall intercept the extended intermediate course. For LOW altitude procedures, the intercept point shall be at least 1 mile from the intermediate fix (IF) for each 2 miles of DR flown. For HIGH altitude procedures, the intercept point may be 1 mile for each 3 miles of DR flown. The intercept angle shall:

(1) Not exceed 90°.

(2) Not be less than 45° except when DME is used OR the DR distance is 3 miles or less.

b. Area. The MAXIMUM length of the DR portion of the initial segment is 10 miles (except paragraph 232b applies for HIGH altitude procedures where DME is available throughout the DR segment). Where the DR course begins, the width is 6 miles on each side of the course, expanding by 15° outward until joining the points shown in figures 4A, 4B, 4C, 4D, and 4E.

c. **Obstacle Clearance.** The obstacle clearance in the DR initial approach segment shall be a minimum of 1,000 feet. There is no secondary area. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be considered as specified in paragraph 323a. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See paragraph 231.

d. **Descent Gradient.** The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the initial approach is 250 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 500 feet per mile. The OPTIMUM descent gradient for high altitude penetrations is 800 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 1,000 feet per mile.

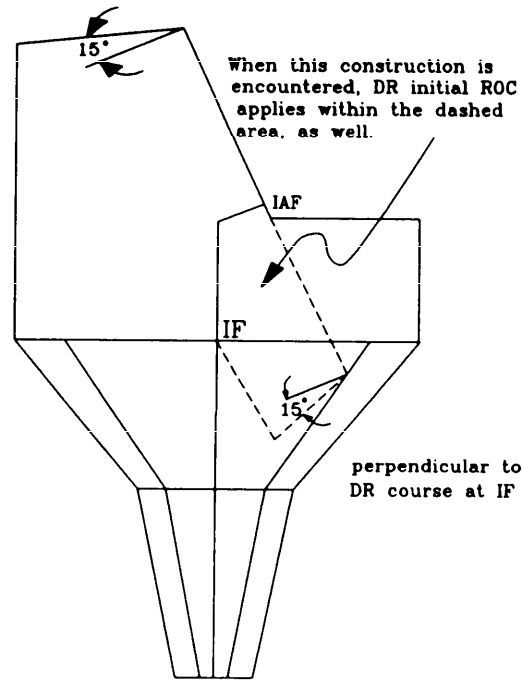


Figure 4B. DR SEGMENT WITH BOUNDARY INSIDE THE INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. Paragraph 233b.

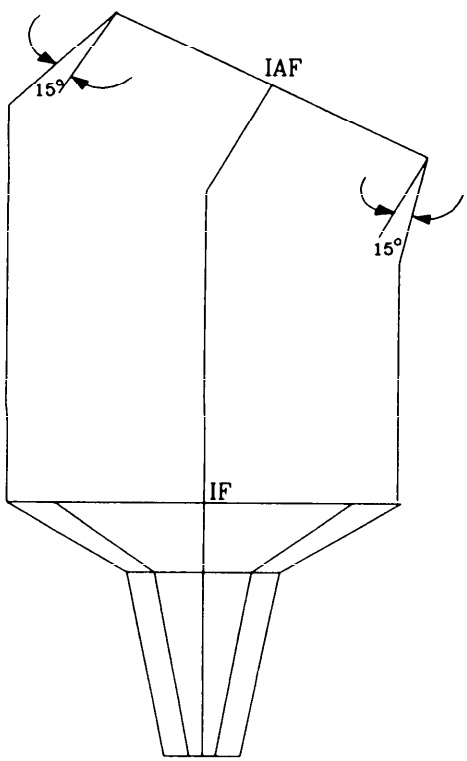


Figure 4A. MOST COMMON DR SEGMENT. Paragraph 233b.

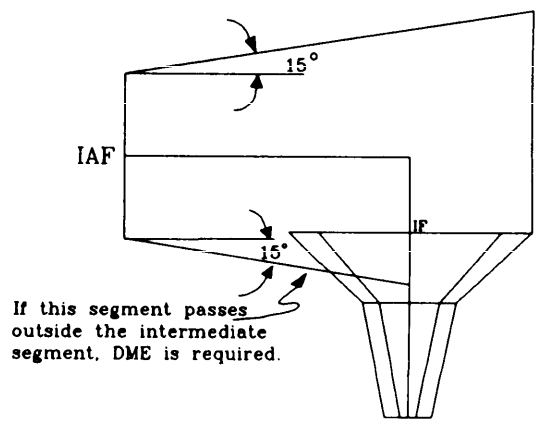


Figure 4C. DR SEGMENT WITH BOUNDARY INTERCEPTING THE INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. Paragraph 233b.

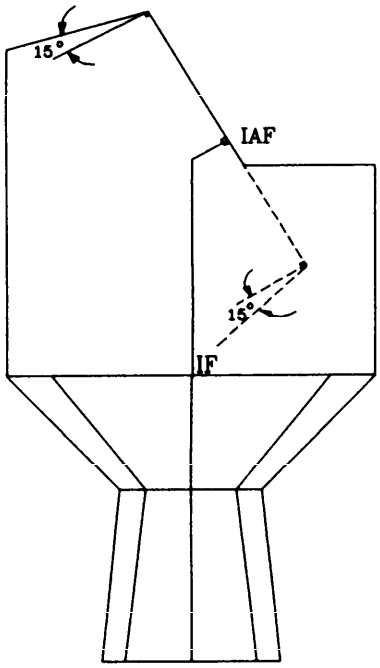


Figure 4D. DR INITIAL SEGMENT WITH BOUNDARY INSIDE THE STRAIGHT INITIAL SEGMENT. Paragraph 233b.

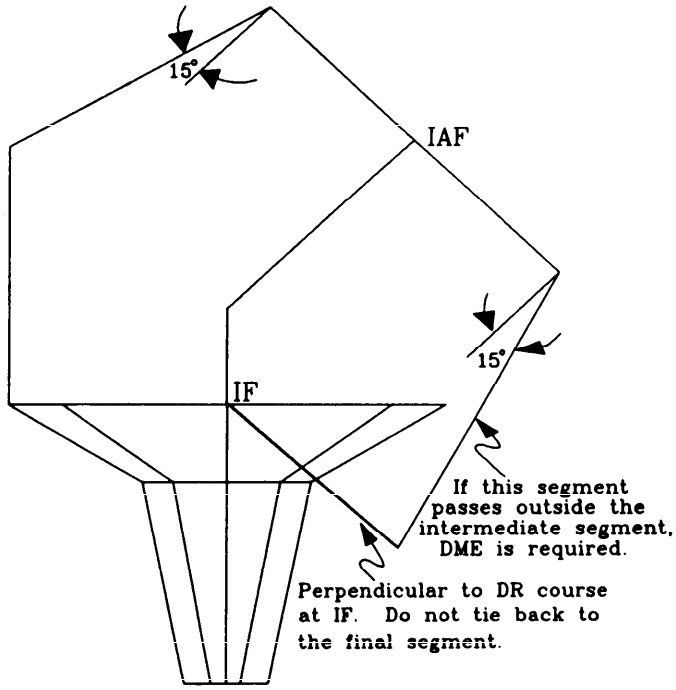


Figure 4E. DR INITIAL SEGMENT WITH BOUNDARY OUTSIDE THE INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. Paragraph 233b.

234. **INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT BASED ON A PROCEDURE TURN.** A procedure turn shall be specified when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish the aircraft on an intermediate or final approach course, except as specified in paragraph 234e. A procedure turn begins by overheading a facility or fix which meets the criteria for a holding fix (see paragraph 287b), or for a final approach fix (see paragraph 287c). The procedure shall specify the procedure turn fix, the outbound and inbound course, the distance within which the procedure turn shall be completed, and the direction of the procedure turn. When a teardrop turn is used, the angle of divergence between the outbound course and the reciprocal of the inbound course shall be MINIMUM of 15° or a MAXIMUM of 30° (see paragraph 235a for high altitude teardrop penetrations). In all procedure turns, the degree of turn and the point at which the turn is begun are left to the discretion of the pilot. However, the maneuver shall be completed within the procedure turn area, and not below the altitude specified for its completion. When no fix marks the beginning of the intermediate or final approach segment associated with the procedure turn, these segments are deemed to commence on the inbound procedure turn course at the maximum distance specified in the procedure.

a. Alignment. When the inbound course of the procedure turn becomes the intermediate course it must meet the intermediate couse alignment criteria (see paragraph 242a). When the inbound course becomes the final approach course it must meet the final appoach course alignment criteria (see paragraph 250). The wider side of the procedure turn area shall be oriented in the same direction as that prescribed for the procedure turn.

b. Area. The procedure turn areas are depicted in Figure 5. The normal procedure turn distance is 10 miles. This distance may be decreased to 5 miles where only Approach Category "A" aircraft are to be operated and may be increased to as much as 15 miles or as specified in paragraph 234d. When a procedure turn is authorized for use by Approach Category "E" aircraft a 15-mile procedure turn distance shall be used. The procedure turn segment is divided into zones and areas. They are the Entry Zone, the Maneuvering Zone, the Primary Area, and the Secondary Area. See Figure 5. As shown, the entry zone is the zone in which entry is made into the maneuvering zone. Its inner boundary extends perpendicular to the inbound course at the procedure turn fix. The remainder of the procedure turn segment is the maneuvering zone.

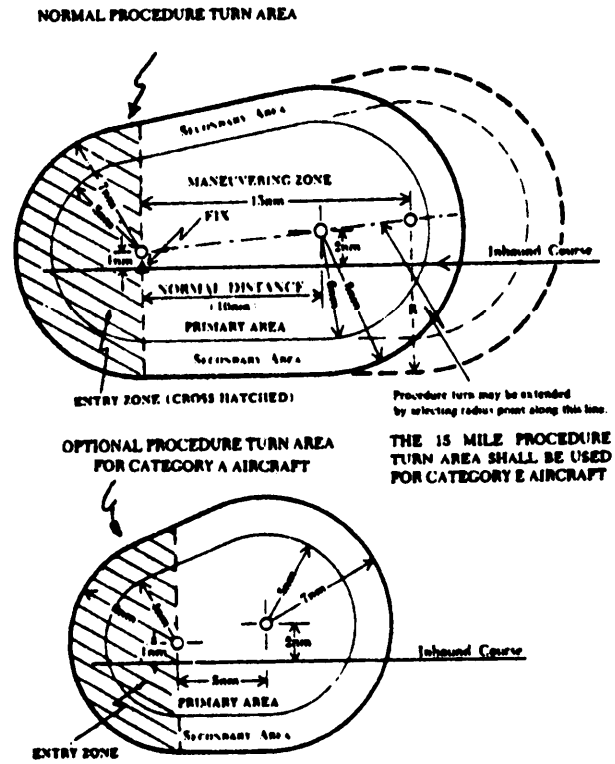


Figure 5. PROCEDURE TURN AREAS. Par 234.b.

c. Obstacle Clearance. A minimum of 1,000 feet of clearance shall be provided in the primary area. In the secondary area, 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum obstacle clearance required at any given point in the secondary area is shown in the graph in Appendix 2, Figure 123. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be considered as specified in paragraph 323a. The primary and secondary areas determine obstacle clearance in both the entry and maneuvering zones. The use of entry and maneuvering zones provides further relief from obstacles. The entry zone is established to control the obstacle clearance UNTIL proceeding outbound from the procedure turn fix. The maneuvering zone is established to control obstacle clearance AFTER proceeding outbound from the procedure turn fix. See Figure 6. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet (see paragraph 231).

d. Descent Gradient. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the initial approach is 250 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 500 feet per mile. The procedure turn completion altitude should be as close as possible to the final approach fix altitude. The difference between the procedure turn completion altitude and the altitude over the final approach fix shall not be greater than those shown in table 1A. If greater differences are required for a 5 or 10-mile procedure turn, the procedure turn distance limits and maneuvering zone shall be increased at the rate of 1 mile for each 200 feet of required altitude. No extension of the procedure turn is permitted without a final approach fix.

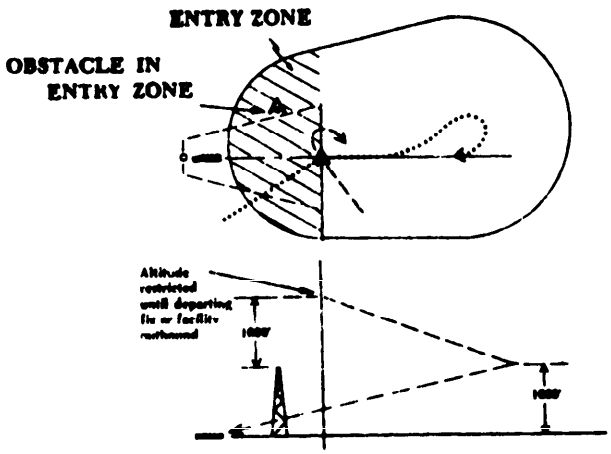


Figure 6. PROCEDURE TURN INITIAL APPROACH AREA. Par 234c.

e. Elimination of Procedure Turn. A procedure turn is NOT required when an approach can be made direct from a specified intermediate fix to the final approach fix. A procedure turn NEED NOT be established when an approach can be made from a properly aligned holding pattern. See paragraph 291. In this case, the holding pattern shall be established over a final or intermediate approach fix and the following conditions apply:

(1) If the holding pattern is established over the final approach fix, the minimum holding altitude shall be not more than 300 feet above the altitude specified for crossing the final approach fix inbound.

(2) If the holding pattern is established over the intermediate fix, the minimum holding altitude shall permit descent to the final approach fix altitudewithin the descent gradient tolerances prescribed for the intermediate segment. See paragraph 243d.

Table 1A. PROCEDURE TURN COMPLETION ALTITUDE DIFFERENCE

TYPE OF PROCEDURE TURN	ALTITUDE DIFFERENCE
15 Mile PT from FAF	Within 3000 Ft of Alt. over FAF
10 Mile PT from FAF	Within 2000 Ft of Alt. over FAF
5 Mile PT from FAF	Within 1000 Ft of Alt. over FAF
15 Mile PT, no FAF	Not Authorized.
10 Mile PT, no FAF	Within 1500 Ft of MDA on Final
5 Mile PT, no FAF	Within 1000 Ft of MDA on Final

235. INITIAL APPROACH BASED ON HIGH ALTITUDE TEARDROP PENETRATION. A teardrop penetration consists of departure from an initial approach fix on an outbound course, followed by a turn toward and intercepting the inbound course at or prior to the intermediate fix or point. Its purpose is to permit an aircraft to reverse direction and lose considerable altitude within reasonably limited airspace. Where no fix is available to mark the beginning of the intermediate segment, it shall be assumed to commence at a point 10 miles prior to the final approach fix. When the facility is located on the airport, and no fix is available to mark the beginning of the final approach segment, the criteria in paragraph 423 apply.

a. Alignment. The outbound penetration course shall be between 18 and 20 degrees to the left or right of the reciprocal of the inbound course. The actual angular divergence between the courses will vary inversely with the distance from the facility at which the turn is made. See table 2.

b. Area.

(1) Size. The size of the penetration turn area must be sufficient to accommodate both the turn and the altitude loss required by the procedure. The penetration turn distance shall not be less than 20 miles from the facility. The penetration turn distance depends on the altitude to be lost in the

Table 2. PENETRATION TURN DISTANCE/ DIVERGENCE.

ALT TO BE LOST PRIOR TO COMMENCING TURN	DISTANCE TURN COMMENCES (NM)	COURSE DIVERGENCE (DEGREES)	SPECIFIED PENETRATION TURN DISTANCE (NM)
12,000 Ft	24	18	28
11,000 Ft	23	19	27
10,000 Ft	22	20	26
9,000 Ft	21	21	25
8,000 Ft	20	22	24
7,000 Ft	19	23	23
6,000 Ft	18	24	22
5,000 Ft	17	25	21
5,000 Ft	16	26	20

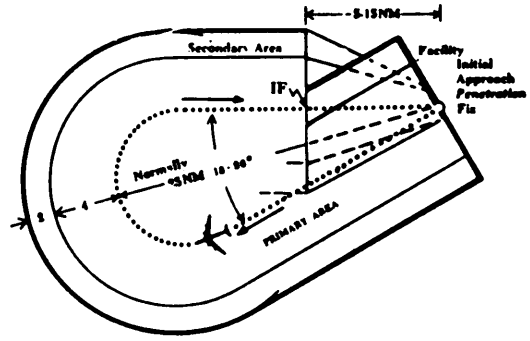


Figure 8. TYPICAL PENETRATION TURN INITIAL APPROACH AREA. Par 235.

procedure and the point at which the descent is started. See Table 2. The aircraft should lose half the total altitude or 5000 feet, whichever is greater, outbound prior to starting the turn. The penetration turn area has a width of 6 miles on both sides of the flight track up to the intermediate fix or point, and shall encompass all the areas within the turn. See Figure 8.

(2) **Penetration Turn Table.** Table 2 should be used to compute the desired course divergence and penetration turn distances which apply when a specific altitude loss outbound is required. It is assumed that the descent begins immediately upon station passage. When the procedure requires a delay before descent of more than 5 miles, the distance in excess of 5 miles should be added to the distance the turn commences. The course divergence and penetration turn distance should then be adjusted to correspond to the adjusted turn distance. Extrapolations may be made from the table.

(3) **Primary and Secondary Areas.** All of the penetration turn is primary area except the outer 2 miles of the 6-mile obstacle clearance area on the outer side of the penetration track. See Figure 8. The outer 2 miles is secondary area. The outer 2 miles on both sides of the inbound penetration course should be treated as secondary area.

c. Obstacle Clearance. Obstacle clearance in the initial approach primary area shall be a MINIMUM of 1,000 feet. Obstacle clearance at the inner edge of the secondary area shall be 500 feet, tapering to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is found by using the graph in Appendix 2, Figure 123. Where no intermediate fix is available, a 10 NM intermediate segment is assumed and normal obstacle clearance is applied to the controlling obstacle. The controlling obstacle, as well as the minimum altitude selected for the intermediate segment, may depend on the availability of an intermediate fix. See Figure 9. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be considered in the penetration turn area as specified in paragraph 323a. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See paragraph 231.

d. Descent Gradient. The procedure should be based on an OPTIMUM descent gradient of 800 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 1,000 feet per mile.

e. Penetration Turn Altitude. When an intermediate fix is NOT provided, the penetration turn completion altitude shall not be more than 4,000 feet above the final approach fix altitude.

236. INITIAL APPROACH COURSE REVERSAL USING NONCOLLOCATED FACILITIES AND A TURN OF 120 DEGREES OR GREATER TO INTERCEPT THE INBOUND COURSE. See Figure 8A.

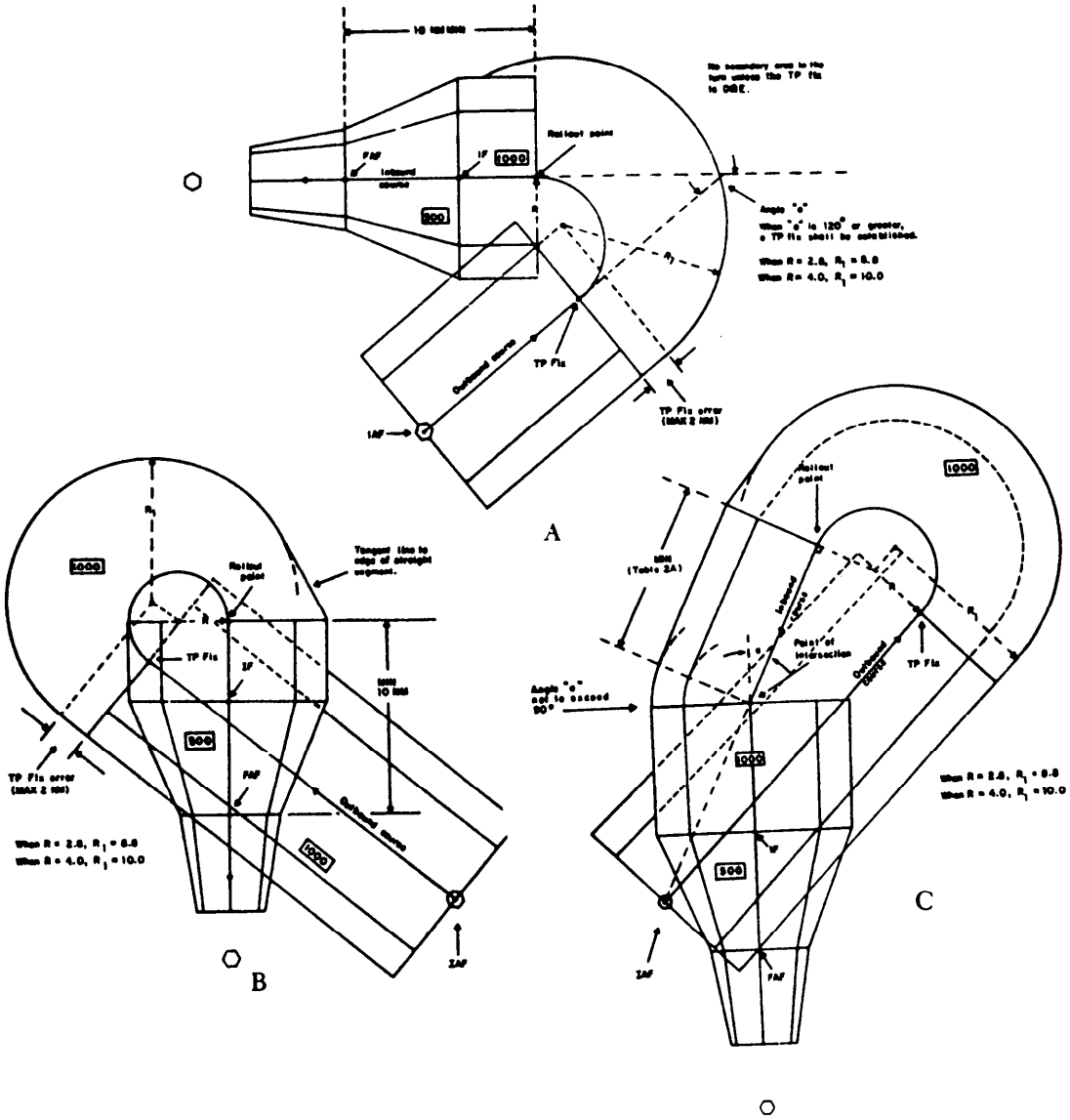


Figure 8A. EXAMPLES OF INITIAL APPROACH COURSE REVERSAL. Par 236.

a. Common Criteria.

(1) A turn point (TP) fix shall be established as shown in the figures. The fix error shall meet section 8 criteria, and shall not exceed ±2 NM.

(2) A flightpath radius of 2.8 NM shall be used for procedures where the altitude at the TP fix is 10,000 feet MSL or below, or 4 NM for procedures where the altitude at the TP fix is above 10,000 feet MSL.

(3) **Descent Gradient.** Paragraph 232d applies.

(4) **Obstacle Clearance.** Paragraph 235c applies.

(5) **Initial Distance.** When the course reversal turn intercepts the extended intermediate course, and when the course reversal turn intercepts a straight segment prior to intercepting the extended intermediate course, the minimum distance between the rollout point and the FAF is 10 NM.

(6) **ROC Reduction.** No reduction of secondary ROC is authorized in the course reversal area unless the TP fix is DME.

b. Figure 8A (A and B). The rollout point shall be at or prior to the intermediate fix/point.

(1) Select the desired rollout point on the inbound course. .

(2) Place the appropriate flightpath arc tangent to the rollout point.

(3) From the outbound facility, place the outbound course tangent to the flightpath arc. The point of tangency shall be the TP fix.

c. Figure 8A(C).

(1) The point of intersection shall be at or prior to the intermediate fix/point (paragraph 242 applies). The angle shall be 90° or less.

(2) The distance between the rollout point and the point of intersection shall be no less than the distance shown in Table 2A.

(3) Paragraph 235 and Table 2 should be used for high altitude procedures up to the point of intersection of the two inbound courses.

TABLE 2A

ANGLE "a"	MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM ROLLOUT POINT TO POINT OF INTERSECTION
0°-15°	1 NM
16°-30°	2 NM
31°-45°	3 NM
41°-60°	4 NM
61°-75°	5 NM
76°-90°	6 NM

(4) Select the desired point of intersection. From the outbound facility draw a line through the point of intersection.

(5) At the outbound facility measure the required number of degrees course divergence (may be either side of the line through the point of intersection) and draw the outbound course out the required distance. Connect the outbound course and the line through the point of intersection with the appropriate arc.

(6) Determine the desired rollout point on the line through the point of intersection.

(a) Place the appropriate flight path arc tangent to the rollout point.

(b) From the outbound facility draw the outbound course tangent to the flight path arc. The point of tangency is the TP fix.

237.-239. RESERVED.

Section 4. Intermediate Approaches

240. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. This is the segment which blends the initial approach segment into the final approach segment. It is the segment in which aircraft configuration, speed, and positioning adjustments are made for entry into the final approach segment. The intermediate segment begins at the intermediate fix (IF), or point, and ends at the final approach fix (FAF). There are two types of intermediate segments; the "radial" or "course" intermediate segment and the "arc" intermediate segment. In either case, positive course guidance shall be provided. See Figure 10 for typical approach segments.

241. ALTITUDE SELECTION. The MINIMUM altitude in the intermediate segment shall be established in 100-foot increments; i.e., 749 feet may be shown as 700 feet and 750 feet shall be shown as 800. In addition, the altitude selected for arrival over the FAF shall be low enough to permit descent from the FAF to the airport for a straight-in landing whenever possible.

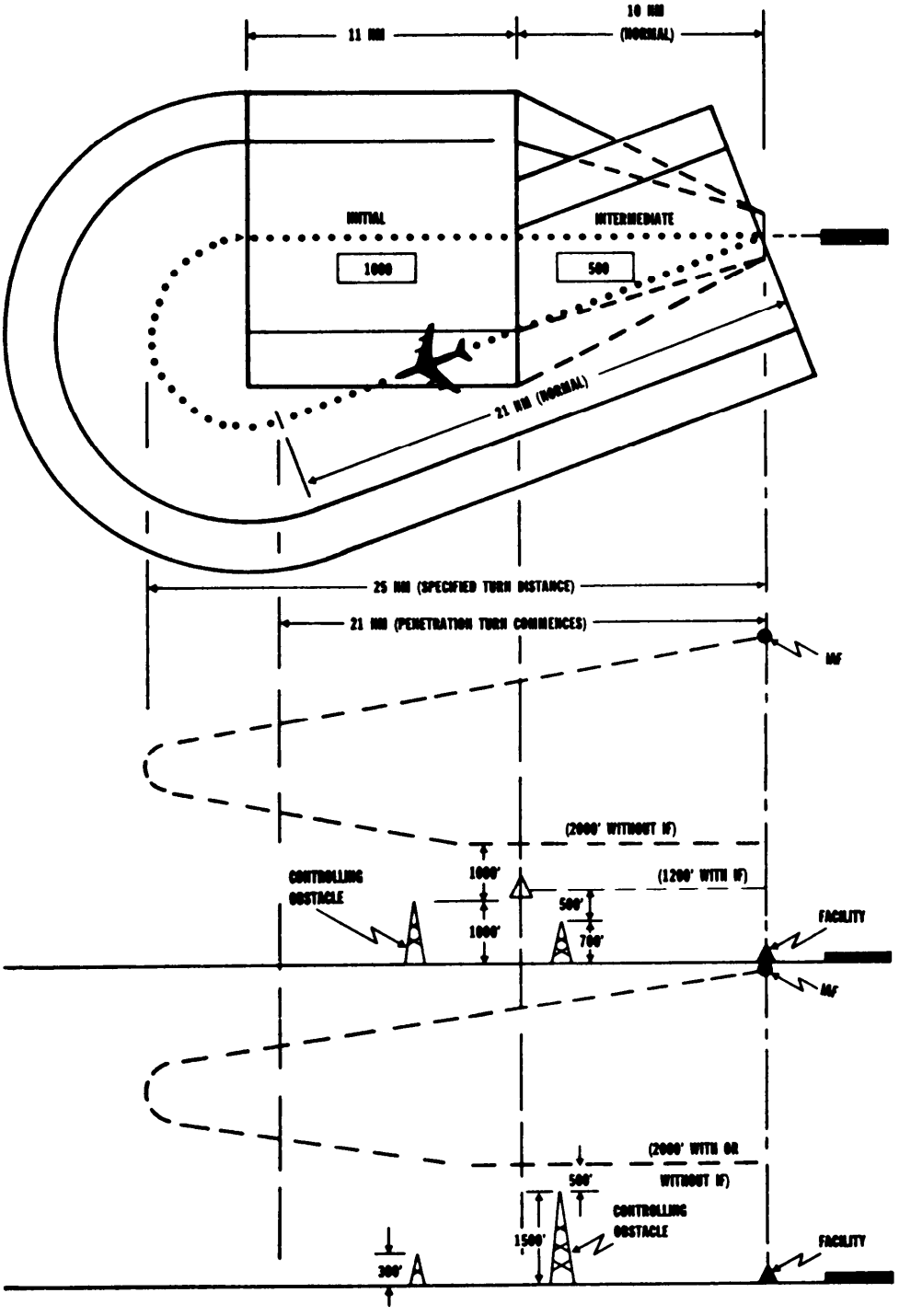


Figure 9. PENETRATION TURN INITIAL APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Par 235.

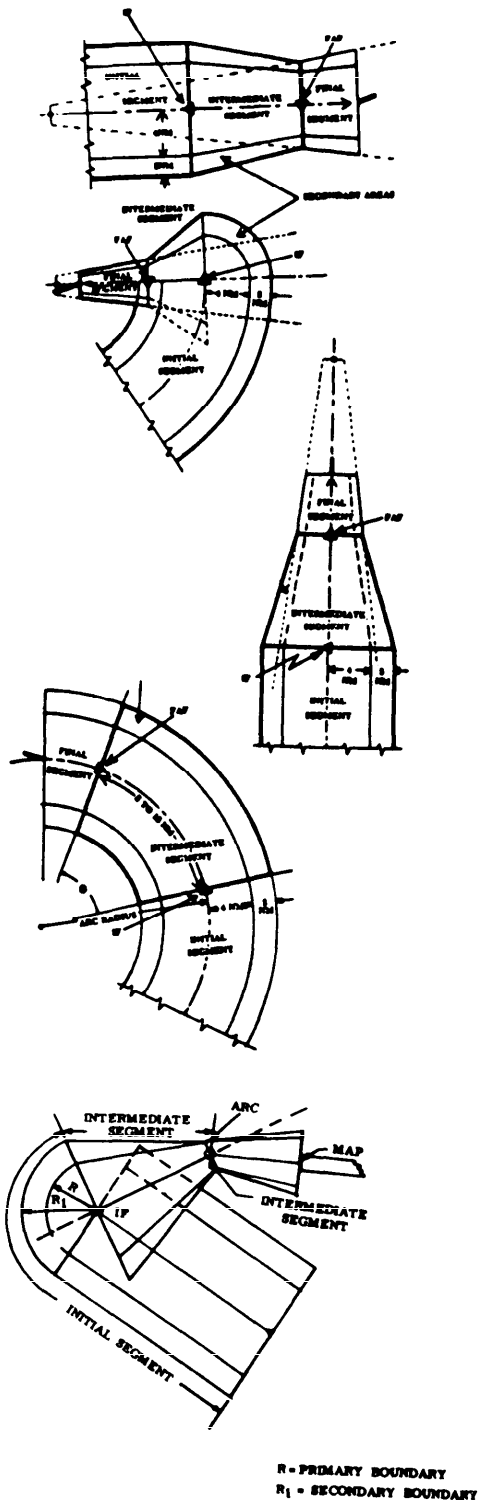


Figure 10. TYPICAL APPROACH SEGMENTS.
Par 230., 232.b., and 240

242. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT BASED ON STRAIGHT COURSES.

a. Alignment. The course to be flown in the intermediate segment shall be the same as the final approach course, except when the final approach fix is the navigation facility and it is not practical for the courses to be identical. In such cases, the intermediate course shall not differ from the final approach course by more than 30 degrees.

b. Area.

(1) Length. The intermediate segment shall not be less than 5 miles (except as provided for in Chapters 9 & 10) nor more than 15 miles in length, measured along the course to be flown. The OPTIMUM length is 10 miles. A distance greater than 10 miles should not be used unless an operational requirement justifies a greater distance. When the angle at which the initial approach course joins the intermediate course exceeds 90 degrees (See Figure 3.) the MINIMUM length of the intermediate course is as shown in Table 3.

(2) Width. The width of the intermediate segment is the same as the width of the segment it joins. When the intermediate segment is aligned with initial or final approach segments, the width of the intermediate segment is determined by joining the outer edges of the initial segment with the outer edges of the final segment. When the intermediate segment is not aligned with the initial or final approach segments, the resulting gap on the outside of the turn is a part of the preceding segment and is closed by the appropriate arc. See Figure 10. For obstacle clearance purposes, the intermediate segment is divided into a primary and a secondary area. The width of the secondary area at any given point may be determined by using the graph shown in Appendix 2, Figure 122.

Table 3. MINIMUM INTERMEDIATE COURSE LENGTH.
Par 242.b.(1)

ANGLE (DEGREES)	MINIMUM LENGTH (MILES)
91 - 96	6
97 - 102	7
103 - 108	8
109 - 114	9
115 - 120	10

c. Obstacle Clearance. A MINIMUM of 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided in the primary area of the intermediate approach segment. In the secondary area, 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum obstacle clearance required at any given point in the secondary area may be determined by using the graph in Appendix 2, Figure 123. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be considered as specified in Paragraph 323.a. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See Paragraph 241.

d. Descent Gradients. Because the intermediate segment is used to prepare the aircraft speed and configuration for entry into the final approach segment, the gradient should be as flat as possible. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in this area should not exceed 150 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 300 feet per mile except for a localizer approach published in conjunction with an ILS procedure. In this case, a higher descent gradient equal to the commissioned glide slope angle (provided it does not exceed 3°) is permissible. Higher gradients resulting from arithmetic rounding are also permissible.

NOTE: *When the descent gradient exceeds 300 feet per mile, the procedure specialist should assure a segment is provided prior to the intermediate segment to prepare the aircraft speed and configuration for entry into the final segment. This segment should be a minimum length of 5 miles and its descent gradient should not exceed 300 feet per mile.*

243. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT BASED ON AN ARC. Arcs with a radius of less than 7 miles or more than 30 miles from the navigation facility shall NOT be used. DME arc courses shall be predicated on DME collocated with a facility providing omnidirectional course information.

a. Alignment. The same arc shall be used for the intermediate and the final approach segments. No turns shall be required over the final approach fix.

b. Area.

(1) **Length.** The intermediate segment shall NOT be less than 5 miles nor more than 15 miles in length, measured along the arc. The OPTIMUM length is 10 miles. A distance greater than 10 miles should not be used unless an operational requirement justifies the greater distance.

(2) **Width.** The total width of an arc intermediate segment is 6 miles on each side of the arc. For obstacle clearance purposes, this width is divided into a primary and a secondary area. The primary area extends 4 miles laterally on each side of the arc segment. The secondary areas extend 2 miles laterally on each side of the primary area. See Figure 10.

c. Obstacle Clearance. A MINIMUM of 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided in the primary area. In the secondary area, 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum obstacle clearance required at any given point in the secondary area may be determined by using the graph in Appendix 2, Figure 123. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be considered as specified in paragraph 323a. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See paragraph 241.

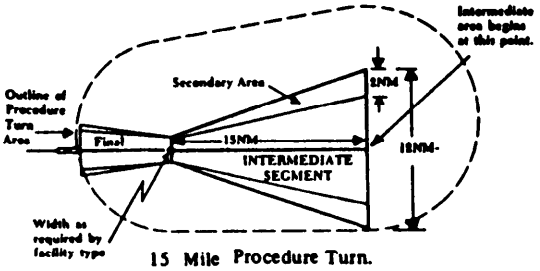
d. Descent Gradients. Criteria specified in paragraph 242d shall apply.

244. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT WITHIN A PROCEDURE TURN (PT).

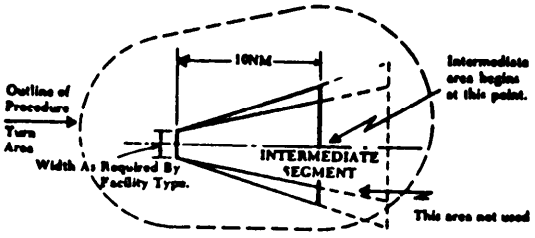
a. PT Over a FAF When the FAF is a Facility. See Figure 11.

(1) The MAXIMUM intermediate length is 15 nautical miles (NM), the OPTIMUM is 10 NM, and the MINIMUM is 5 NM. Its width is the same as the final segment at the facility and expand uniformly to 6 NM on each side of the course at 15 NM from the facility.

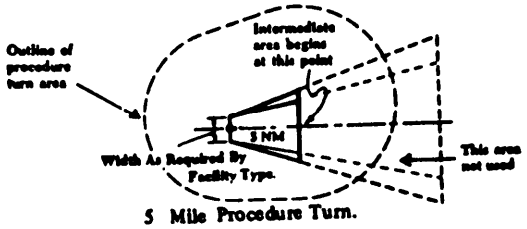
(2) The intermediate segment considered for obstacle clearance shall be the same length as the PT distance, e.g., if the procedure requires a PT to be completed within 5 NM, the intermediate segment shall be only 5 NM long, and the intermediate approach shall begin on the intermediate course 5 NM from the FAF.



15 Mile Procedure Turn.



10 Mile Procedure Turn.



5 Mile Procedure Turn.

Figure 11. INTERMEDIATE AREA WITHIN A PROCEDURE TURN AREA. FAF is the Facility. Par 244.a.

b. PT Over a FAF When the FAF is NOT a Facility. See Figure 12. The intermediate segment shall be 6 NM wide each side of the intermediate course at the PT distance.

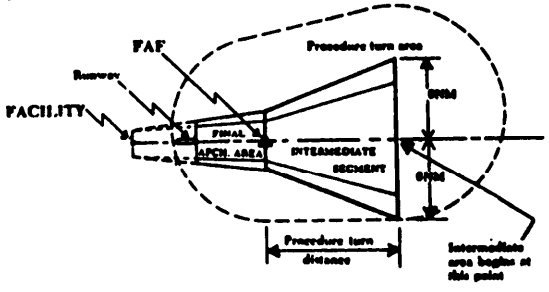


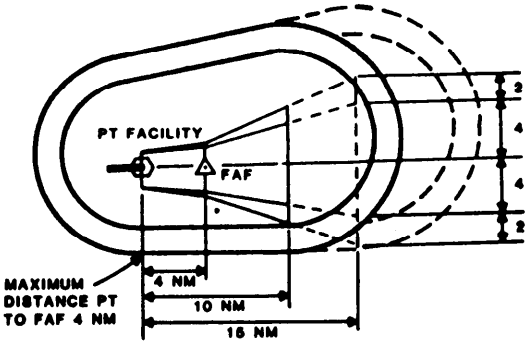
Figure 12. INTERMEDIATE AREA WITHIN THE PROCEDURE TURN AREA. FAF is NOT the Facility. Par 244.b.

c. PT Over a Facility/Fix AFTER the FAF. See Figure 13.

(1) The PT facility/fix to FAF distance shall not exceed 4 NM.

(2) The MAXIMUM PT distance is 15 NM.

(3) The length of the intermediate segment is from the start of the PT distance to the FAF and the MINIMUM length shall be 5 NM.



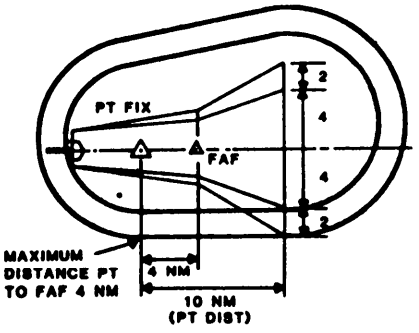


Figure 13. INTERMEDIATE AREA WITHIN THE PROCEDURE TURN AREA. PT Over the Facility/Fix After the FAF. Par 244c.

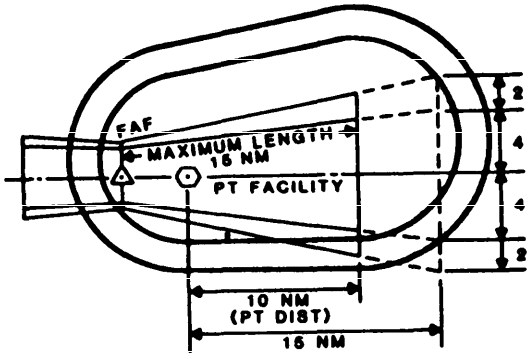
(4) Intermediate Segment Area.

(a) PT Over a Facility. The intermediate segment starts 15 NM from the facility at a width of 6 NM each side of the inbound course and connects to the width of the final segment at the FAF. The area considered for obstacle clearance is from the start of the PT distance to the FAF.

(b) PT Over a Fix (NOT a Facility). The intermediate segment starts at the PT distance at a width of 6 NM each side of the inbound course and connects to the width of the final segment at the FAF. The area considered for obstacle clearance is from the start of the PT distance to the FAF.

(5) The MAXIMUM descent gradient in the intermediate segment is 200 feet/NM. The PT distance may be increased in 1 NM increments up to 15 NM to meet descent limitations.

d. PT Over a Facility/Fix PRIOR to the FAF. See Figures 14 and 14A.



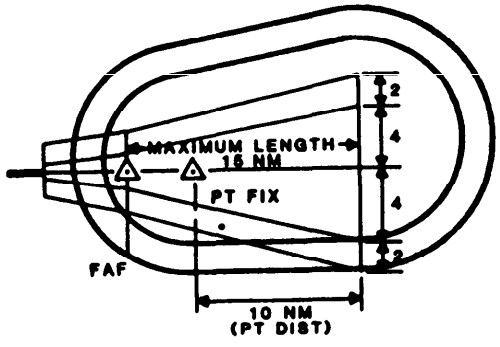


Figure 14. INTERMEDIATE AREA WITHIN THE PROCEDURE TURN AREA. PT Over the Facility/Fix Prior to the FAF. Par 244d.

(1) The MINIMUM PT distance is 5 NM.

(2) The length of the intermediate segment is from the start of the PT distance to the FAF and the MAXIMUM length is 15 NM.

(3) Intermediate Segment Area.

(a) PT Over a Facility. The intermediate segment starts 15 NM from the facility at a width of 6 NM each side of the inbound course and connects to the width of the final segment at the FAF. The area considered for obstacle clearance is from the start of the PT distance to the FAF.

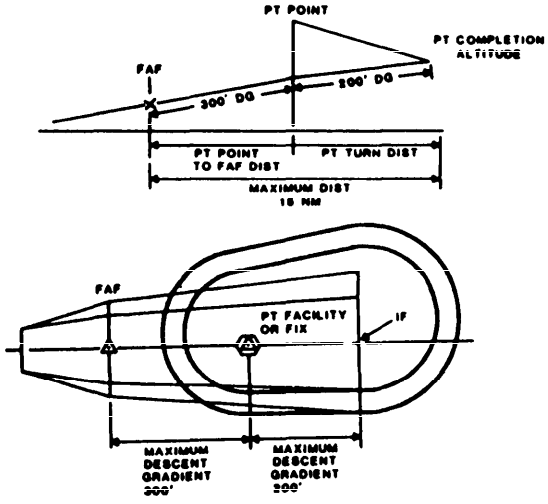


Figure 14A. INTERMEDIATE AREA WITHIN PROCEDURE TURN AREA. PT Facility/Fix Used as a Stepdown Fix. Par 244d(4).

(b) PT Over a Fix (NOT a Facility). The intermediate segment starts at the PT distance at a width of 6 NM each side of the inbound course and connects to the width of the final segment at the FAF. The area considered for obstacle clearance is from the start of the PT distance to the FAF.

(4) The MAXIMUM descent gradient is 200 feet/NM. If the PT facility/fix is a stepdown fix, the descent gradient from the stepdown fix to

the FAF may be increased to a maximum of 300 feet/NM (see Figure 14A). The PT distance may be increased in 1 NM increments up to 15 NM to meet descent limitations.

e. PT Facility/Fix Used as an Intermediate Fix (IF). See Figure 14B.

(1) When the PT inbound course is the same as the intermediate course, either paragraph 244d may be used, or a straight initial segment may be used from the start of the PT distance to the PT fix.

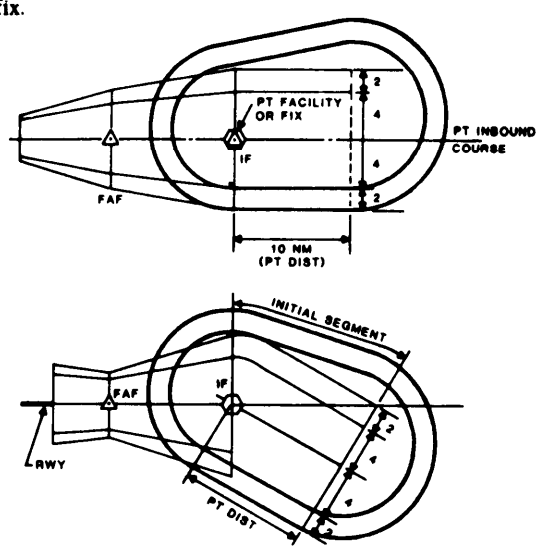


Figure 14B. USE OF PT FIX FOR IF. Par 244e.

(2) When the PT inbound course is NOT the same as the intermediate course, an intermediate segment within the PT area is NOT authorized; ONLY a straight initial segment shall be used from the start of the PT distance to the PT fix.

(3) When a straight initial segment is used, the MAXIMUM descent gradient within the PT distance is 300 feet/NM, the PT distance may be increased in 1 NM increments up to 15 NM to meet descent limitations.

f. When a PT from a facility is required to intercept a localizer course, the PT facility is considered on the localizer course when it is located within the commissioned localizer course width.

245-249. RESERVED.

Section 5. Final Approach

250. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. This is the segment in which alignment and descent for landing are accomplished. The final approach segment considered for obstacle clearance begins at the final approach fix or point and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last. A visual portion within the final approach segment may be included for straight-in nonprecision approaches. (See Paragraph 251.). Final approach may be made to a runway for a straight-in landing, or to an airport for a circling approach. Since the alignment and dimensions of the non-visual portions of the final approach segment vary with the location and type of navigation facility, applicable criteria are contained in chapters designated for specific navigation facilities.

251. VISUAL PORTION OF THE FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The visual portion begins at the visual descent point and ends at the runway threshold. The visual descent point is a defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided visual reference is established.

a. Visual Descent Point (VDP). When an instrument approach procedure incorporates a VDP, the VDP shall be identified by an approved navigational fix. The fix error shall meet the fix accuracy requirements specified in Chapter 2 of this handbook, but in no case shall the fix error exceed ±0.5 NM.

(1) Where VASI is installed, the VDP shall be located at the point where the lowest VASI glide slope intersects the lowest MDA.

(2) Where VASI is not installed, the VDP will be located at the point on the final approach course at the MDA where a descent gradient to the threshold of 300–400 feet per NM commences. If operational requirements dictate a 2° descent gradient, 212 FPNM may be used.

b. Alignment. The VDP area is centered on the runway centerline extended. See Figure 14C.

Area. The VDP area is determined as follows:

(1) When VASI is installed, the area shall begin at a point abeam the downwind VASI bar and splay ±10° either side of the runway centerline

(2) When no VASI is installed, the area shall begin at a point 500 feet upwind from the runway threshold and splay ±10° either side of the runway centerline.

(3) Where the ±10° splay does not encompass the width of the runway at the threshold, the area shall begin at the threshold at a width equal to the runway width and splay 10° from the runway edges.

(4) The area shall terminate at the VDP or where the obstacle clearance surface elevation is equal to the MDA minus the ROC, whichever occurs first.

d. Surface. The surface is inclined upward and extends outward to the point where the VDP area terminates.

(1) When the VASI is installed, the surface shall extend from the downwind VASI bar at an angle 1° lower than the aiming angle of that bar. See Figure 14D.

(2) When no VASI is installed, the surface shall extend from the threshold at an angle 1 1/2° lower than the angle resulting from the descent gradient from the VDP to the runway threshold. See Figure 14E.

e. Obstacle Clearance. No obstacle shall penetrate the surface overlying the area associated with the VDP.

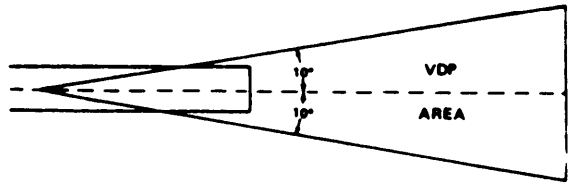


Figure 14C. VISUAL DESCENT POINT OBSTACLE CLEARANCE SURFACE (WITH VASI's). Par 251c.

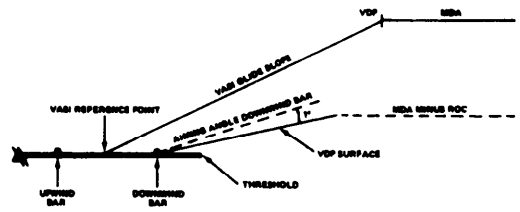


Figure 14D. VISUAL DESCENT POINT OBSTACLE CLEARANCE SURFACE (WITH VASI's). Par 251d(1).

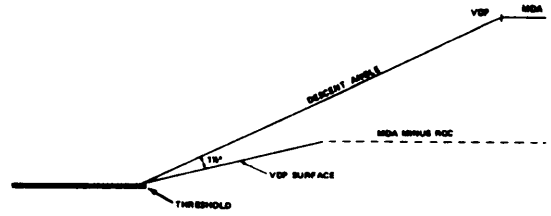


Figure 14E. VISUAL DESCENT POINT OBSTACLE CLEARANCE SURFACE (WITHOUT VASI's). Par 251d(2).

252. DESCENT GRADIENT. The chapters for specific navigational facilities and radio fixes used in the final approach segment contain flexible descent criteria. These specify the optimum and maximum permissible descent gradient per mile. Where a stepdown fix is used in the final approach segment the descent gradient is applicable to the areas between the FAF and the stepdown fix, and between the stepdown fix and the approach runway threshold.

253.–259. RESERVED.

Section 6. Circling Approach

260. CIRCLING APPROACH AREA. This is the obstacle clearance area which shall be considered for aircraft maneuvering to land on a runway which is not aligned with the final approach course of the approach procedure.

a. Alignment and Area. The size of the circling area varies with the approach category of the aircraft, as shown in Table 4. To define the limits of the circling area for the appropriate category, draw an arc of suitable radius from the center of the end of each usable runway. Join the extremities of the adjacent arcs with lines drawn tangent to the arcs. The area thus enclosed is the circling approach area. See Figure 15.

Table 4. CIRCLING APPROACH AREA RADII.

Approach Category	Radius (Miles)
A	1.3
B	1.5
C	1.7
D	2.3
E	4.5

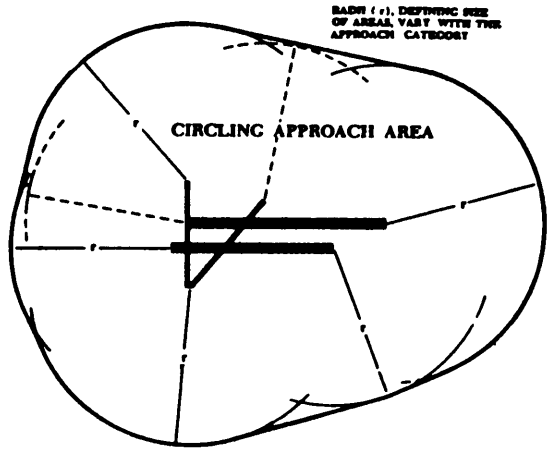


Figure 15. CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCLING APPROACH AREA. Par 260.

b. Obstacle Clearance. A minimum of 300 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided in the circling approach area. There is no secondary obstacle clearance for the circling approach. See paragraph 322.

261. CIRCLING APPROACH AREA NOT CONSIDERED FOR OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. It will be permissible to eliminate from consideration a particular sector where prominent obstacles exist in the circling approach area, provided the landing can be made without maneuvering over this sector and further provided that a note to this effect is included in the procedure. Sectors within which circling is not permitted should be identified with runway centerlines, and where necessary, certain runway lights may be required to be operating. For example, notes might read "Circling not authorized northwest of airport between Runways 9/27 and 18/36 and night circling below MDA 700 not authorized unless Runways 9/27 and 18/36 are both lighted" or "Circling not authorized west of Runway 18/36".

262.–269. RESERVED.

Section 7. Missed Approach.

270. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. (See ILS and PAR chapters for special provisions). A missed approach procedure shall be established for each instrument approach procedure. The missed approach shall be initiated at the decision height in precision approaches and at a specified point in non precision approaches. The missed approach procedure must be simple, specify an altitude, and whenever practical, a clearance limit. The missed approach altitude specified in the procedure shall be sufficient to permit holding or en route flight. All alternate missed approach procedures which are to be used must be specified in the procedure.

NOTE: *Only the primary missed approach procedure shall be included on the published chart.*

271. MISSED APPROACH ALIGNMENT. Wherever practical, the missed approach course should be a continuation of the final approach course. Turns are permitted, but should be minimized in the interest of safety and simplicity. When a turn of no more than 15° is made, the missed approach is considered straight, and the straight missed approach area applies. See paragraph 273.

272. MISSED APPROACH POINT (MAP). The missed approach point specified in the procedure may be the point of intersection of an electronic glide path with a decision height, a navigation facility, a fix, or a specified distance from the final approach fix. The specified distance may not be more than the distance from the final approach fix to the usable landing surface. The missed approach point shall NOT be located prior to the visual descent point. See paragraph 251. Specified criteria for the MAP are contained in the appropriate facility chapters.

273. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AREA. The straight missed approach area (a maximum of 15° turn from the final approach course) starts at the missed approach point. The area has a width equal to that of the final approach area at the MAP and expands uniformly to the width of the initial approach segment at a point 15 miles from the MAP. A secondary area for the reduction of obstacle clearance is identified within the missed approach area which has the same width as the final approach secondary area at the MAP, and which expands uniformly to a width of 2 miles at a point 15 miles from the MAP. Positive course guidance is required to reduce obstacle clearance in the secondary area. See Figure 16.

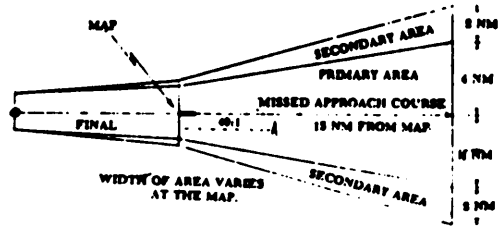


Figure 16. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par 273.

274. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Within the primary missed approach area, no obstacle shall penetrate the missed aproach surface. This surface begins over the missed approach point at a height determined by subtracting the required final approach obstacle clearance and any minimums adjustments, per paragraphs 287c(3) and 323 from the minimum descent altitude. It ascends uniformly at the rate of 1 foot vertically for each 40 feet horizontally (40:1). See Figure 17. Where the 40:1 surface reaches a height of 1,000 feet below the missed approach altitude (paragraph 270), further application of the surface is not required. In the secondary area, no obstacle may penetrate a 12:1 slope which extends outward and upward from the 40:1 surface at the inner boundaries of the secondary area. See Figure 18.

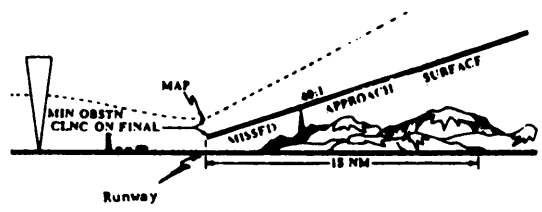
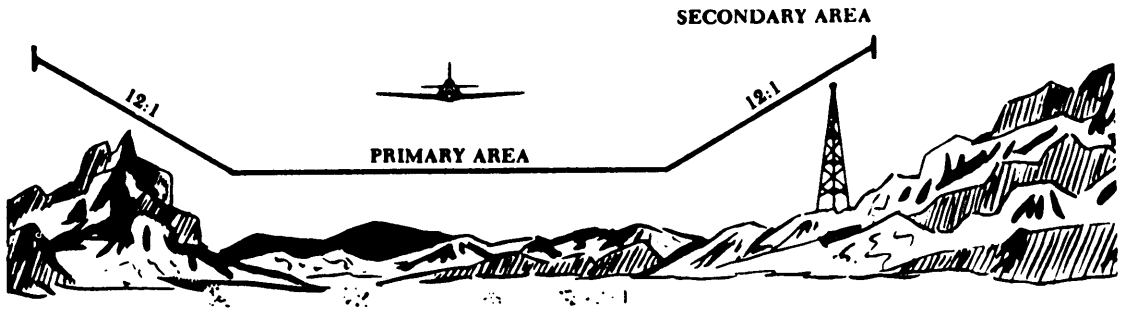


Figure 17. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Par 274.

U.S. Government Printing Office: 1986—491-828/54712



WHEN COURSE GUIDANCE IS AVAILABLE

Figure 18. MISSED APPROACH CROSS SECTION. Par. 274.

275. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. (See ILS and PAR chapters for special provisions). If a turn of more than 15 degrees from the final approach course is required, a turning missed approach area must be constructed. The dimensions and shape of this area are affected by three variables:

Width of final approach area at the MAP. (It is narrow close to the facility and wider farther away).

All categories of aircraft authorized to use the procedure.

Number of degrees of turn required by the procedure.

Secondary areas for the reduction of obstacle clearance are permitted when positive course guidance is provided. The secondary area begins where a line perpendicular to the straight flight path, originating at the point of completion of the turn, intersects the outer boundaries of the missed approach segment. The width of the secondary area expands uniformly from zero to 2 miles at the end of the missed approach segment. Figures 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, and 24 show the manner of construction of some typical turning missed approach areas. The following radii are used in the construction of these areas:

a. 90 Degree Turn or Less. Narrow final approach area at MAP. See Figure 19. To construct the area:

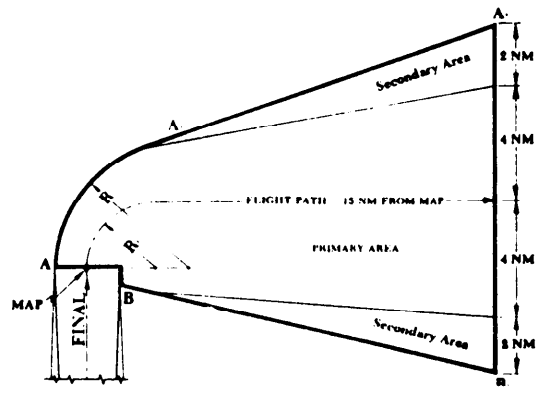


Figure 19. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. 90 Degree Turn or Less. Narrow Final Approach Area at MAP. Par 275.a.

(1) Draw an arc with the radius (R_1) from the MAP. This line is then extended outward to a point 15 miles from the MAP measured along the line. This is the assumed flight path.

Table 5. TURNING MISSED APPROACH RADII (Miles).

Approach Category	Obstacle Clearance Radius (R)	Flight Path Radius (R_1)
A	2.6	1.30
B	2.8	1.40
C	3.0	1.50
D	3.5	1.75
E	5.0	2.50

(2) Establish points "A_2" and "B_1" by measuring 6 miles perpendicular to the flight path at the 15 mile point.

(3) Now connect "A_2" and "B_1" with a straight line.

(4) Draw an arc with the radius (R) from point "A" to "A_1". This is the edge of the obstacle clearance area.

(5) Establish point "B" by measuring backward on the edge of the final approach area a distance of 1 mile or a distance equal to the fix error PRIOR to the FAF, whichever is greater. *

(6) Connect points "A_1," and "A_2", and points "B" and "B_1" with straight lines.

b. 90° Turn or Less. Wide final approach area at MAP. See Figure 20. To construct the area:

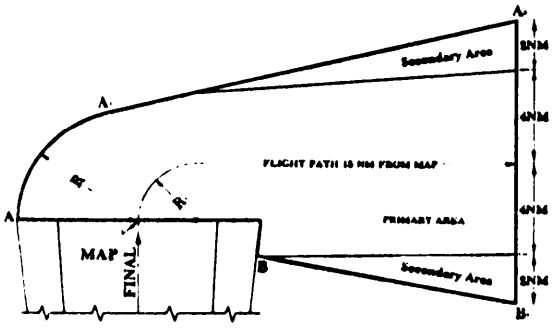


Figure 20. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. 90 Degree Turn or Less. Wide Final Approach Area at MAP. Par 275.b.

(1) Draw an arc with the appropriate radius (R_1) from the MAP. This line is then extended outward to a point 15 miles from the MAP, measured along the line. This is the assumed flight path.

(2) Establish points "A_2" and "B_1" by measuring 6 miles perpendicular to the flight path at the 15 mile point.

(3) Now connect points "A_2" and "B_1" with a straight line.

(4) Draw an arc with the appropriate radius (R) from point "A" to point "A_1". This is the edge of the obstacle clearance area.

(5) Establish point "B" by measuring backward on the edge of the final approach area a distance of 1 mile or a distance equal to the fix error PRIOR to the FAF, whichever is greater. *

(6) Connect points "A_1" and "A_2", and points "B" and "B_1" with straight lines.

c. More Than 90° Turn. Narrow final approach area at MAP. See Figure 21. To construct the area:

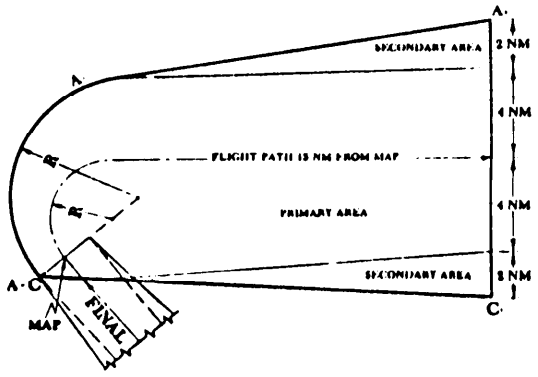


Figure 21. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. More than 90 Degree Turn. Narrow Final Approach Area at the MAP. Par 275.c.

(1) Draw an arc with the radius (R_1) from the MAP through the required number of degrees and then continue outward to a point 15 miles from the MAP, measured along this line, which is the assumed flight path.

(2) Establish points "A_2" and "C_1" by measuring 6 miles on each side of the assumed flight path and perpendicular to it at the 15 mile point.

(3) Now connect points "A_2" and "C_1" with a straight line.

(4) Draw an arc with the radius (R) from point "A" to point "A_1" (Figure 21 uses 135 degrees). This is the outer edge of the obstacle clearance area.

(5) Locate point "C" at the inner edge of the final approach secondary area opposite the MAP. (Point "A" and point "C" will be coincident when the MAP is the facility.

(6) Connect points "A_1" and "A_2" and points "C" and "C_1" with straight lines.

d. More than 90 Degree Turn. Wide final approach area at MAP. See Figure 22. To construct the area:

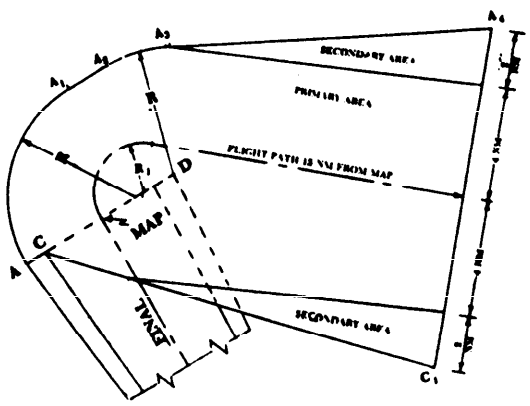


Figure 22. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. More Than 90 Degree Turn. Wide Final Approach at MAP. Par 275.d.

(1) Draw the flight path arc with radius (R_1) from the MAP, and then continue the line outward to a point 15 miles from the MAP, measured along the assumed flight path.

(2) Establish points "A_4" and "C_1" by measuring 6 miles on each side of the flight path and perpendicular to it at the 15 mile point.

(3) Now connect points "A_4" and "C_1" with a straight line.

(4) Draw a 90 degree arc with the appropriate radius (R) from point "A" to point "A_1". Note that when the width of the final approach area at the MAP is greater than the appropriate radius (R), the turn is made in two increments when constructing the obstacle clearance area.

(5) Draw an arc with the radius (R) from point "D" (edge of final approach secondary area opposite MAP) the required number of degrees from point "A_2" to point "A_3". Compute the number of degrees by subtracting 90 from the total turn magnitude.

(6) Connect points "A_1" and "A_2" with a straight line.

(7) Locate point "C" at the inner edge of the final approach secondary area opposite the MAP.

(8) Connect point "A_3" with point "A_4", and connect point "C" with point "C_1" using straight lines.

e. 180 Degree Turn. Narrow final approach area at MAP. See Figure 23. To construct the area:

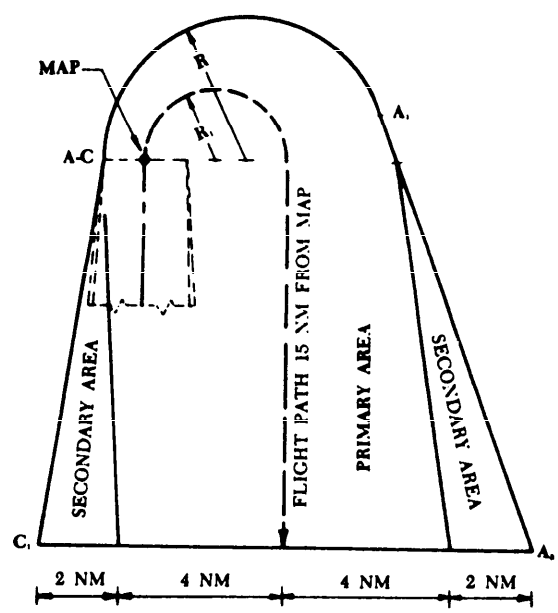


Figure 23. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. 180 Degree Turn. Narrow Final Approach Area at MAP. Par 275.e.

(1) Draw an arc with the radius (R_1) from the MAP through 180 degrees, and then continue outward to a point 15 miles from the MAP, measured along this line, which is the assumed flight path.

(2) Establish points "A_2" and "C_1" by measuring 6 miles on each side of the assumed flight path, and perpendicular to it at the 15 mile point.

(3) Now connect point "A_2" and point "C_1" with a straight line.

(4) Locate point "C" at the inner edge of the final approach secondary area opposite the MAP. (Point "A" and point "C" will be coincident when the MAP is the facility.)

(5) Draw an arc with the radius (R) from point "A" to point "A_1" (180 degrees). This is the outer edge of the obstacle clearance area.

(6) Connect points "A_1" and "A_2", and points "C" and "C_1" by straight lines. (The line "A_1–A_2" joins the arc tangentially.)

f. 180 Degree Turn. Wide final approach area at MAP. See Figure 24. To construct the area:

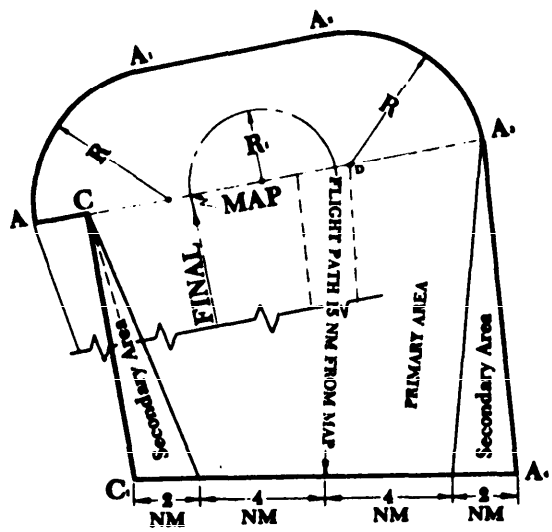


Figure 24. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. 180 Degree Turn. Wide Final Approach Area at MAP. Par 275.f.

(1) Draw the assumed flight path arc with the radius (R_1) from the MAP the required number of degrees to the desired flight path or course.

(2) Establish points "A_4" and "C_1" by measuring 6 miles on each side of the assumed flight path and perpendicular to it at the 15 mile point.

(3) Connect points "A_4" and "C_1" with straight lines.

(4) Draw a 90 degree arc with the appropriate radius (R) from point "A" to point "A_1". Note that when the width of the final approach area at the MAP is greater than the appropriate radius (R) the turn is made in two increments when constructing the obstacle clearance area.

(5) Draw an arc with the radius (R) from point "D" (edge of final approach area opposite MAP) the required number of degrees from point "A_2" to point "A_3". Compute the number of degrees by subtracting 90 degrees from the total turn magnitude.

(6) Connect points "A_1" and "A_2" with a straight line.

(7) Locate point "C" at the inner edge of the final approach secondary area opposite the MAP.

(8) Connect points "A_3" and "A_4" and points "C" and "C_1" with straight lines. (The line "A_3–A_4" joins the arc tangentially.)

276. TURNING MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. The methods of determining the height of the 40:1 missed approach surface over

obstacles in the turning missed approach area vary with the amount of turn involved.

a. 90° Turn or Less. See Figure 25. Zone 1 is a 1.6 mile continuation of the final approach secondary area, and has identical obstacle clearance requirements. Zone 2 is the area in which the height of the missed approach surface over an obstacle must be determined. * To do this, first identify line "A–D –B". Point "B" is located by measuring backward on the edge of the final approach area a distance of 1 mile or a distance equal to the fix error prior to the FAF, whichever is greater. This is to safeguard the short–turning aircraft. Thus the height of the missed approach surface over an obstacle in Zone 2 is determined by measuring the straight–line distance from the obstacle to the nearest point on line "A–D–B" and computing the height based on the 40:1 ratio. The height of the missed approach surface over the MAP is the same as specified in paragraph 274. When an obstacle is in a secondary area, measure the straight–line distance from the nearest point on the line "A– D–B" to the point on the inner edge of the secondary area which is nearest the obstacle. Compute the height of the missed approach surface at this point, using the 40:1 ratio. Then apply the 12:1 secondary area ratio from the height of the surface for the remaining distance to the obstacle.

b. More Than 90° Turn. See Figure 26. In this case a third Zone becomes necessary. Zone 3 is defined by extending a line from point "B" to the extremity of the missed approach area perpendicular to the final approach course.

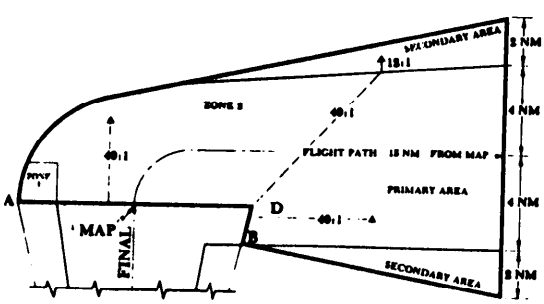


Figure 25. TURNING MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE, 90 Degree Turn or Less.

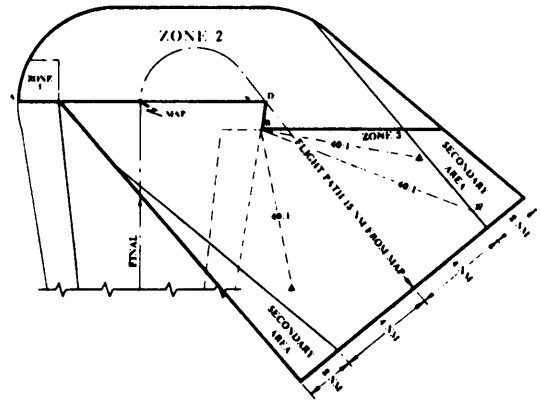


Figure 26. TURNING MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. More Than a 90 Degree Turn. Par 276.b.

Zone 3 will encompass all of the missed approach area not specifically within Zones 1 and 2. All distance measurements in Zone 3 are made from point "B". Thus the height of the missed approach surface over an obstacle in Zone 3 is determined by measuring the distance from the obstacle to point "B" and computing the height based on the 40:1 ratio. The height of the missed approach surface over point "B" for Zone 3 computations is the same as the height of the MDA. For an obstacle in the secondary area, use the same measuring method prescribed in paragraph 276a, except that the original measuring point shall be point "B".

c. Secondary Area. In the secondary area no obstacles may penetrate a 12:1 slope which extends outward and upward from the 40:1 surface from the inner to the outer boundary lines of the secondary area.

277. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. If a straight climb to a specific altitude followed by a turn is necessary to avoid obstacles, a combination straight and turning missed approach area must be constructed. The straight portion of this missed approach area is Section 1. The portion in which the turn is made is Section 2.

a. Straight Portion. Section 1 is a portion of the normal straight missed approach area and is constructed as specified in paragraph 273. Obstacle clearance is provided as specified in paragraph 274 except that secondary area reductions do not apply.

The length of Section 1 is determined as shown in Figure 27 and relates to the need to climb to a specified altitude prior to commencing the turn. Point A_1 marks the end of Section 1. Point B_1 is one mile from the end of Section 1. (See Figure 27).

b. Turning Portion. Section 2 is constructed as specified in paragraph 275 except that it begins at the end of Section 1 instead of at the MAP. To determine the height which must be attained before commencing the missed approach turn, first identify the controlling obstacle on the side of Section 1 to which the turn is to be made. Then measure the distance from this obstacle to the nearest edge of the Section 1 area. Using this distance as illustrated in Figure 27, determine the height of the 40:1 slope at

EXAMPLE

Given:

1. MDA 360′ MSL
2. Obstacle height: 1098′ MSL
3. Obstacle in section 2 = 3NM from near edge of section

Find:

1. Minimum altitude at which aircraft can start turn.
2. Required length of section 1.

Solution:

1. Find height MSL at near edge.
   a. A = 18,228′ (3 mi) ÷ 40 = 456′.
   b. 1098′ MSL − 456′ = 642′ MSL.
2. Add 250′ obstacle clearance.
   a. 250′ + 642′ = 892′ MSL.
3. Round up to next higher 20′.
   a. 892′ = 900′ MSL to start turn.
4. Find height to climb from MDA to 900′ MSL.
   a. 900′ − 360′ = 540′ to climb.
5. Find length of section 1.
   a. 540′ × 40 = 21,600′ — length of section 1.
6. Missed approach instructions.
   a. "Climb to 900′ before starting right turn to, etc."

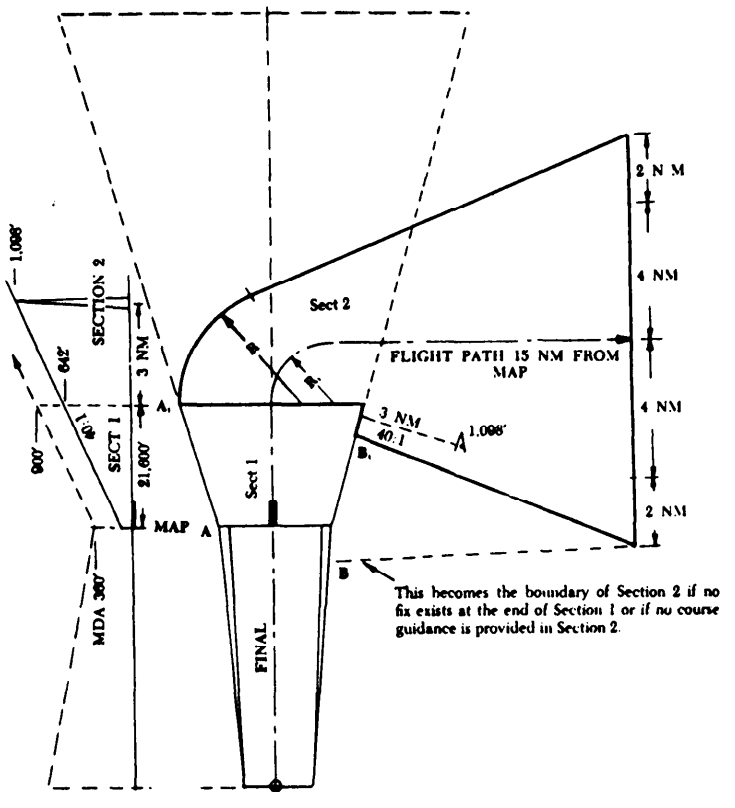


Figure 27. COMBINATION MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par. 277.

the edge of Section 1. This height plus 250 feet (rounded off to the next higher 20-foot increment) is the height at which the turn should be started. Obstacle clearance requirements in Section 2 are the same as those specified in paragraph 276 except that Zone 1 is not considered and Section 2 is expanded to start at Point B if no fix exists at the end of Section 1 or if no course guidance is provided in Section 2. See Figure 27.

278. END OF MISSED APPROACH. Aircraft shall be assumed to be in the initial approach or en route environment upon reaching minimum obstacle clearance altitude (MOCA) or minimum en route altitude (MEA). Thereafter, the initial approach or the en route clearance criteria apply.

279. RESERVED.

Section 8. Terminal Area Fixes

280. GENERAL. Terminal area fixes include, but are not limited to the Final Approach Fix (FAF), the Intermediate Fix (IF), the Initial Approach Fix (IAF), the holding fix, and when possible, a fix to mark the missed approach point. Each fix is a geographical position on a defined course. Terminal area fixes should be based on similar navigation systems. For example, TACAN, VORTAC, and VOR/DME facilities provide Radial/DME fixes. NDB facilities provide bearings. VOR facilities provide VOR radial. The use of integrated (VHF/NDB) fixes shall be limited to those intersection fixes where no satisfactory alternative exists.

281. FIXES FORMED BY INTERSECTION. A geographical position can be determined by the intersection of course or radials from two stations. One station provides the course the aircraft if flying and the other provides a crossing indication which identifies a point along the course which is being flown. Because all stations have accuracy limitations, the geographical point which is identified is not precise, but may be anywhere within a quadrangle which surrounds the plotted point of intersection. Figure 28 illustrates the intersection of an arc and a radial from the same DME facility and the intersection of two radials or courses from different navigation facilities. The area encompassed by the sides of the quadrangle fromed in these ways is referred to in this publication as the "fix displacement area."

282. DME FIXES. A DME fix is formed by a DME reading on a positive navigational course. The information should be derived from a single facility with collocated azimuth and DME antennas. However, when a unique operaitonal requirement indicates a need for DME information from other than collocated facilities, an individual instrument approach procedure which specifies DME may be approved, provided the angular divergence between the signal sources at the fix does not exceed 23°. See Figure 28. For limitation on use of DME with ILS, see paragraph 912.

* **283. FIXES FORMED BY RADAR.** Where ATC can provide the service, Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR) may be used for any terminal area fix. Precision Approach Radar (PAR) may be used to form any fix within the radar coverage of the PAR system. Air Route Surveillance Radar (ARSR) may be used for initial approach and intermediate approach fixes. *

284. FIX DISPLACEMENT AREA. The areas protrayed in Figure 28 extend along the flight course from point "A" to point "C". The fix error is a plus-or-minus value, and is represented by the lengths from "A" to "B" and "B" to "C". Each of these lengths is applied differently. The fix error may cause the fix to be received early (between "B" and "C"). Because the fix may be received early, protection against obstacles must be provided from a line perpendicular to the flight course at point "A".

285. INTERSECTION FIX DISPLACEMENT FACTORS. The intersection fix displacement area is determined by the system use accuracy of the navigation fixing systems. The system use accuracy in VOR and TACAN type systems is determined by the combination of ground station error, airborne receiving system error, and pilotage error. Long experience in en route use of VOR has shown that a VOR system use accuracy along radial courses of plus-or-minus 4.5°, 95% of occasions, is a realistic, conservative figure. Thus, in normal use of VOR or TACAN intersections, fix displacement factors may conservatively by assessed as follows:

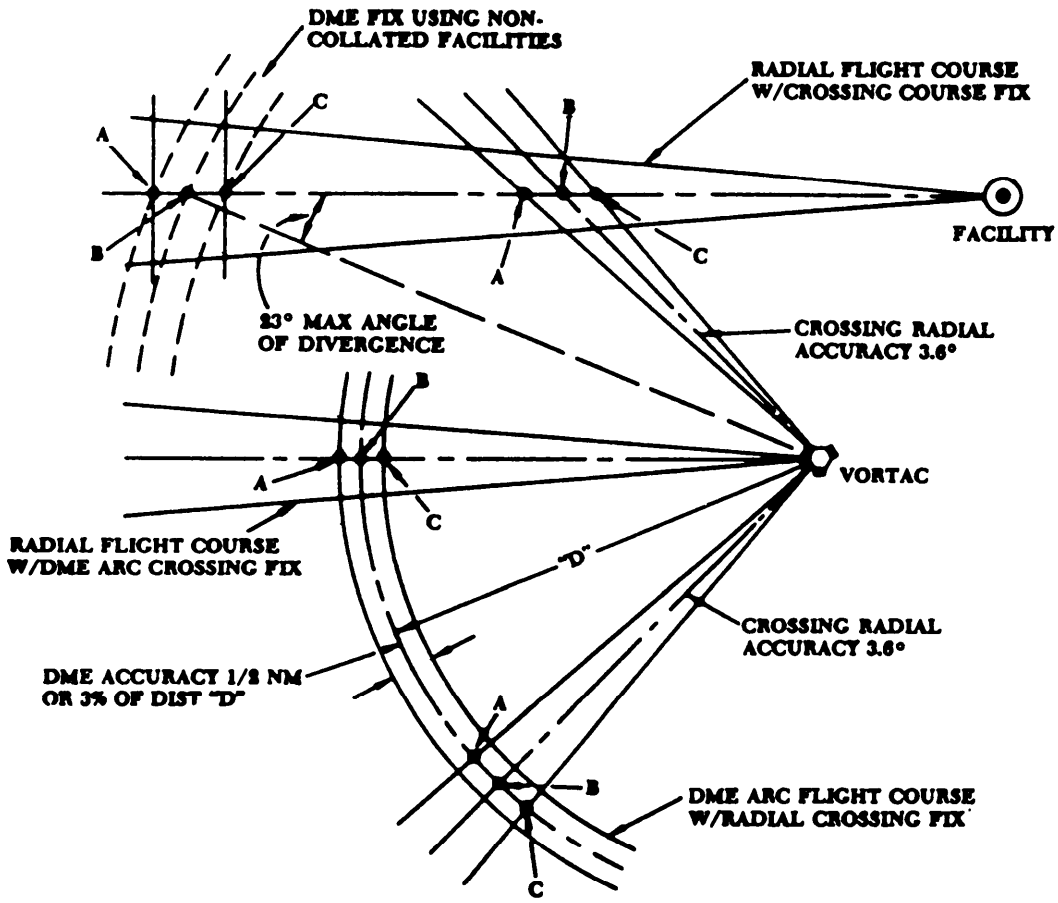


Figure 28. INTERSECTION FIX DISPLACEMENT. Par 281, 282, 283.

a. Along-Course Accuracy.

(1) VOR/TACAN radials, plus-or-minus 4.5 degrees.

(2) Localizer course, plus-or-minus 1 degree.

* (3) NDB courses or bearing, plus-or-minus 5 * degrees.

NOTE: *The plus-or-minus 4.5-degree (95 percent)* VOR/TACAN figure is achieved when the ground station course signal error, the pilotage error, and the VOR airborne equipment error are controlled to certain normal tolerances. Where it can be shown that any of the three error elements is consistently different from these assumptions (for example, if flight inspection shows a consistently better VOR signal accuracy or stability than the one assumed, or if it can be shown that airborne equipment error is consistently smaller than assumed), VOR fix displacement factors smaller than those shown above may be utilized in accordance with paragraph 141.

b. Crossing Course Accuracy.

(1) VOR/TACAN radials, plus-or-minus 3.6°.

* (2) Localizer course, plus-or-minus 0.5° *

(3) NDB bearings, plus-or-minus 5°.

NOTE: The plus-or-minus 3.6 degree (95 percent) VOR/TACAN figure is achieved when ground station course signal error and the VOR airborne equipment error are controlled to certain normal tolerances. Since the crossing course is not flown, pilotage error is not a contributing element. Where it can be shown that either of the error elements is consistently different, VOR displacement factors smaller than those shown above may be utilized in accordance with paragraph 141.

286. OTHER FIX DISPLACEMENT FACTORS.

a. Radar. Plus-or-minus 500 feet or 3% of the distance to the antenna, whichever is greater.

b. DME. Plus-or-minus 1/2 (0.5) miles or 3 percent of the distance to the antenna, whichever is greater.

c. 75 mhz Marker Beacon.

(1) Normal powered fan marker, plus-or-minus 2 miles.

(2) Bone-shaped fan marker, plus-or-minus 1 mile.

(3) Low powered fan marker, plus-or-minus 1/2 mile.

(4) "Z"-marker, plus-or-minus 1/2 mile.

NOTE: Where these 75 MHz marker values are restrictive, the actual coverage of the fan marker (2 milliamp signal level) at the specific location and altitude may be used instead.

d. Overheading a Station. The fix error involved in station passage is not considered significant in terminal applications. The fix is therefore considered to be at the plotted position of the navigation facility. The use of TACAN station passage as a fix is NOT acceptable for holding fixes or high altitude initial approach fixes.

287. SATISFACTORY FIXES.

a. Intermediate or Initial Approach Fix. To be satisfactory as an intermediate or initial approach fix, the fix error must not be larger than 50 percent of the appropriate intermediate or initial segment distance which follows the fix. Measurements are made from the plotted fix position. See Figure 29.

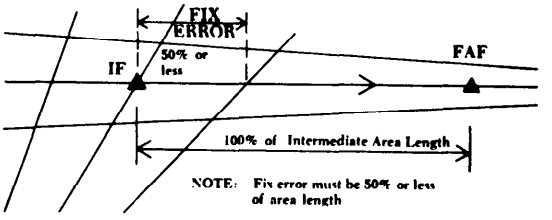


Figure 29. INTERMEDIATE OR INITIAL APPROACH FIX ERRORS. Par 287.

b. Holding Fixes. Any terminal area fix except overheading a TACAN may be used for holding, except that if the fix is an intersection formed by courses or radials the following conditions shall exist:

(1) The angle of divergence of the intersecting courses or radials shall not be less than 45°

(2) If the facility which provides the crossing courses is NOT an NDB, it may be as much as 45 miles from the point of intersection.

(3) If the facility which provides the crossing course is an NDB, it must be within 30 miles of the intersection point.

(4) If distances stated in 287b(2) or (3) are exceeded, the minimum angle of divergence of the intersecting courses must be increased at the following rate:

(a) If an NDB facility is involved, 1° for each mile over 30 miles.

(b) If an NDB facility is NOT involved, 1/2° for each mile over 45 miles.

For example, if the intersection is formed by radials from VOR's 30 and 45 miles away, the minimum angle is 45°. If one of the facilities is NDB, the minimum angle is 60°. See Figure 30.

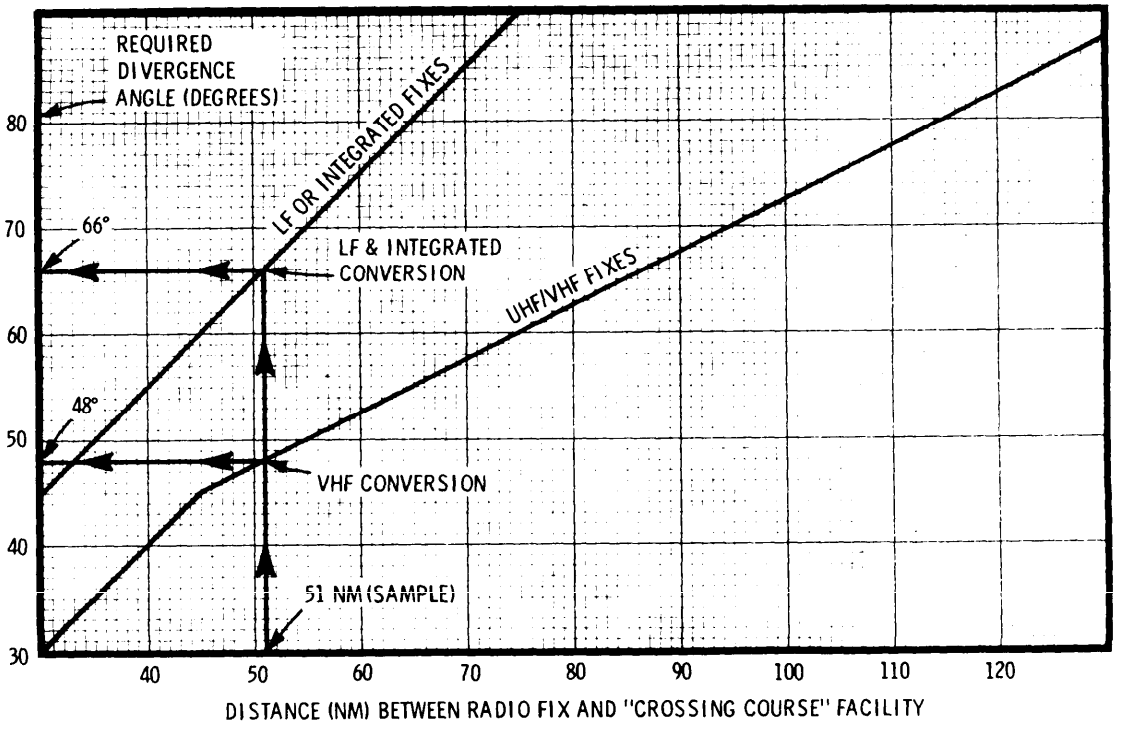


Figure 30. MINIMUM DIVERGENCE ANGLE FOR HOLDING FIXES. Par 287.b.

c. Final Approach Fix (FAF). For a fix to be satisfactory for use as a final approach fix, the fix error shall not exceed plus-or-minus 1 mile (see Figure 31), except that it may be as large as plus-or-minus 2 miles when:

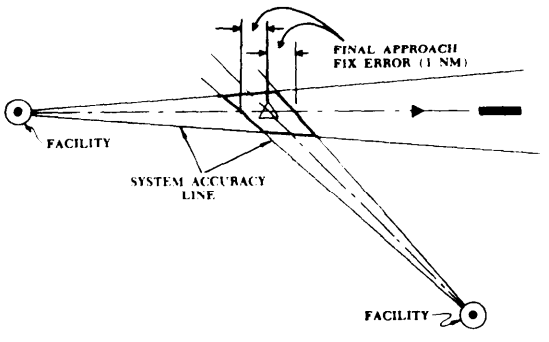


Figure 31. MEASUREMENT OF FINAL APPROACH FIX ERROR. Par 287.c.

(1) The missed approach point is marked by overheading an air navigation facility (except 75 mhz markers); OR

(2) A buffer of equal length to the excessive fix error is provided between the published missed approach point and the point where the missed approach surface begins (see Figure 32); OR

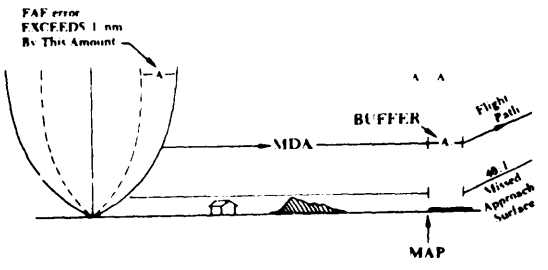


Figure 32. FINAL APPROACH FIX ERROR BUFFER. Par 287.c.(2)

(3) The minimum descent altitude is raised at a rate of 15 feet per one-tenth mile of excessive fix error; OR

(4) A combination of the actions in (2) and (3) above will adjust the missed approach surface to compensate for excessive fix error.

288. USING FIXES FOR DESCENT.

a. Distance Available for Descent. When applying descent gradient criteria applicable to an approach segment (initial, intermediate or final approach areas), the measuring point is the plotted position of the fix. See Figure 33.

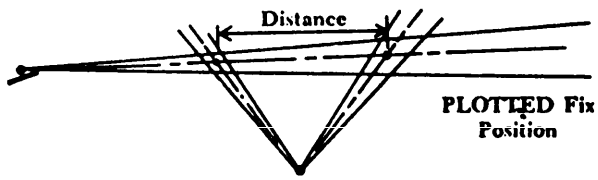


Figure 33. DISTANCE FOR DESCENT GRADIENT APPLICATION. Par 288.a.

b. Obstacle Clearance After Passing a Fix. It is assumed that descent will begin at the earliest point the fix can be received. Full obstacle clearance shall be provided from this point to the plotted point of the next fix. Therefore, the altitude to which descent is to be made at the fix must provide the same clearance over obstacles in the fix displacement area as it does over those in the approach segment which is being entered. See Figures 34 and 34A.

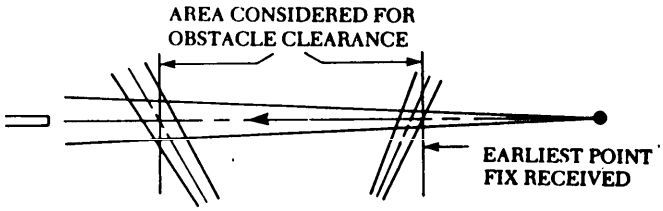


Figure 34. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREA BETWEEN FIXES. Par 288.b.

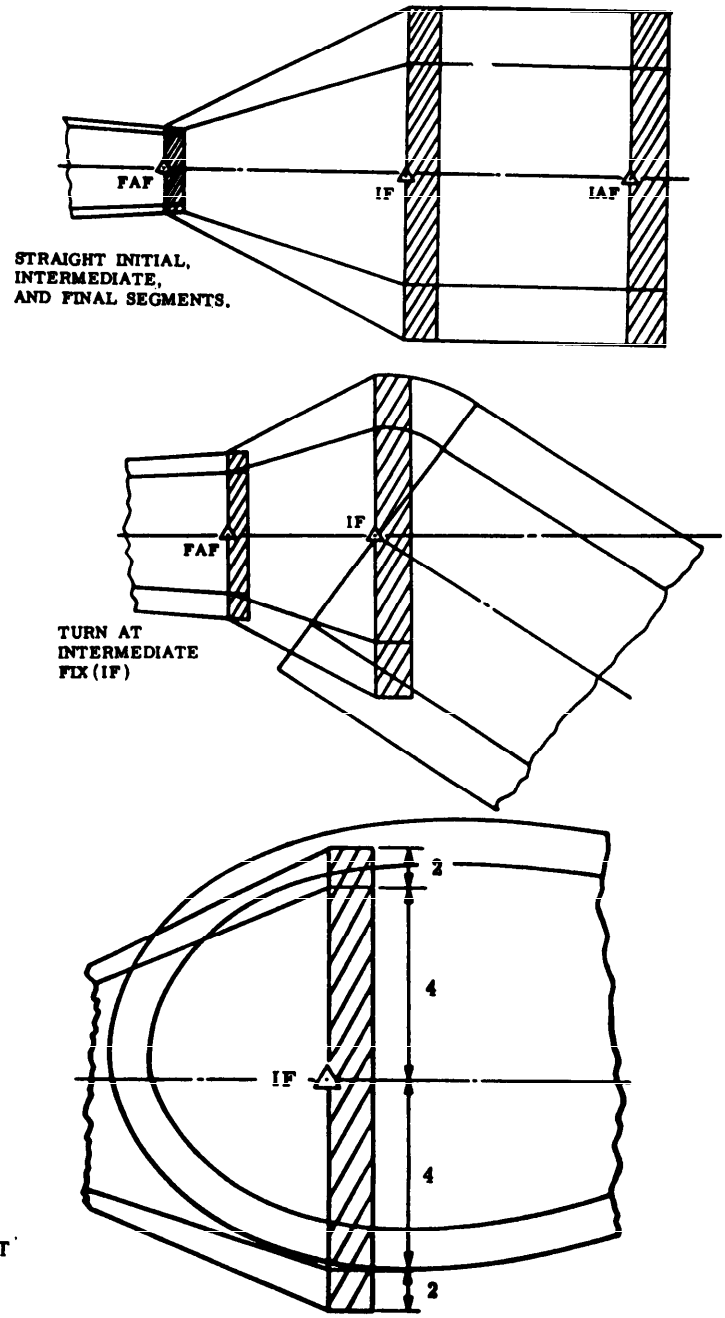


Figure 34A. CONSTRUCTION OF FIX DISPLACEMENT AREA FOR OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. PAR 288.b.

* * * *

* c. *Stepdown Fixes.* See Figure 35.

(1) **DME or Radar Fixes.** There is no maximum number of stepdown fixes in any segment when DME or radar is used. Multiple fixes shall be in whole NM increments.

(2) **Intersection Fixes.**

(a) Only one stepdown fix is permitted in the final and intermediate segments.

(b) If an intersection fix forms an FAF, IF, or IAF:

1 The same crossing facility shall be used for the stepdown fix(es) within that segment.

2 All fixes from the IF to the last stepdown fix in final shall be formed using the same crossing facility.

(c) Table 5A shall be used to determine the number of stepdown fixes permitted in the initial segment. Multiple fixes shall be in whole NM increments.

(3) **Altitude at the Fix.** The minimum altitude at each stepdown fix shall be specified in 100-foot increments, except the altitude at the last stepdown fix in the final segment may be specified in a 20-foot increment.

(4) **In the Final Segment:**

(a) A stepdown fix shall not be established unless a decrease of at least 60 feet in MDA or a reduction in visibility minimums is achieved.

(b) The last stepdown fix error shall not exceed ± 2 NM. When the fix error exceeds ± 1 NM, see paragraph 287c. The fix error for other stepdown fixes in final shall not exceed 1 NM.

(c) Minimums shall be published both with and without the last stepdown fix, except for procedures requiring DME or NDB procedures which use a VOR radial to define the stepdown fix. *

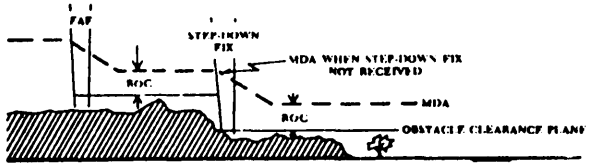


Figure 35. FINAL SEGMENT STEPDOWN FIX, par. 288c.

Table 5A. Stepdown Fixes in Initial Segment

Length of Segment	Number of Fixes
5-10 NM	1 stepdown fix
over 10-15 NM	2 stepdown fixes
over 15 NM	3 stepdown fixes

289. **OBSTACLES CLOSE TO A FINAL APPROACH OR STEPDOWN FIX.** Existing obstacles located in the final approach area within 1 mile past the point where a fix can first be received may be eliminated from consideration by application of a descent gradient of 1 foot vertically for every 7 feet horizontally. This 7:1 descent gradient shall begin at the point where the fix can first be received at a height determined by subtracting the required final approach obstacle clearance (ROC) from the minimum altitude required at the fix. Obstacles which receive this treatment shall be noted on the procedures. See Figure 36. To determine fix error see paragraphs 284, 285, and 286.

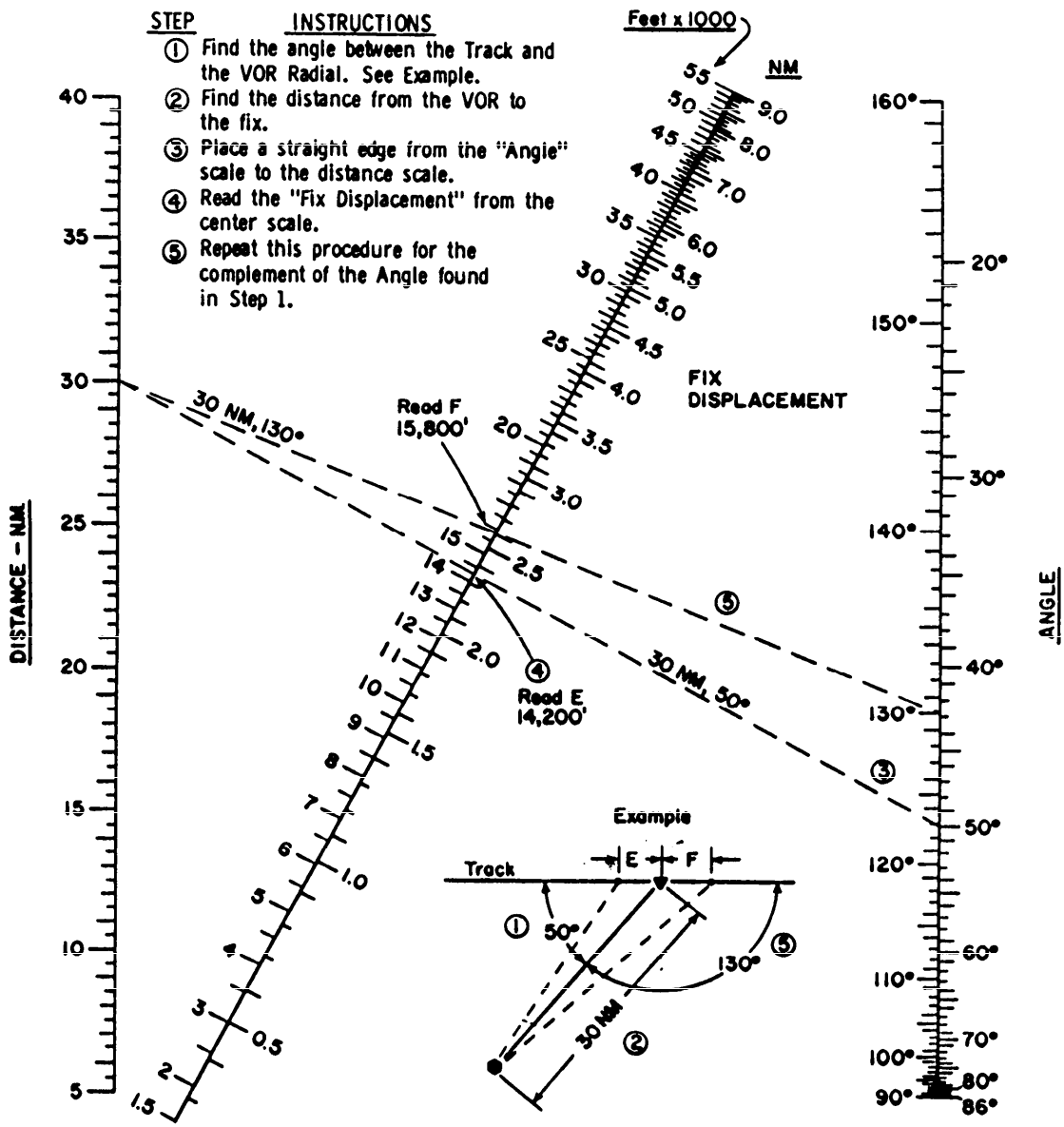
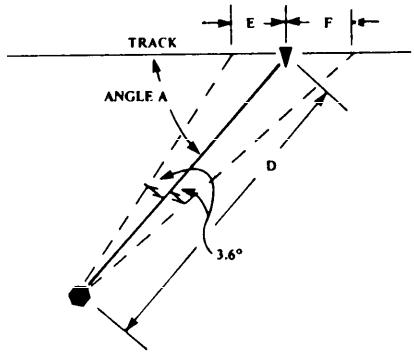


Figure 35A. FIX DISPLACEMENT NOMOGRAPH.

The 3.6° Fix Displacement Nomograph is sufficiently accurate for most applications; however, when precise values are desired the following formulas may be used:



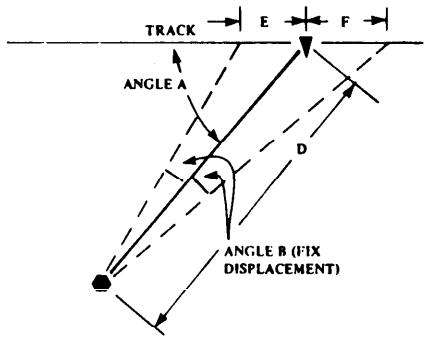
3.6° Fix Displacement

Formula — *Example* A = 50° D = 30 NM

$$E = \frac{381.53 \times D}{\sin(A + 3.6^\circ)} : \frac{381.53 \times 30}{\sin 53.6^\circ} = \frac{11{,}445.9}{.8049} = 14{,}220.3'$$

$$F = \frac{381.53 \times D}{\sin(A - 3.6^\circ)} : \frac{381.53 \times 30}{\sin 46.4^\circ} = \frac{11{,}445.9}{.7242} = 15{,}804.9'$$

Where: E and F are in feet, and D is in Nautical Miles.



Any Fix Displacement Error

Formula — *Example* A = 50° D = 30 NM Angle B = 4.5°

$$E = \frac{6{,}076.103 \times D \times \sin B}{\sin(A + B)} : \frac{6{,}076.103 \times 30 \times \sin 4.5^\circ}{\sin(50^\circ + 4.5^\circ)}$$

$$= \frac{6{,}076.103 \times 30 \times .07846}{\sin 54.5^\circ} = \frac{14{,}301.9}{.8141} = 17{,}567.7'$$

$$F = \frac{6{,}076.103 \times D \times \sin B}{\sin(A - B)} : \frac{6{,}076.103 \times 30 \times \sin 4.5^\circ}{\sin(50^\circ - 4.5^\circ)}$$

$$= \frac{6{,}076.103 \times 30 \times .07846}{\sin 45.5^\circ} = \frac{14{,}301.9}{.71325} = 20{,}051.7'$$

Where: E and F are in feet, and D is in Nautical Miles.

Figure 35B. FIX DISPLACEMENT COMPUTATIONS

* *

Section 9. Holding

290. HOLDING PATTERNS. Criteria for holding pattern airspace are contained in FAA Handbook 7130.3, and provide for separation of aircraft from aircraft. The criteria contained herein deal with the clearance of holding aircraft from obstacles.

291. ALIGNMENT. Whenever practical, holding patterns should be aligned to coincide with the flight course to be flown after leaving the holding fix. However, when the flight path to be flown is along an arc, the holding pattern should be aligned on a radial. When a holding pattern is established at a final approach fix and a procedure turn is not used, the inbound course of the holding pattern shall be aligned to coincide with the final approach course unless the final approach fix is a facility. When the final approach fix is a facility, the inbound holding course and the final approach course shall not differ by more than 30 degrees.

* **292. AREA.**

a. The primary obstacle clearance area shall be based on the appropriate holding pattern area specified in FAA Handbook 7130.3.

b. No reduction in the pattern sizes for 'on-entry' procedures is permitted.

c. Pattern number 4 is the minimum size authorized.

d. When holding is at an intersection fix, the selected pattern shall be large enough to contain at least 3 corners of the fix displacement area. See paragraphs 284 and 285 and Figure 37. *

e. When paragraph 293b is used, the primary holding area shall encompass the departure or missed approach segment width at the holding fix. See Figure 37A.

f. A secondary area 2 miles wide surrounds the perimeter of the primary area.

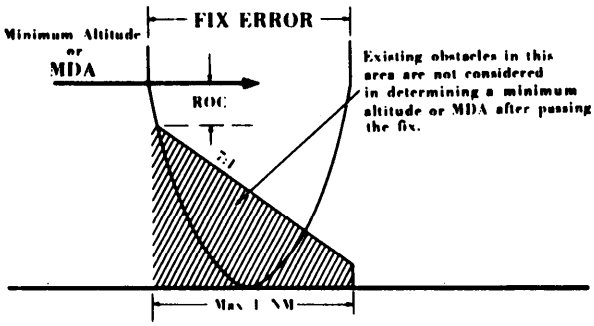


Figure 36. OBSTACLES CLOSE-IN TO A FIX. Par 289.

293. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE.

a. Level Holding. A minimum of 1000 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided throughout the primary area. In the secondary area 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering to zero feet at the outer edge. For computation of obstacle clearance in the secondary area see Appendix 2, paragraph 5 and Figure 123. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be considered as stated in paragraph 323a. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See paragraph 231.

b. Climbing in a Holding Pattern. When a climb in a holding pattern is used, as in a departure or missed approach, no obstacle shall penetrate the holding surface. This surface begins at the end of the segment leading to the holding fix. Its elevation is that of the departure OIS or missed approach surface at the holding fix. It rises at a 40:1 rate to the edge of the primary area, then at a 12:1 rate to the outer edge of the secondary area. The distance to any obstacle is measured from the obstacle to the nearest point on the end of the segment at the holding fix. See Figure 37A and FAA Handbook 7130.3, paragraph 35.

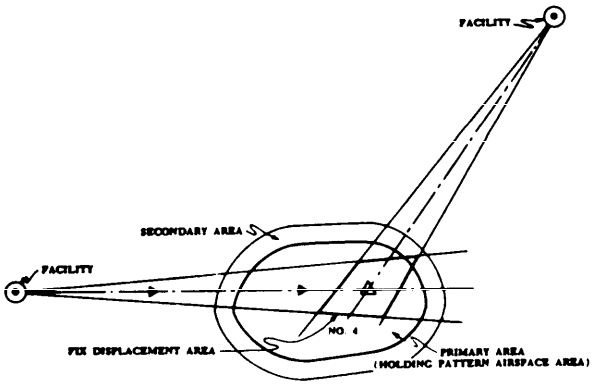


Figure 37. HOLDING PATTERN TEMPLATE APPLICATION. Par 292.

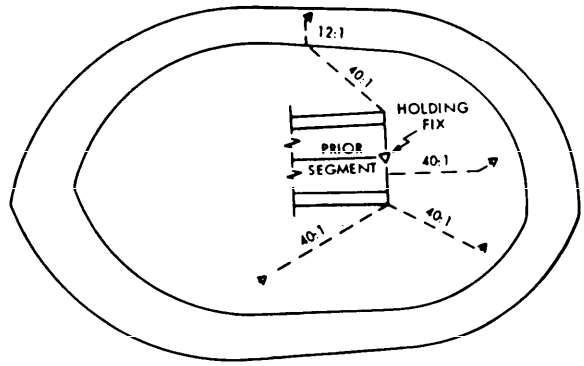


Figure 37A. CLIMBING IN A HOLDING PATTERN. Par. 293b

294. - 299. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 3. TAKEOFF AND LANDING MINIMUMS

300. APPLICATION. The minimums specified in this chapter are the lowest which can be approved at any location for the type facility concerned.

301. - 309. RESERVED.

Section 1. General Information

310. ESTABLISHMENT. The minimums established for a particular airport shall be the lowest permitted by the criteria contained in this Handbook. Each procedure shall specify minimums for the various conditions stated in the procedure; i.e., straight-in, circling, alternate, and takeoff, as required. The elements of minimums are the MDA (or DH) and the weather. The weather minimums shall include the visibility required by the procedure, and may include a ceiling value which is equal to or greater than the height of the MDA or DH above airport elevation. Where ceilings are not specified, the height of the straight-in MDA or DH above the highest elevation in the touchdown zone (or the airport elevation in circling approaches) shall be shown on the procedure. Alternate minimums, when specified, shall be stated as ceiling and visibility. Takeoff minimums, when specified, shall be stated as visibility only, except where the need to see and avoid an obstacle makes it necessary to specify a ceiling value. Military services may specify alternate and takeoff minimums in separate directives.

311. PUBLICATION. Minimums should be published for each approach category which can be accommodated at the airport. Where the airport landing surface is not adequate, or other restrictions exist which prohibit certain categories of aircraft from making an instrument approach at an airport, "NA" (not authorized) shall be entered in lieu of the minimums values. Approach Category "E" minimums should be published only on high altitude procedures, except where a special requirement exists for their publication on other procedures. Minimums on military procedures shall be published as prescribed by the appropriate Service.

312. - 319. RESERVED.

Section 2. Altitudes

320. MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE (MDA). The MDA is the lowest altitude to which descent shall be authorized in procedures not using a glide slope. Aircraft are not authorized to descend below the MDA until the runway environment (see glossary) is in sight, and the aircraft is in a position to descend for a normal landing. The MDA shall be expressed in feet above MSL and is determined by adding the required obstacle clearance to the MSL height of the controlling obstacle in the final approach segment and circling approach area for circling approaches.

321. MDA FOR STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH. The MDA for a straight-in approach shall provide at least the minimum required clearance over obstacles in the final approach segment. It shall also be established high enough to insure that obstacles in the missed approach area do not penetrate the 40:1 missed approach surface (see Paragraph 274). The MDA shall be rounded off to the next HIGHER 20-foot increment. For example, 2104 feet becomes 2120.

* **322. MDA FOR CIRCLING APPROACH.** The height of the circling MDA above the airport (HAA) shall not be less than that shown in paragraph 351. In addition, the MDA shall provide at least the minimum required obstacle clearance in the final approach segment and the circling approach area. It shall also meet the missed approach requirements specified in paragraph 321. The MDA shall be rounded to the next higher 20-foot increment. For example, 2,109 feet shall become 2,120. The published MDA for circling shall not be below the straight-in MDA.

323. MINIMUMS ADJUSTMENTS. Raising the MDA or DH above that required for obstacle clearance may be necessary under the following conditions: *

a. Precipitous Terrain. When procedures are designed for use in areas characterized by precipi-

tous terrain, in or outside of designated mountainous areas, consideration must be given to induced altimeter errors and pilot control problems which result when winds of 20 knots or more move over such terrain. Where these conditions are known to exist, required obstacle clearance in the final approach segment should be increased. Procedures specialists and approving authorities should be aware of the hazards involved and make appropriate addition, based on their experience and good judgment, to limit the time in which an aircraft is exposed to lee-side turbulence and other weather phenomena associated with precipitous terrain. This may be done by increasing the minimum altitude over the intermediate and final approach fixes so as to preclude prolonged flight at low altitudes. User comments should be solicited to obtain the best available local information.

* **b. Remote Altimeter Setting Source (RASS).** When the altimeter setting is obtained from a source more than 5 NM from the airport reference point (ARP) for an airport, heliport, or vertiport, increase the ROC by the amount of RASS adjustment for the MSA, initial, intermediate, and final segments (except precision final), and circling areas. For precision approaches, increase the DH by the amount of RASS adjustment. The following formula shall be used to compute the adjustment in feet:

$$\text{Adjustment} = 2.30d_R + 0.14e$$

where "d_R" is the horizontal distance in nautical miles the altimeter source is remoted from the ARP; and "e" is the terrain elevation differential in feet between the lowest and the highest elevation points contained within the elevation differential area (EDA).

(1) Determination.

(a) Elevation Differential Area (EDA). The EDA is defined by an area 5 NM each side of a line connecting the ARP and the RASS, and including a circular area enclosed by a 5 NM radius at each end of this line. See figures 37B and 37C. This is a minimum standard and should be used with caution. Provisions for non-homogeneous weather and terrain elevation differentials are included in this formula.

(b) Excessive Distance/Differential. A remote altimeter setting source shall not be authorized for a remoted distance (d_R) greater than 75 NM, or for an elevation differential (e) greater than 6,000 feet.

(2) Application.

(a) Both distance and elevation differential together comprise the RASS adjustment. RASS adjustment shall be applied to:

MSA	Missed Approach
Initial	Circling
Intermediate	Holding
Final Approach (except precision ROC)	DH

RASS adjustment does not apply to enroute, feeder routes, or segment/areas based on enroute criteria.

(b) Point-in-Space Approach (PINSA). When the MAP is more than 5 NM from the altimeter setting source used for a PINSA, RASS adjustment shall be applied by defining an EDA from the altimeter setting source to the MAP, and enclose the same as in paragraph 323b(1)(a), above.

(c) Minimum Reception Altitude (MRA). Where an MDA is dictated by the MRA, the MRA shall be increased by the amount of the RASS adjustment factor.

(d) Procedures shall be annotated in all cases where the altimeter is based on a remote source. Case 1 (full time) "Use Boise, Idaho, altimeter setting." In this case, the adjustment shall be included in the published minimums. Case 2 (Part Time) "When control zone <u>not</u> in effect, use Boise, Idaho, altimeter setting and increase all DH's/MDA's _____ feet. When neither available, procedure not authorized."

(e) To preclude possible affect on human factors, only one RASS should be published for an airport. *

c. Excessive Length of Final Approach. When a final approach fix is incorporated in the procedure, and the distance from that fix to the nearest landing surface exceeds 6 miles, the required obstacle clearance in the final approach segment shall be increased at the rate of 5 feet

for each one-tenth of a mile over 6 miles. Where a stepdown fix is incorporated in the final approach segment, the basic obstacle clearance may be applied between the stepdown fix and the MAP provided the fix is within 6 miles of the landing surface. These criteria are applicable to nonprecision approach procedures only.

324. DECISION HEIGHT (DH). The decision height applies only where an electronic glide slope provides the reference for descent, as in ILS or PAR. The decision height is the height, specified in feet above MSL, above the highest runway elevation in the touchdown zone at which a missed approach shall be initiated if the required visual reference has not been established. Decision heights shall be established with respect to the approach obstacle clearance requirements specified in the ILS and PAR chapters, and shall NOT be less than the HAT shown in the appropriate table in paragraph 350.

325.-329. RESERVED

Section 3. Visibilities

330. ESTABLISHMENT OF VISIBILITY MINIMUMS.

a. Straight-in minimums for NONPRECISION approaches shall be established for an approach category when:

(1) The final approach course-runway alignment criteria have been met, AND

(2) The Visibility requirements of paragraph 221 are met, AND

(3) The height of the MDA above the touchdown zone (TDZ) and the associated visibility are within the tolerances specified in paragraph 331, AND

(4) The descent gradient from the final approach fix to the runway does not exceed the maximum specified in the applicable facility chapter of this Handbook.

b. Straight-in minimums for PRECISION approaches shall be established for an approach category when the final approach course-runway alignment criteria have been met.

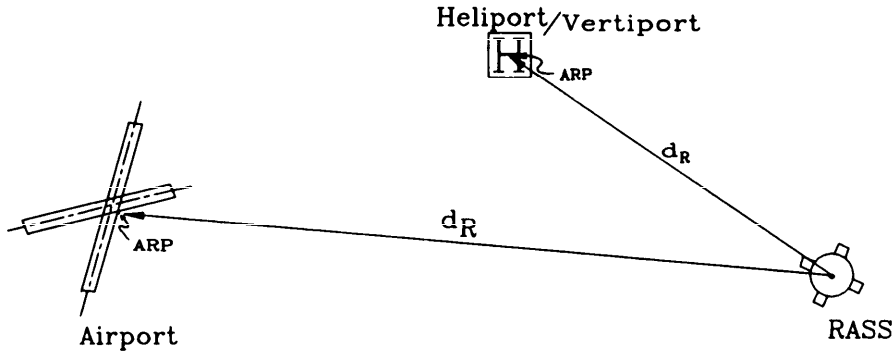
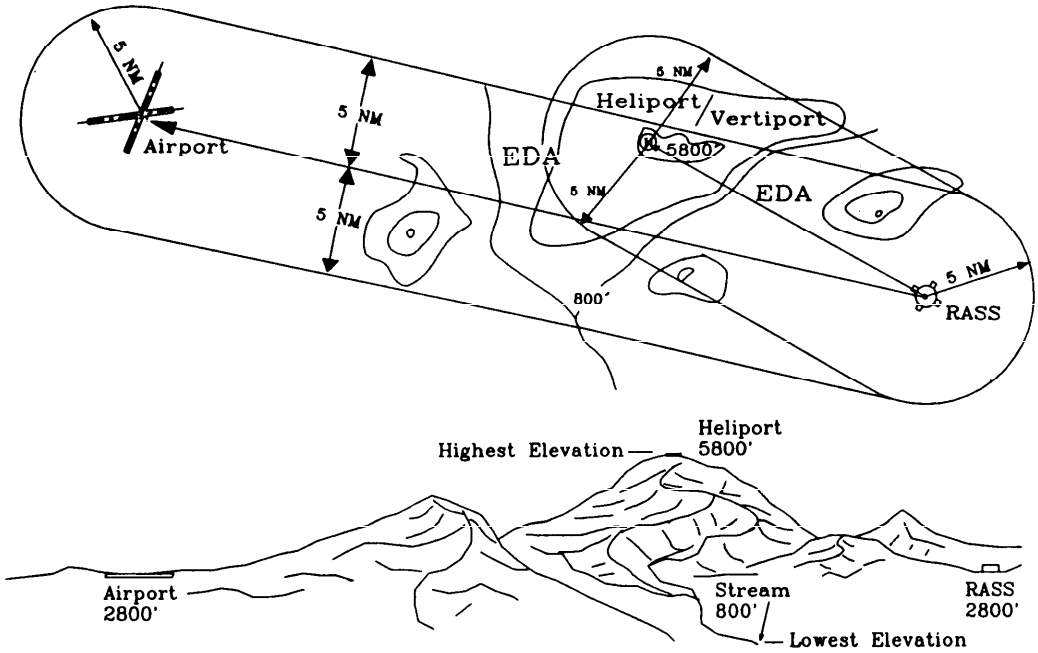


Figure 37B. DISTANCE REMOTED (d_R)



EXAMPLE – ELEVATION DIFFERENTIAL: Airport -- e=5800'–800'=5000'
Heliport/Vertiport – e=5800'–800'=5000'

Figure 37C. ELEVATION DIFFERENTIAL AREA (EDA)

Table 6. EFFECT OF HAT/HAA ON VISIBILITY MINIMUMS

HAT/HAA (ft.)	250-320	321-390	391-460	461-530	531-600	501-670	671-740	741-810	811-880	881-950	951 & above
CAT A	1 mi									1¼	
CAT B	1 mi							1¼			1½
HAT/HAA	250-400		401-500		501-600	do	do	do	do	do	do
CAT C	1 mi		1¼		1½	1¾	2	2¼	2½	2¾	3
HAT/HAA	250-341	342-426	427-511	512-600		do	do	do	do	do	do
CAT D	1 mi	1¼	1½	1¾		2	2¼	2½	2¾	3	
HAT/HAA	250-320	321-390	391-460	461-530	531-600	do	do	do	do	do	do
CAT E	1 mi	1¼	1½	1¾	2	2¼	2½	2¾	3		

* c. The minimum visibility prior to applying credit for lights shall be the higher of the following values:

(1) The MAP to threshold distance (where the MAP is reached before the threshold).

(2) Those given in Table 6 or 6a (paragraph 331).

This subparagraph does not apply to a procedure where the MAP is more than 2 statute miles from the airport and the procedure is noted, "Fly visual to airport" in which case the required visibility shall be at least 2 miles, but not less than the visibility specified in Table 6.

d. When straight-in minimums are not authorized, only circling MDA's and visibilities will be established. In establishing circling visibility minimums, paragraph 331 applies. These minimums shall be no lower than those specified in paragraph 351.

e. Circling landing minimums shall NOT be lower than straight-in landing minimums.

331. EFFECT OF HAT/HAA AND FACILITY DISTANCE ON STRAIGHT-IN AND CIRCLING VISIBILITY MINIMUMS. The minimum standard visibility required for the pilot to establish visual reference in time to descend safely from the MDA and maneuver to the runway or airport varies with the aircraft category, the HAT/HAA, and the accuracy of the navigation system. Table 6 specifies the minimum standard visibility as determined by HAT/HAA. Table 6A specifies the minimum standard visibility as determined by distance from the facility to the runway.

* NOTE: *The higher of the visibilities derived from the table applies.*

* **Table 6A. EFFECT OF FACILITY DISTANCE ON VISIBILITY MINIMUMS**

NAVAID TYPE	CAT	DISTANCE FROM FACILITY TO MAP OR RWY THLD (whichever is farther)				
		0-10	Over 10-15	Over 15-20	Over 20-25	Over 25-30
ASR	A	1	1	1	N/A	N/A
	B	1	1 ¼	1 ¼		
	C	1	1 ½	1 ½		
	D-E	1	2	2		
NDB, DF	A	1	1	N/A	N/A	N/A
	B	1	1 ¼			
	C	1	1 ½			
	D-E	1	2			
VOR, TACAN, LOC, SDF, LDA	A	1	1	1	1	1
	B	1	1	1	1 ¼	1 ¼
	C	1	1	1 ¼	1 ½	1 ½
	D-E	1	1 ¼	1 ½	1 ¾	2

*

* **332. EFFECT OF OBSTACLES.** Visibility minimums must be at or above certain values when obstacles penetrate a 20:1 or 34:1 slope commencing 200 feet outward from the landing threshold and overlying the first 10,000 feet of an area which is the same as the ILS/PAR final approach area. To establish a visibility:

a. Lower than 1 mile, no obstacle shall penetrate the 20:1 slope.

b. Lower than 3/4 mile, no obstacle shall penetrate the 34:1 slope. *

333. RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE (RVR). Runway visual range is a system of measuring the visibility along the runway. It is an instrumentally derived value that represents the horizontal distance a pilot will see down the runway from the approach end. It is based on the sighting of either high intensity runway lights or the visual contrast of other targets, whichever yields the greater visual range.

334. RUNWAY REQUIREMENTS FOR APPROVAL OF RVR. RVR may be authorized for straight-in approach procedures and takeoff when the following requirements are met with respect to the runway to be used. *

a. Transmissometers shall be located in accordance with standards established by the approval authority (e.g., FAA Standard 008).

b. High intensity runway lights spaced at consecutive intervals of not more than 200 feet shall be operative.

c. Instrument runway markings, or touchdown zone and centerline lighting are required for nonprecision approaches. Precision instrument (all-weather) runway markings or touchdown zone and centerline lighting are required for precision approaches. Where sufficient runway lengths are not available to accommodate standard all-weather markings, the approving authority will determine the runway markings to be used. Where required runway markings are not available and credit for lights is not granted, but touchdown zone and centerline lights are available, RVR equal to the visibility minimum without lights is authorized.

335. COMPARABLE VALUES OF RVR AND GROUND VISIBILITY. If RVR minimums for takeoff or landing are prescribed in an instrument approach procedure but RVR is not reported for the runway of intended operation, the RVR minimums shall be converted to ground visibility in accordance with Table 7, and observed as the applicable visibility minimum for takeoff or landing on that runway.

Table 7. COMPARABLE VALUES OF RVR AND GROUND VISIBILITY.

RVR	VIS (Statute Miles)	RVR	VIS (Statute Miles)
1600	1/4	4500	7/8
2400	1/2	5000	1
3200	5/8	6000	1-1/4
4000	3/4		

336.–339. RESERVED.

Section 4. Visibility Credit for Lights

340. GENERAL. Approach lighting systems can "reach out" to the approaching pilot and make the runway environment apparent with less visibility than when such lighting is not available. This section identifies lighting systems and prescribes the operational conditions which must exist in order to reduce straight-in visibility minimums. Table 9 for civil and Table 10 for military in paragraph 350 specify the LOWEST visibility minimums which can result from application of this section.

341. STANDARD LIGHTING SYSTEMS. Listed in Table 8 are the types of standard lighting systems and the required operational coverage for each type.

342. OPERATIONAL CONDITIONS. Credit to reduce straight-in landing minimums for standard or equivalent approach light systems may be given when the following conditions exist for the straight-in landing runway:

a. Markings. The runway must have nonprecision instrument or precision instrument (all-weather) markings or touchdown zone and centerline lights as specified in paragraph 334c, and in the directives of the appropriate approving authority. * *

Table 8. STANDARD LIGHTING SYSTEMS

ABBREV. IFR	LIGHTING SYSTEM	Oper. Coverage (Degrees) Lateral (±)	Vert. (abv Hor)
ALSF-I	Standard approach light system with sequenced flashers	21.0* 12.5#	12.0* 12.5#
ALSF-II	Standard approach light system with sequenced flashers & CAT II mod.	21.0* 12.5#	12.0* 12.5#
SSALS	Simplified short approach light system	21.0	12.0
SSALF	Simplified short approach light system with sequenced flashers	21.0* 12.5#	12.0* 12.5#
SSALR	Simplified short approach light system with runway alignment indicator lights	21.0* 12.5#	12.0* 12.5#
MALS	Medium intensity approach light system	10.0	10.0*
MALSF	Medium intensity approach light system with sequenced flashers	10.0* 12.5#	10.0* 12.5#
MALSR	Medium intensity approach light system with runway alignment indicator lights	10.0* 12.5#	10.0* 12.5#
ODALS	Omnidirectional approach light system	360 #	+2 - +10#

VFR

REIL	Runway end identifier lights	12.5	12.5
LDIN	Lead-in lighting system (can be * or #)	12.5	12.5
VASI	Visual approach slope indicators	10.0	3.5

RUNWAY LIGHT SYSTEMS

HIRL	High intensity runway lights		
MIRL	Medium intensity runway lights		
LIRL	Low intensity runway lights		
TDZ/CL	Touchdown zone and centerline lights		

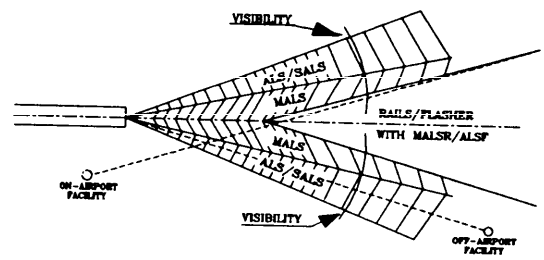
NOTE: Descriptions of lighting systems may be found in Appendix 5 and FAA Handbook 6850.2

**Steady-burning* *#Sequenced flashers*

b. Approach Course. The final approach course must place the aircraft within the operational coverage of the lighting system at a distance from the landing threshold equal to the standard visibility required without lights. See paragraph 330 and * Figure 37D for guidance. *

343. VISIBILITY REDUCTION. Standard visibility requirements are computed by applying the criteria contained in paragraph 331. These requirements may be reduced by giving credit for standard or equivalent approach light systems as follows (see paragraph 341 and Appendix 5):

a. The provisions of paragraph 332, 342, 935, or 1025, as appropriate, must be met.



NOTE: *The final approach course to an 'on-airport' facility transits all approach light operational areas within limits of visibility arc, whereas the final approach course from the 'off-airport' facility may be restricted only to an ALS or SALS for visibility credit.*

* Figure 37D. Application of Lateral Coverage Angles of Table 8, paragraph 342. *

b. Where the visibility required without lights does not exceed one mile, visibility as low as that specified in the appropriate table in paragraph 350 with associated DH or HAT and lighting may be authorized.

c. For civil application, where the visibility required without lights exceeds 1 mile, a reduction of 1/2 mile may be made for SSALR, MALSR or ALSF-1 provided such visibility minimum is not less than that specified in paragraph 350. Reduction for Category D aircraft in NDB approach procedures shall not exceed 1/4 mile or result in visibility minimums lower than 1 mile.

d. For military applications, where the visibility required without lights exceeds 1 mile, a reduction of 1/4 mile may be made for SSALS, MALS, or ODALS, and a reduction of 1/2 mile may be made for ALS, SSALR, or MALSR provided such visibility minimum is not less than that specified in paragraph 350.

e. Where visibility minimums are established in order to see and avoid obstacles, visibility reductions shall not be authorized.

f. Visibility reductions are NOT cumulative.

344. OTHER LIGHTING SYSTEMS. In order for variations of standard systems, and other systems not included in this chapter to receive visibility reduction credit, the operational conditions specified in paragraph 342 must be met. Civil airport lighting systems which do not meet known standards or for which criteria do not exist, will be handled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 141. Military lighting systems may be equated to standard systems for reduction of visibility as illustrated in Appendix 5. Where existing systems vary from the configurations illustrated there and cannot be equated to a standard system they shall be referred to the appropriate approving authority for special consideration.

345.-349. RESERVED.

Section 5. Standard Minimums

350. STANDARD STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS. Tables 9 and 10 specify the lowest civil and military minimums which may be prescribed for various combinations of electronic and visual navigation aids. Lower minimums based on special equipment or aircrew qualifications may be authorized only by approving authorities. Higher minimums shall be specified where required by application of criteria contained elsewhere in this Handbook.

351. STANDARD CIRCLING MINIMUMS. Table 11 specifies the lowest civil and military minimums which may be prescribed for circling approaches. See also paragraph 330c. The MDA established by application of the minimums specified in this paragraph shall be rounded to the next higher 20 feet.

352.-359. RESERVED.

Section 6. Alternate Minimums

360. STANDARD ALTERNATE MINIMUMS. Minimums authorized when an airport is to be used as an alternate airport appear in Table 12. The ceiling and visibility specified shall NOT be lower than the circling HAA and visibility, or as specified in military directives for military operations.

361.-369. RESERVED.

Section 7. Departures

370. STANDARD TAKEOFF MINIMUMS. Where applicable, civil standard takeoff minimums are specified by the number of engines on the aircraft. Takeoff minimums are stated as visibility only, except where the need to see and avoid an obstacle makes a ceiling value necessary. In this case the published procedure shall identify the location of the controlling obstacle. Takeoff minimums for military operations shall be as stated in the appropriate service directives.

Table 9. CIVIL STANDARD STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS

	NON-PRECISION APPROACHES					
	NON-PRECISION APPROACHES Approach Facility: LOC, VOR, LDA, NDB, SDF, ASR, or PAR w/o GS					
	APPROACH LIGHT CONFIGURATION	CAT →	A - B - C		D	
		HAT[1]	Vis or RVR		Vis or RVR	
1	NO LIGHTS	250	1	5000	1	5000
2	ODALS	250	¾	4000	1	5000
3	MALS	250	¾	4000	1	5000
4	SSALS/SALS	250	¾	4000	1	5000
5	MALSR	250	½[2]	2400	1[3]	5000
6	SSALR	250	½[2]	2400	1[3]	5000
7	ALSF-1	250	½[2]	2400	1[3]	5000
8	DME Arc Any Light Configuration	500	1	5000	1	5000

[1]Add 50 ft to HAT for VOR without FAF or NDB with FAF.
Add 100 ft to HAT for NDB without FAF.

[2]For NDB approaches, ¾ mile or RVR 4000.

[3]For LOC, ¾ mile or RVR 4000.

*

	PRECISION APPROACHES					
	Approach Facility: ILS[4] or PAR					
	APPROACH LIGHT CONFIGURATION	CAT →	A - B - C		D	
		HAT	Vis or RVR		Vis or RVR	
9	NO LIGHTS	200	¾	4000	¾	4000
10	MALSR	200	½	2400	½	2400
11	SSALR	200	½	2400	½	2400
12	ALSF-1	200	½	2400	½	2400
13	ALSF-1-TDZ/CL MALSR-TDZ/CL SSALR-TDZ/CL	200	-	1800	-	1800

[4]ILS includes LOC, GS, and OM(or FAF). With Offset LOC(max 3°), HAT is 250 and RVR below 2400 is not authorized. *

NOTE: HIRL is required for RVR. Runway edge lights required for night.

Table 10. MILITARY STANDARD STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS

		NO LIGHTS		ALS TDZ/CL		ALS		SSALR		SALS or SSALS		MALSR		MALS		ODALS	
PRECISION																	
HAT	CAT	MILE	RVR [1]	MILE	RVR	MILE	RVR	MILE	RVR	MILE	RVR	MILE	RVR	MILE	RVR	MILE	RVR
100	A-E	1/2	24	—	12	1/4	16	1/4	16	1/4	16	1/2	24	1/2	24	1/2	24
200	A-B	3/4	40	1/2	18	1/2	24	1/2 [2]	24 [2]	1/2	24	1/2	24	3/4	40	1/2	24
200	C,D,E	3/4	40	1/2 [2]	24 [2]	1/2 [2]	24 [2]	1/2 [2]	24 [2]	3/4	40	1/2 [2]	24 [2]	3/4	40	3/4	40
250	A-B	3/4 [4]	40 [4]	1/2	24	1/2 [3]	24 [3]	1/2	24	3/4	40	1/2	24	3/4	40	3/4	40
250	C,D,E	1	50	1/2	24	1/2 [3]	24 [3]	1/2	24	3/4	40	1/2	24	3/4	40	1	50
NON-PRECISION																	
AS REQUIRED	A-B	1	50	1/2	24	1/2	24	1/2	24	3/4	40	1/2	24	3/4	40	3/4	40
AS REQUIRED	C,D,E	1	50	3/4	40	3/4	40	3/4	40	3/4	40	3/4	40	3/4	40	3/4	40
DME ARC APPROACH																	
AS REQUIRED	A-E	1	50	(REDUCTION BELOW ONE MILE NOT AUTHORIZED)													

[1] RVR shown in hundreds of feet, i.e. RVR 24=2400ft.
[2] Minimum length of approach lights is 2000 feet.
[3] For non-standard ALS lengths of:
a. 2400 to 2900 feet, use SSALR.
b. 1000 to 2300 feet, use SSALS.
[4] When the MAP is located 3/4 mile or less from the threshold.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR ESTABLISHING MILITARY STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS
(Use Table 10)

STEP 1.	Determine the required DH or MDA by applying criteria found in the appropriate facility chapter of this Handbook.
STEP 2.	Determine the height above touchdown zone elevation (HAT).
STEP 3.	Determine the visibility value as follows: a. Precision Approaches. (1) HAT 250 feet or less. Enter "precision" portion of Table 10 at HAT value for aircraft approach category. Read across table to determine minimum visibility for the appropriate light system. If the HAT is not shown on the table, use the next higher HAT. (2) HAT greater than 250 feet. Use the instructions for the non-precision minimums in. b. below Paragraph 331 does not apply. b. Non-Precision Approaches. Determine the basic visibility by application of criteria in paragraphs 330 and 331. If the basic visibility is 1 mile, enter Table 10 with aircraft approach category being considered. Read across the table to determine minimum visibility for the appropriate light system.
STEP 4.	Establish ceiling values in 100-foot increments in accordance with paragraph 310.

Table 11. STANDARD CIRCLING MINIMUMS.

	Approach Category A	B	C	D	E
Height Above Airport Elevation in feet	350	450	450	550	550
Visibility in Miles	1	1	1 ½	2	2

Table 12. STANDARD ALTERNATE MINIMUMS.

Type of Approach Facility	Ceiling	Visibility
VOR, VORTAC, LOC, LDA, ASR, NDB	800	2
ILS or PAR	600	2

*

Table 13. STANDARD CIVIL TAKEOFF MINIMUMS.

Number of Engines	Visibility (Statute Miles)
1 or 2	1
3 or more	1/2

371.–399. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 4. ON-AIRPORT VOR(NO FAF)

400. GENERAL. This chapter is divided into two sections; one for low altitude procedures and one for high altitude teardrop penetration procedures. These criteria apply to procedures based on a VOR facility located on an airport in which no final approach fix (FAF) is established. These procedures must incorporate a procedure or a penetration turn. An ON-AIRPORT facility is one which is located:

a. For Straight-In Approach. Within one mile of the nearest portion of the landing runway.

b. For Circling Approach. Within one mile of the nearest portion of the usable landing surface of the airport.

401.-409. RESERVED.

Section 1. Low Altitude Procedures

410. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in paragraph 220.

411. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The initial approach fix is received by overheading the navigation facility. The initial approach is a procedure turn. The criteria for the procedure turn areas are contained in Paragraph 234.

412. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. This type of procedure has no intermediate segment. Upon completion of the procedure turn, the aircraft is on final approach.

413. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach begins where the procedure turn intersects the final approach course inbound.

a. Alignment. The alignment of the final approach course with the runway centerline determines whether a straight-in or circling approach may be established.

(1) Straight-In. The angle of convergence of the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30 degrees. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the extended runway centerline 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. When an operational advantage can be achieved this point of intersection may be established at any point between the runway threshold and a point 5200 feet outward from the runway threshold. Also, where an operational advantage can be achieved, a final approach course which does not intersect the runway centerline, or intersects it at a distance greater than 5200 feet from the threshold, may be established, provided such a course lies within 500 feet laterally of the extended runway centerline at a point 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 38.

(2) Circling Approach. When the final approach course alignment does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the course alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to pass through any portion of the usable landing surface. See Figure 39.

b. Area. Figure 40 illustrates the final approach primary and secondary areas. The primary area is longitudinally centered on the final approach course, and is 10 miles long. The primary area is 2 miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 6 miles at 10 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 1.34 miles on each side of the primary area at 10 miles from the facility. When the 5 mile procedure turn is used, only the inner 5 miles of the final approach area need be considered.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-in. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 300 feet. In the secondary area, 300 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum required

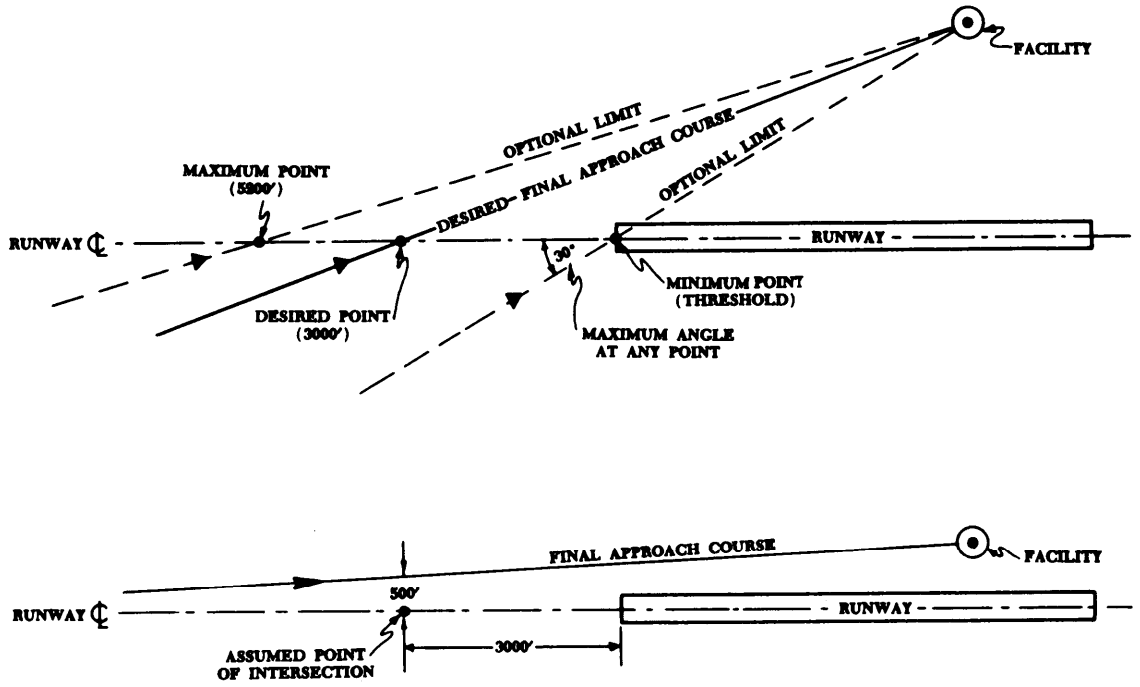


Figure 38. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. On-Airport VOR, No FAF. Straight-In Approach Procedure. Paragraph 413.a.(1).

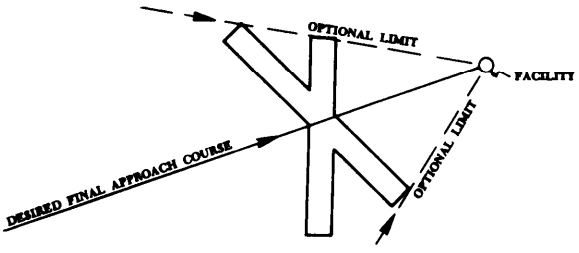


Figure 39. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. On-Airport VOR. No FAF. Circling Approach Procedure. Paragraph 413.a.(2)

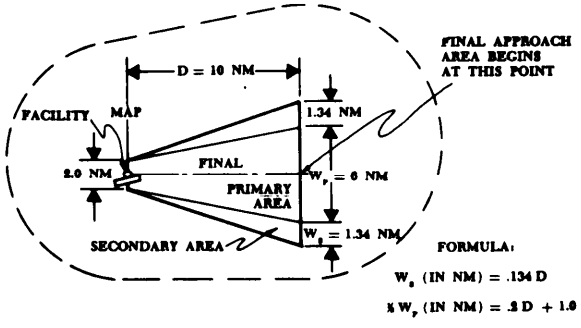


Figure 40. FINAL APPROACH PRIMARY AND SECONDARY AREAS. On-Airport VOR. No FAF. Par 413.b.

obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is found in Appendix 2, Figure 126.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 413.c.(1) above, obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2 Section 6.

d. Procedure Turn Altitude (Descent Gradient). The procedure turn completion altitude shall be within 1500 feet of the MDA (1000 feet with a 5 mile procedure turn), provided the distance from the facility to the point where the final approach course intersects the runway centerline (or the first usable portion of the landing area for "circling only" procedures) does not exceed 2 miles. When this distance exceeds 2 miles, the maximum difference between the procedure turn completion altitude and the MDA shall be reduced at the rate of 25 feet for each one-tenth of a mile in excess of 2 miles.

NOTE: For those procedures in which the final approach does NOT intersect the extended runway centerline within 5200 feet of the runway threshold (see paragraph 413.a.(1)) the assumed point of intersection for computing the distance from the facility

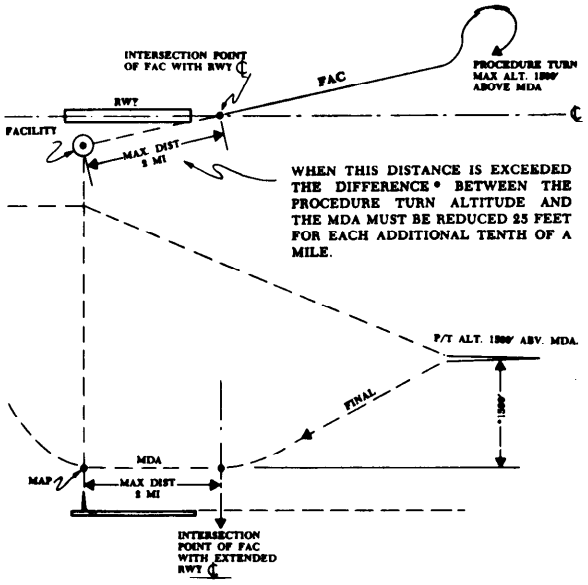


Figure 41. PROCEDURE TURN ALTITUDE. On-Airport VOR, No FAF. Par 413.d.

shall be 3000 feet from the runway threshold. See Figure 38.

e. Use of Stepdown Fix. Use of the stepdown fix (paragraph 288.c.) is permitted provided the distance from the facility to the stepdown fix does not exceed 4 miles. Where the stepdown fix is used, the obstacle clearance (paragraph 413.c.(1)) may be reduced to 250 feet from the stepdown fix to the MAP. See Figure 42 below. See also Paragraph 251.

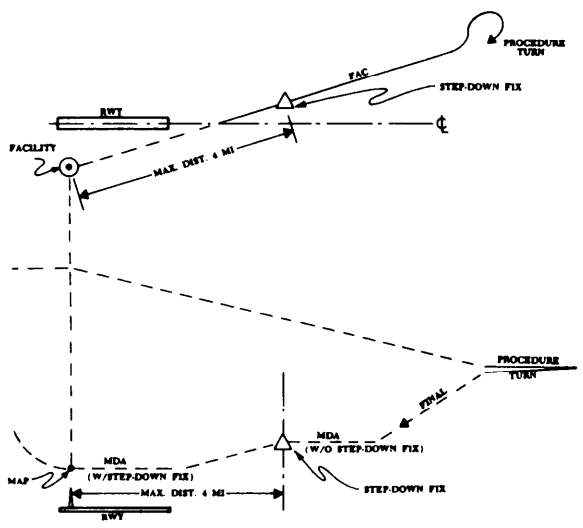


Figure 42. USE OF STEP-DOWN FIX. On-Airport VOR. No FAF. Par 413.e.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. Criteria for determining the MDA are contained in Chapter 3.

414. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point is the facility. See Figure 42. The missed approach surface shall commence over the facility at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

415.–419. RESERVED.

Section 2. High Altitude Teardrop Penetrations

420. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in Paragraph 220.

421. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The initial approach fix is received by overheading the navigation facility. The initial approach is a teardrop penetration turn. The criteria for the penetration turn are contained in Paragraph 235.

422. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. This procedure has no intermediate segment. Upon completion of the penetration turn, the aircraft is on final approach.

423. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. An aircraft is considered to be on final approach upon completion of the penetration turn. However, the final approach segment begins on the final approach course 10 miles from the facility. That portion of the penetration procedure prior to the 10-mile point is treated as the initial approach segment. See Figure 43.

a. Alignment. Same as low altitude. (Paragraph 413.a.)

b. Area. Figure 43 illustrates the final approach primary and secondary areas. The primary area is longitudinally centered on the final approach course, and is 10 miles long. The primary area is 2 miles wide at the facility, and expands uniformly to 8 miles at a point 10 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility, and expands uni-

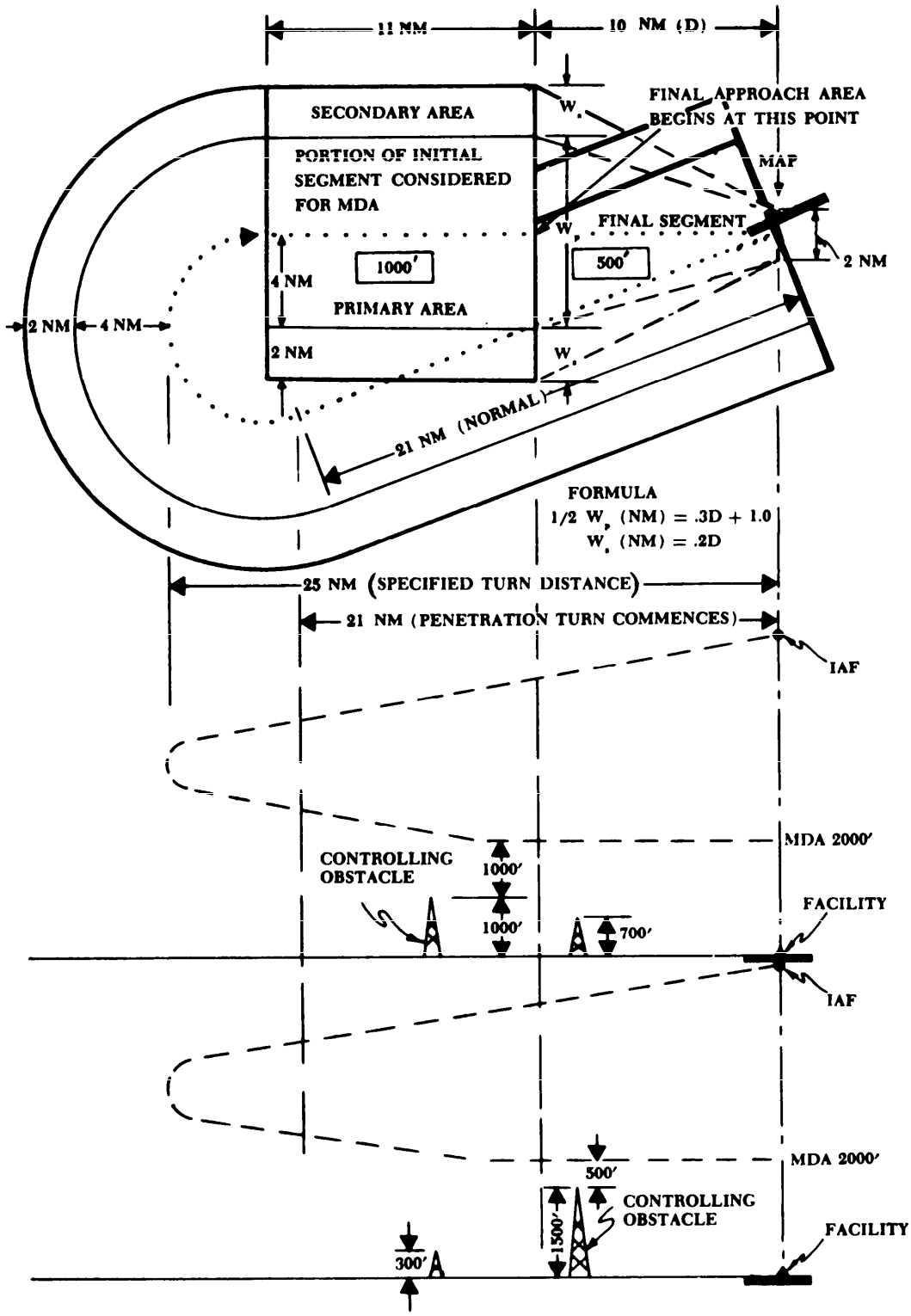


Figure 43. PENETRATION TURN. On-Airport VOR. No FAF. Par 423.

formly to 2 miles each side of the primary area at a point 10 miles from the facility.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 500 feet. In the secondary area, 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum required obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is shown in Appendix 2, Figure 123.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 423.c.(1) above, obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

d. Penetration Turn Altitude (Descent Gradient). The penetration turn completion altitude shall be at least 1000 feet, but not more than 4000 feet above the MDA on final approach.

e. Use of Stepdown Fix. The use of the stepdown fix is permitted provided the distance from the facility to the stepdown fix does not exceed 10 miles. See Paragraph 288.c.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. In addition to the normal obstacle clearance requirement of the final approach segment (see Paragraph 423.c.), the MDA specified shall provide at least 1000 feet of clearance over obstacles in the portion of the initial approach segment between the final approach segment and the point where the assumed penetration turn track intercepts the inbound course. See Figure 43.

424. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point is the facility. See Figure 43. The missed approach surface shall commence over the facility at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

425. – 499. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 5. TACAN, VOR/DME, AND VOR WITH FAF

500. GENERAL. This chapter applies to approach procedures based on the elements of the VORTAC facility;i.e., VOR, VOR/DME, and TACAN, in which a final approach fix (FAF) is established. The chapter is divided into two sections; Section 1 for VOR procedures which do not use DME as the primary method for establishing fixes, and Section 2 for VOR/DME and TACAN procedures which use collocated, frequency paired DME as the sole method of establishing fixes. When both the VOR and TACAN azimuth elements of a VORTAC station will support it, a single procedure, identified as a VOR/DME or TACAN shall be published. Such a procedure may be flown using either a VOR/DME or TACAN airborne receiver and shall satisfy TACAN terminal area fix requirements. See Paragraph 286.d.

501.-509. RESERVED.

Section 1. VOR with FAF

510. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in Paragraph 220.

511. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the initial approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 3. See Figures 44 and 45.

512. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the Intermediate approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 4. See Figures 44 and 45.

513. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach may be made either "FROM" or "TOWARD" the facility. The final approach segment begins at the final approach fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last.

a. Alignment. The alignment of the final approach course with the runway centerline determines whether a straight-in or circling-only approach may be established. The alignment criteria differs depending on whether the facility is OFF or ON the airport. See definitions in Paragraph 400.

(1) Off-Airport Facility.

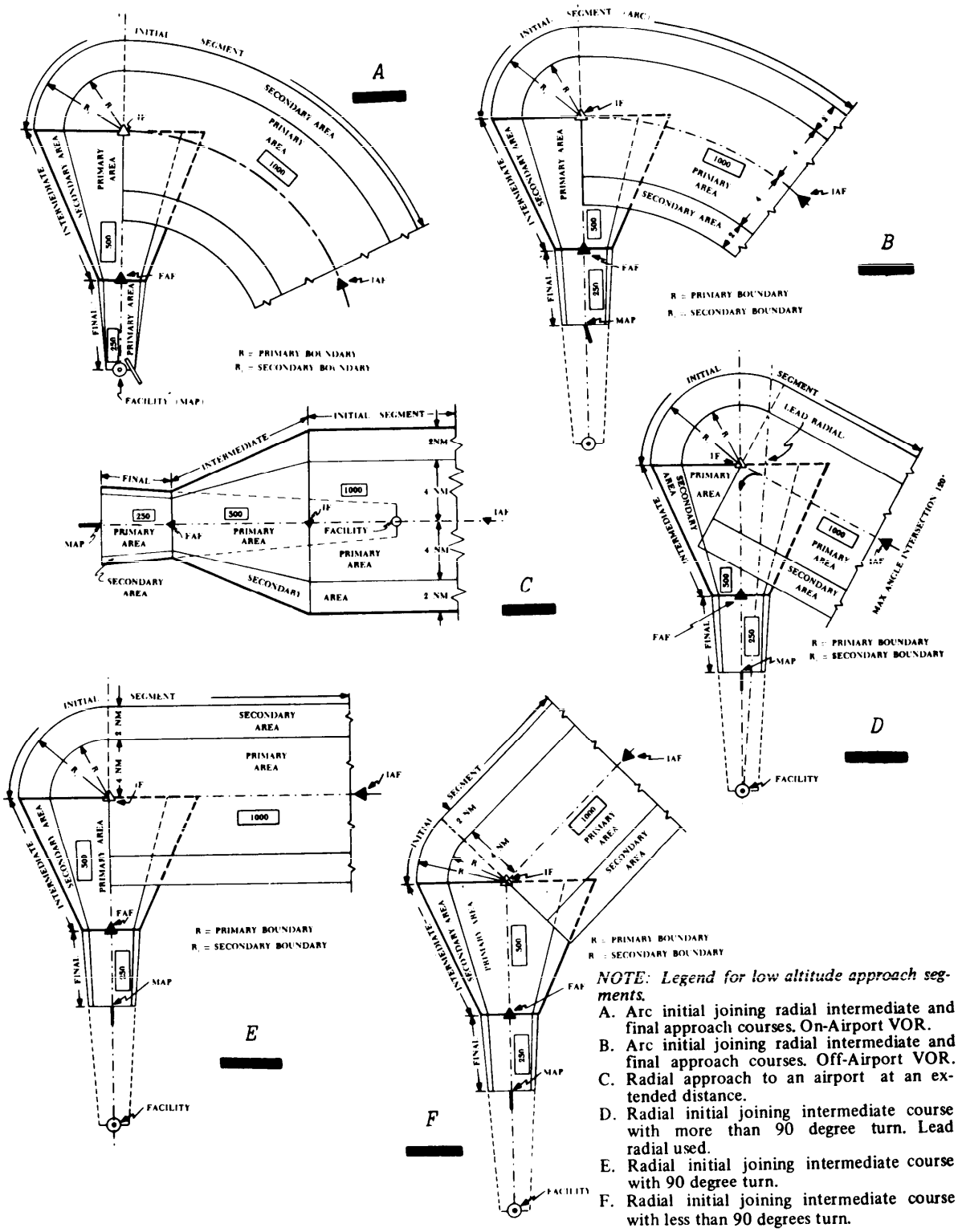
(a) Straight-In. The angle of convergence of the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30 degrees. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the runway centerline at the runway threshold. However, when an operational advantage can be achieved, the point of intersection may be established as much as 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 46.

(b) Circling Approach. When the final approach course alignment does not meet the criteria for a straight-in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the course alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing surface. See Figure 47.

(2) On-Airport Facility.

(a) Straight-In. The angle of convergence of the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30 degrees. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the extended runway centerline 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. When an operational advantage can be achieved, this point of intersection may be established at any point between the threshold and a point 5200 feet outward from the threshold. Also, where an operational advantage can be achieved a final approach course which does not intersect the runway centerline, or which intersects it at a distance greater than 5200 feet from the threshold, may be established, provided that such a course lies within 500 feet laterally of the extended runway centerline at a point 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 48.

(b) Circling Approach. When the final approach course alignment does not meet the crite-



NOTE: Legend for low altitude approach segments.

A. Arc initial joining radial intermediate and final approach courses. On-Airport VOR.
B. Arc initial joining radial intermediate and final approach courses. Off-Airport VOR.
C. Radial approach to an airport at an extended distance.
D. Radial initial joining intermediate course with more than 90 degree turn. Lead radial used.
E. Radial initial joining intermediate course with 90 degree turn.
F. Radial initial joining intermediate course with less than 90 degrees turn.

Figure 44. TYPICAL LOW ALTITUDE APPROACH SEGMENTS. VOR with FAF. Par 511 and 512.

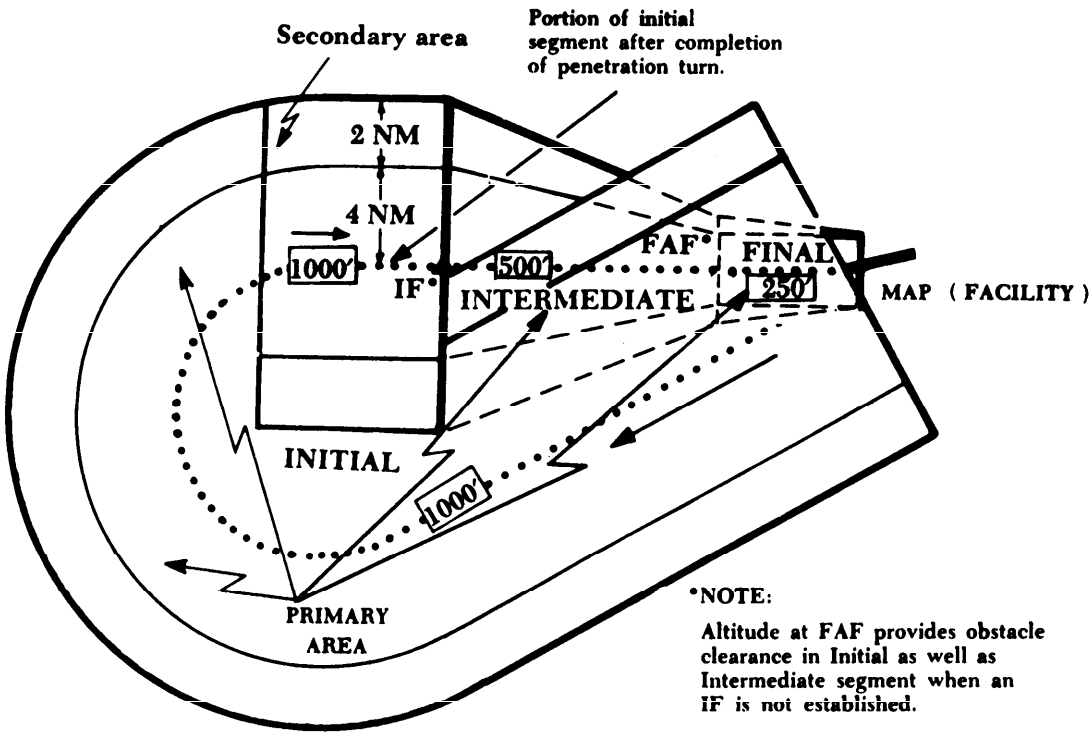


Figure 45. TYPICAL HIGH ALTITUDE SEGMENTS. VOR with FAF. Par 511 and 512.

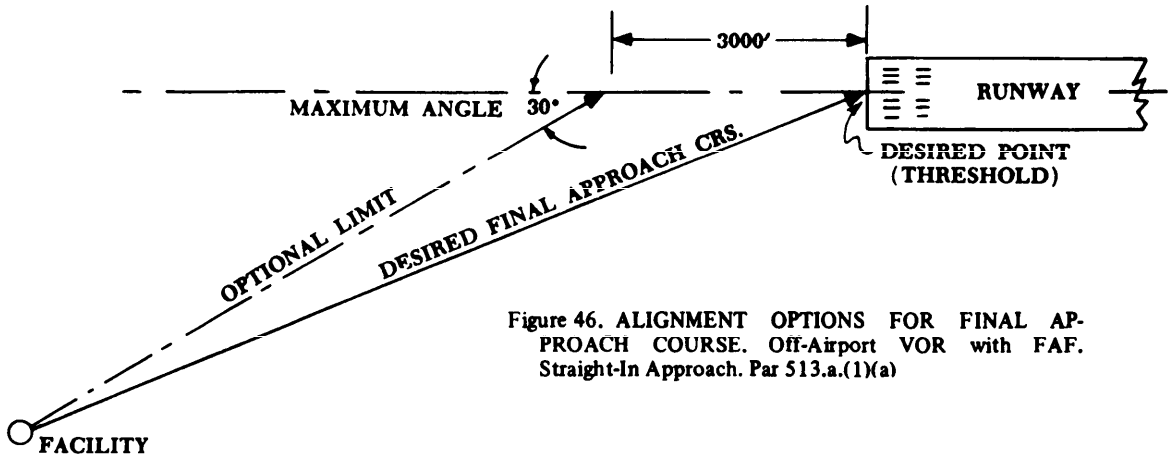


Figure 46. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. Off-Airport VOR with FAF. Straight-In Approach. Par 513.a.(1)(a)

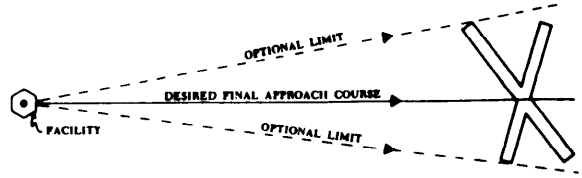


Figure 47. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. Off-Airport VOR with FAF. Circling Approach. Par. 513.a.(1)(b).

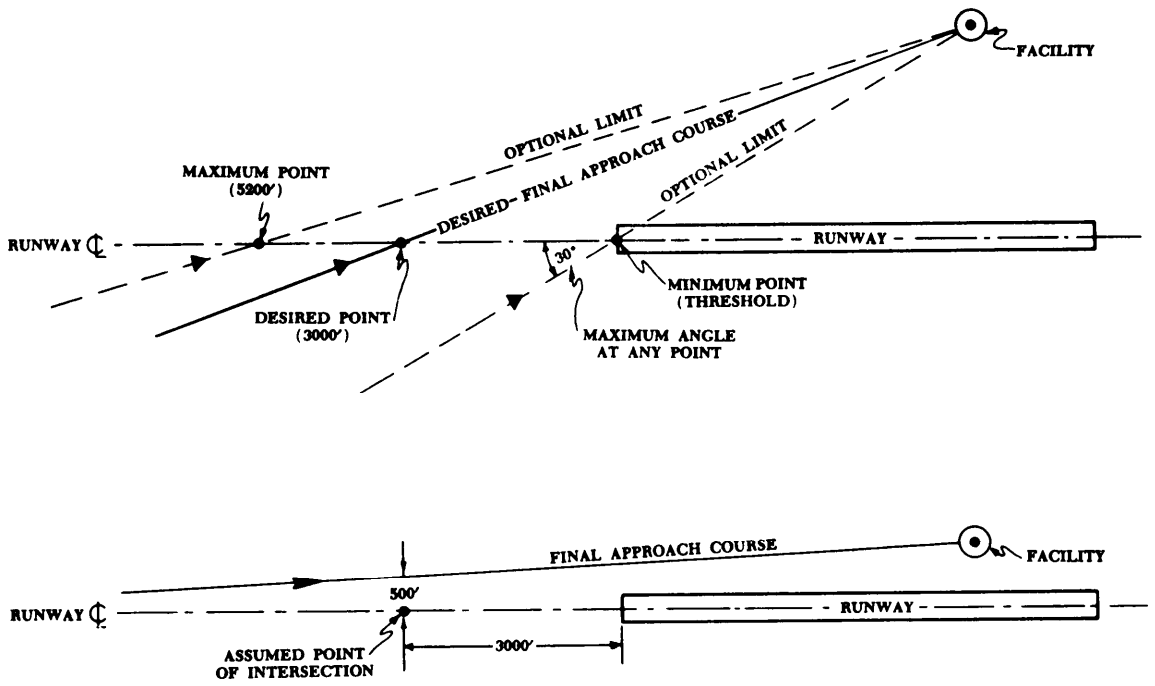


Figure 48. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. On-Airport VOR with FAF. Straight-In Approach. Par 513.a.(2)(a)

ria for a straight-in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the course alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing surface. See Figure 49.

b. Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance in the final approach segment starts at the final approach fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last. It is a portion of a 30-mile long trapezoid (see Figure 50) which is made up of primary and secondary areas. The primary area is centered longitudinally on the final approach course. It is 2 miles wide at the facility, and expands uniformly to 5 miles wide at 30 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 1 mile on each side of the primary area at 30 miles from the facility. Final approaches may be made to airports which are a maximum of 30 miles from the facility. See Figure 51. The OPTIMUM length of the final approach segment is 5 miles. The MAXIMUM length is 10 miles. The MINIMUM length of the final approach

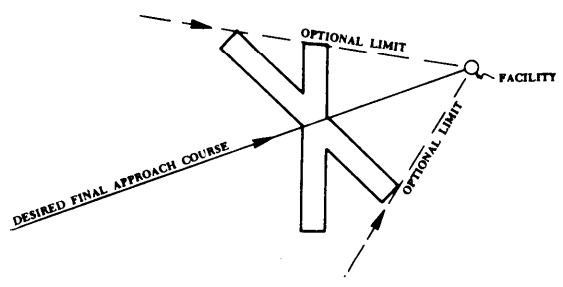


Figure 49. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. On-Airport VOR with FAF. Circling Approach. Par 513.a.(2)(b).

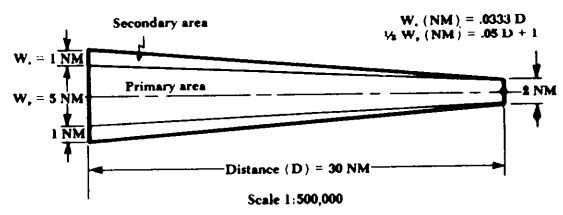


Figure 50. FINAL APPROACH TRAPEZOID. VOR with FAF. Par 513.b.

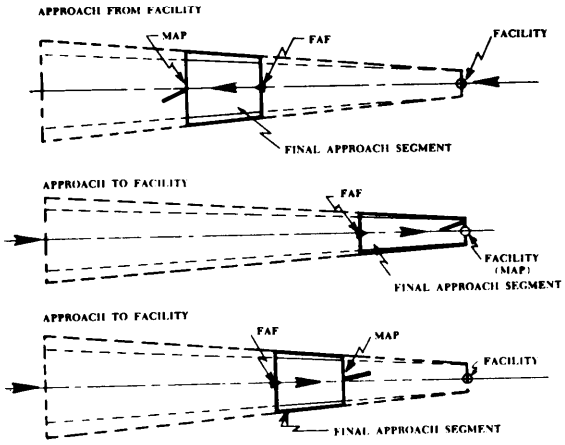


Figure 51. TYPICAL STRAIGHT-IN FINAL APPROACHES. VOR with FAF. Par 513.b.

segment shall provide adequate distance for an aircraft to make the required descent, and to regain course alignment when a turn is required over the facility. Table 14 shall be used to determine the minimum length needed to regain the course.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In Landing. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 250 feet. In the secondary area 250 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is shown in Appendix 2, Figure 125.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 513.c.(1) above, obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

d. Descent Gradient. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the final approach segment should not exceed 300 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 400 feet per mile. See also Paragraphs 251 & 288.a.

(1) Straight-In Approach. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the runway threshold and the difference in altitude between the altitude over the FAF and the touchdown zone elevation.

Table 14. MINIMUM LENGTH OF FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT-VOR (MILES)

Approach Category	Magnitude of Turn over the Facility (Degrees)		
	10	20	30
A	1.0	1.5	2.0
B	1.5	2.0	2.5
C	2.0	2.5	3.0
D	2.5	3.0	3.5
E	3.0	3.5	4.0

NOTE: This table may be interpolated. If the minimum lengths specified in the table are not available, straight-in minimums are not authorized. See Figure 51 for typical final approach areas.

(2) Circling Approach. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the first usable portion of the landing surface and the difference in altitude between the altitude over the FAF and the circling MDA.

e. Use of Fixes. Criteria for the use of radio fixes are contained in Chapter 2, Section 8. Where a procedure is based on a procedure turn and an on-airport facility is the procedure turn fix, the distance from the facility to the FAF shall not exceed 4 miles.

f. Minimum Descent Altitudes. Criteria for determining the MDA are contained in Chapter 3, Section 2.

514. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. For VOR procedures, the missed approach point and surface shall be established as follows:

a. Off-Airport Facilities.

(1) Straight-In. The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT farther from the final approach fix than the runway threshold. (See Figure 52.) The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

(2) Circling Approach. The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT farther from the final approach fix than the first usable portion of the landing area. The missed approach surface shall commence over the

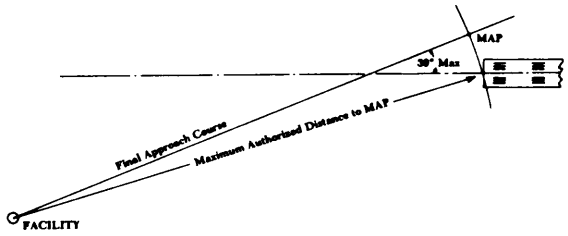


Figure 52. MISSED APPROACH POINT. Off-Airport VOR with FAF. Par 514.a.(1)

missed approach point at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

b. On-Airport Facilities. The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT farther from the final approach fix than the facility. The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

515.-519. RESERVED.

Section 2. TACAN and VOR/DME

520. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in Paragraph 220.

521. INITIAL SEGMENT. Due to the fixing capability of TACAN and VOR/DME a procedure turn initial approach may not be required. Criteria for initial approach segments are contained in Chapter 2, Section 3.

522. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. Criteria for the intermediate segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 4.

523. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. TACAN and VOR/DME final approaches may be based either on arcs or radials. The final approach begins at a final approach fix and ends at the missed approach point. The missed approach point is always marked with a fix.

a. Radial Final Approach. Criteria for the radial final approach are specified in Paragraph 513.

b. Arc Final Approach. The final approach arc shall be a continuation of the intermediate arc. It shall be specified in nautical miles and tenths thereof. Arcs closer than 7 miles (15 miles for high altitude procedures) and farther than 30 miles from the facility shall NOT be used for final approach. No turns are permitted over the final approach fix.

(1) Alignment. For Straight-in approaches, the final approach arc shall pass through the runway threshold when the angle of convergence of the runway centerline and the tangent of the arc does not exceed 15 degrees. When the angle exceeds 15 degrees the final approach arc shall be aligned to pass through the center of the airport and only circling minimums shall be authorized. See Figure 53.

(2) Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance in the arc final approach segment starts at the final approach fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last. It should NOT be more than 5 miles long. It shall be divided into primary and secondary areas. The primary area is 8 miles wide, and extends 4 miles on either side of the arc. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. The secondary areas are 2 miles wide on each side of the primary area. See Figure 54.

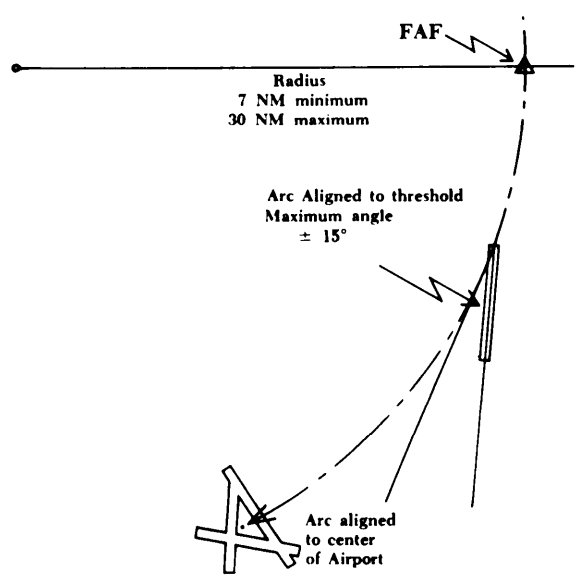


Figure 53. ARC FINAL APPROACH ALIGNMENT. Arc Aligned to Threshold. TACAN or VOR/DME. Par 523. b.(1)

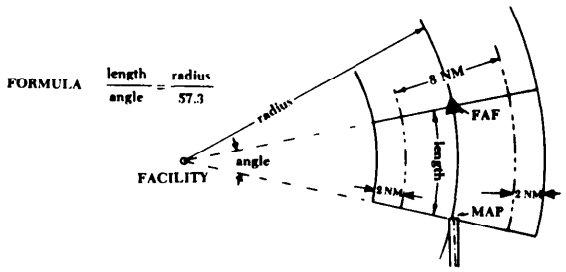


Figure 54. ARC FINAL APPROACH AREA. TACAN or VOR/DME. Par 523.b.(2)

(3) Obstacle Clearance. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 500 feet. In the secondary area, 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum required obstacle clearance at any point in the secondary area is shown in Appendix 2, Figure 123.

(4) Descent Gradient. Criteria for descent gradients are specified in Paragraph 513.d.

(5) Use of Fixes. Fixes along an arc are restricted to those formed by radials from the VORTAC facility which provides the DME signal. Criteria for such fixes are contained in Chapter 2, Section 8.

(6) Minimum Descent Altitude. Straight-in MDAs shall not be specified lower than circling for arc procedures. Criteria for determining the circling MDA are contained in Chapter 3, Section 2.

524. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point shall be a radial/DME fix. The missed approach surface shall commence over the fix and at the required height. (Also See Paragraph 514.)

NOTE: The arc missed approach course may be a continuation of the final approach arc.

525. – 599. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 6. NDB PROCEDURES. ON-AIRPORT FACILITY, NO FAF

600. GENERAL. This chapter is divided into two sections: one for low altitude procedures and one for high altitude teardrop penetration procedures. These criteria apply to NDB procedures based on a facility located on the airport in which no final approach fix is established. These procedures must incorporate a procedure turn or a penetration turn. An on-airport facility is one which is located:

a. For Straight-In Approach. Within 1 mile of any portion of the landing runway.

b. For Circling Approach. Within 1 mile of any portion of the usable landing surface on the airport.

601.-609. RESERVED.

Section 1. Low Altitude Procedures

610. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in Paragraph 220.

611. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The initial approach fix is received by overheading the navigation facility. The initial approach is a procedure turn. Criteria for the procedure turn areas are contained in Paragraph 234.

612. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. This type of procedure has no intermediate segment. Upon completion of the procedure turn the aircraft is on final approach.

613. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach begins where the procedure turn intersects the final approach course.

a. Alignment. The alignment of the final approach course with the runway centerline determines whether a straight-in or circling-only approach may be established.

(1) Straight-In. The angle of convergence of the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30 degrees. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the extended runway centerline 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. When an operational advantage can be achieved, this point of intersection may be established at any point between the runway threshold and a point 5200 feet outward from the runway threshold. Also, where an operational advantage can be achieved a final approach course which does not intersect the runway centerline, or intersects it at a distance greater than 5200 feet from the threshold, may be established provided that such course lies within 500 feet laterally of the extended runway centerline at a point 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 55.

(2) Circling Approach. When the final approach course alignment does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the course alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to pass through any portion of the usable landing surface. See Figure 56.

b. Area. Figure 57 illustrates the final approach primary and secondary areas. The primary area is longitudinally centered on the final approach course, and is 10 miles long. The primary area is 2.5 miles wide at the facility, and expands uniformly to 6 miles wide at 10 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility, and expands uniformly to 1.34 miles on each side of the primary area at 10 miles from the facility. When the 5 mile procedure turn is used, only the inner 5 miles of the final approach area need be considered.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 350 feet. In the secondary area, 350 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum required obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is shown in Appendix 2, Figure 127.

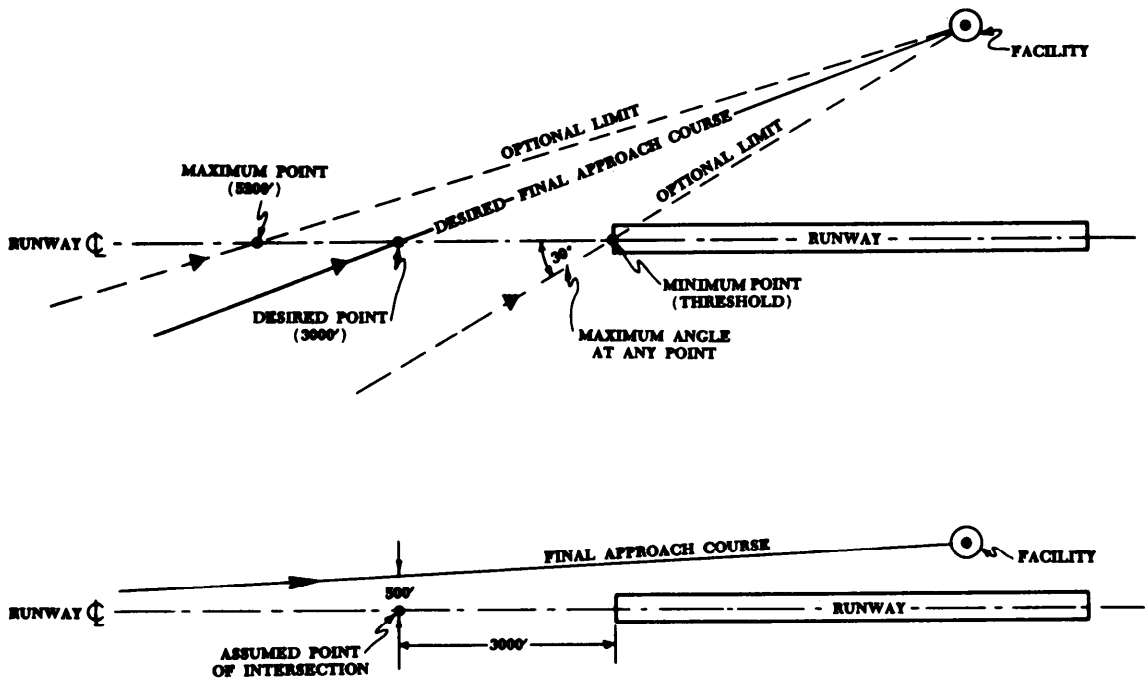


Figure 55. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. On-Airport NDB. No FAF. Straight-In Procedure. Par 613.a.(1).

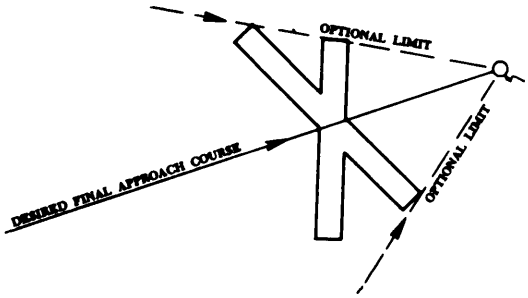


Figure 56. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. On-Airport NDB. No FAF. Circling Approach. Par 613.a.(2).

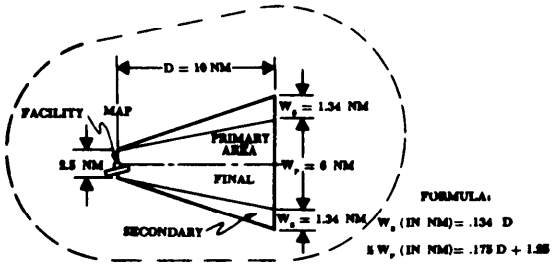


Figure 57. FINAL APPROACH PRIMARY AND SECONDARY AREAS. On-Airport NDB. No FAF. Par 613.b.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 613.c.(1) above, obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

d. Procedure Turn Altitude (Descent Gradient). The procedure turn completion altitude shall be within 1500 feet of the MDA (1000 feet with a 5 mile procedure turn), provided the distance from the facility to the point where the final approach course intersects the runway centerline (or the first usable portion of the landing area for "circling only" procedures) does not exceed 2 miles. When this distance exceeds 2 miles, the maximum difference between the procedure turn completion altitude and the MDA shall be reduced at the rate of 25 feet for each one-tenth of a mile in excess of 2 miles.

NOTE: For those procedures in which the final approach course does not intersect the extended runway centerline within 5200 feet of the runway threshold (Paragraph 613.a.(1)), the assumed point of intersection for computing distance from the facility shall be 3000 feet from the runway threshold. See Figure 55.

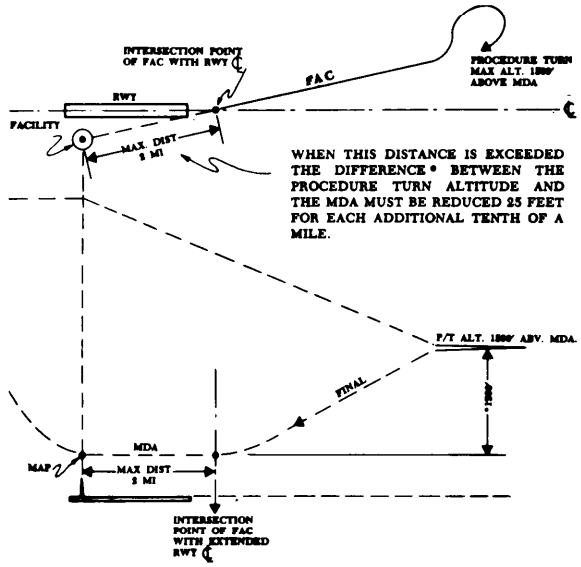


Figure 58. PROCEDURE TURN ALTITUDE. On-Airport NDB, No FAF. Par 613.d.

e. Use of Stepdown Fix. Use of the stepdown fix (Paragraph 288.c.) is permitted provided the distance from the facility to the stepdown fix does not exceed 4 miles. Where the stepdown fix is used the obstacle clearance (Paragraph 613.c.(1)) may be reduced to 300 feet from the stepdown fix to the MAP. See Figure 59, below. See also Paragraph 251.

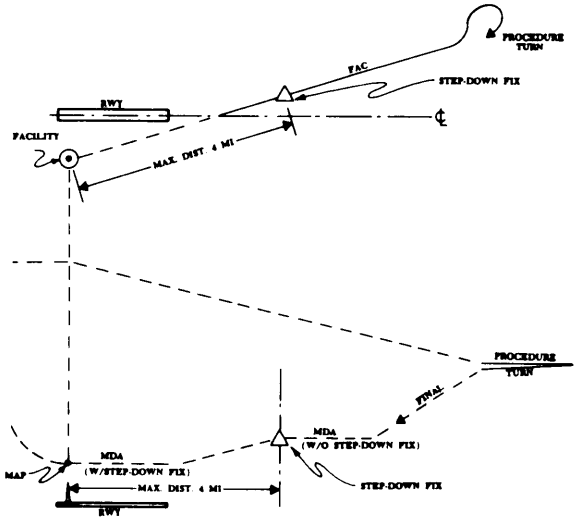


Figure 59. USE OF STEP-DOWN FIX. On-Airport NDB, No FAF. Par 613.e.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. Criteria for determining the MDA are contained in Chapter 3, Section 2.

614. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point is the facility. See Figure 59. The missed approach surface shall commence over the facility at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

615. - 619. RESERVED.

Section 2. High Altitude Teardrop Penetrations

620. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in Paragraph 220.

621. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The initial approach fix is received by overheading the navigation facility. The initial approach is a teardrop penetration turn. The criteria for the penetration turn are contained in Paragraph 235.

622. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. The procedure has no intermediate segment. Upon completion of the penetration turn, the aircraft is on final approach.

623. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. An aircraft is considered to be on final approach upon completion of the penetration turn. However, the final approach segment begins on the final approach course 10 miles from the facility. That portion of the penetration procedure prior to the 10-mile point is treated as the initial approach segment. See Figure 60.

a. Alignment. Same as low altitude criteria. See Paragraph 613.a.

b. Area. Figure 60 illustrates the final approach primary and secondary areas. The primary area is longitudinally centered on the final approach course, and is 10 miles long. The primary area is 2.5 miles wide at the facility, and expands uniformly to 8 miles at 10 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero

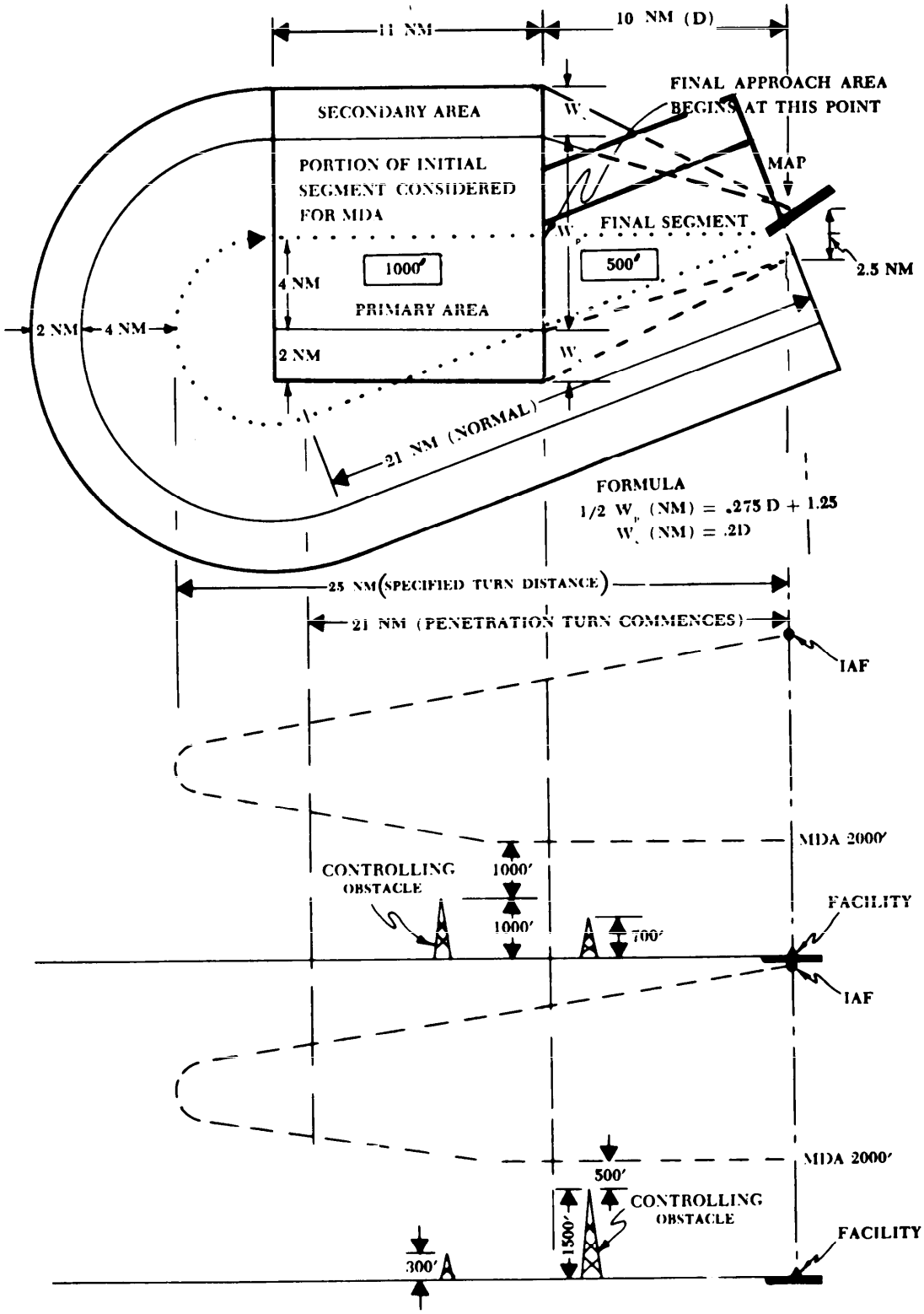


Figure 60. PENETRATION TURN. On-Airport NDB. No FAF. Par 623.

miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 2 miles each side of the primary area at 10 miles from the facility.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 500 feet. In the secondary area, 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum required obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is shown in Appendix 2, Figure 123.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 623.c.(1) above, obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

d. Penetration Turn Altitude (Descent Gradient). The penetration turn completion altitude shall be at least 1000 feet, but not more than 4000 feet above the MDA on final approach.

e. Use of a Stepdown Fix. Use of a stepdown fix (Paragraph 288.c.) is permitted, provided the distance from the facility to the stepdown fix does not exceed 10 miles. See also Paragraph 251.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. In addition to the normal obstacle clearance requirements of the final approach segment (see Paragraph 623.c.) the MDA specified shall provide at least 1000 feet of clearance over obstacles in that portion of the initial approach segment between the final approach segment and the point where the assumed penetration turn track intercepts the inbound course. See Figure 60.

624. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point is the facility. See Figure 60. The missed approach surface shall commence over the facility at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

625. – 699. RESERVED.

* CHAPTER 7. NDB WITH FAF *

* **700. GENERAL.** This chapter prescribes criteria for NDB procedures which incorporate a final approach fix. NDB procedures shall be based only on facilities which transmit a continuous carrier. *

701.–709. RESERVED.

Section 1. NDB With FAF

710. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in paragraph 220

711. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the initial approach are contained in Chapter 2, Section 3.

712. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the intermediate approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 4.

713. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach may be made either FROM or TOWARD the facility. The final approach segment begins at the final approach fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last.

* **NOTE:** *Criteria for the establishment of arc final approaches are specified in paragraph 523b.* *

a. Alignment. The alignment of the final approach course with the runway centerline determines whether a straight-in or circling-only approach may be established. The alignment criteria differs depending on whether the facility is OFF or ON the airport. See definition in paragraph 400.

(1) Off-Airport Facility.

(a) Straight-in. The angle of convergence of the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30°. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the runway centerline at the runway threshold. However, when an operational advantage can be achieved, the point of intersection may be established as much as 3,000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 61.

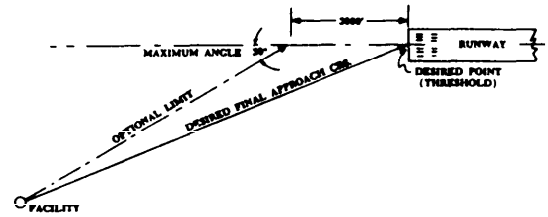


Figure 61. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. Off-Airport NDB with FAF. Straight-in Approach. Par 713.a.(1)(a).

(b) Circling Approach When the final approach course alignment does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing surface. See Figure 62.

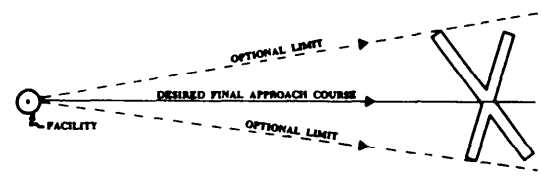


Figure 62. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. Off-Airport NDB with FAF. Circling Approach. Par 713.a.(1)(b).

(2) On-Airport Facility.

(a) Straight-in. The angle of convergence between the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30 degrees. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the extended runway centerline 3,000 feet outward from the runway threshold. When an operational advantage can be achieved, this point of intersection may be established at any point between the runway threshold and a point 5,200 feet outward from the runway threshold. Also, where an operational advantage can be achieved, a final approach course which does not intersect

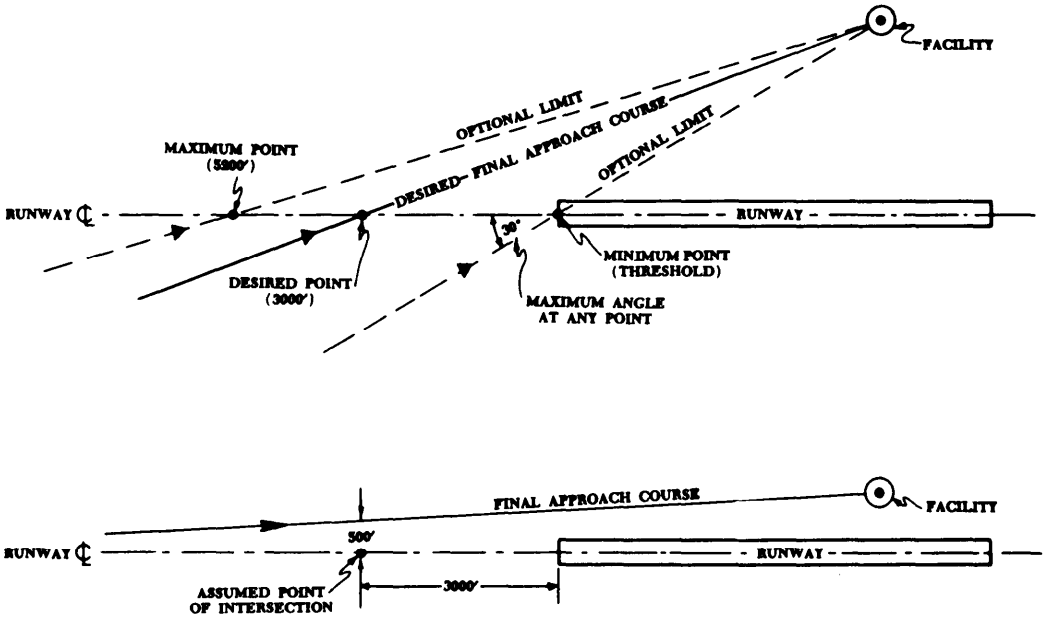


Figure 63. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH. On-airport NDB. Par 713.a.(2)(a).

the runway centerline, or which intersects it at a distance greater than 5,200 feet from the threshold, may be established provided such a course lies within 500 feet laterally of the extended runway centerline at a point 3,000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 63.

(b) Circling Approach. When the final approach course alignment does not meet the criteria for a straight-in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the course alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing surface. See Figure 64.

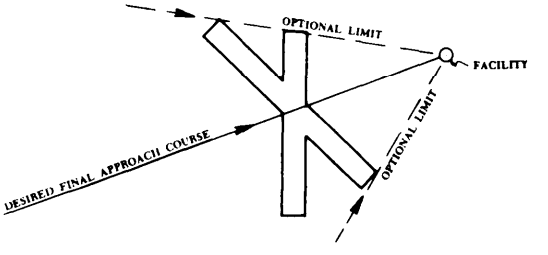


Figure 64. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. On-Airport NDB with FAF. Circling Approach. Par 713.a.(2)(b).

b. Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance in the final approach segment starts at the final approach fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last. It is a portion of a 15-mile long trapezoid (see Figure 65) which is made up of primary and secondary areas. The primary area is centered longitudinally on the final approach course. It is 2.5 miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 5 miles at 15 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility, and

*

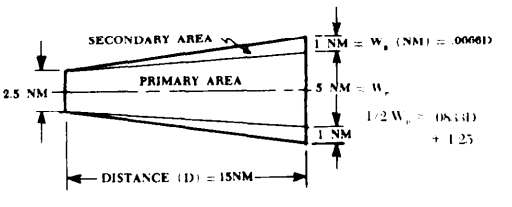


Figure 65. FINAL APPROACH TRAPEZOID. NDB with FAF. Par 713.b. *

expands uniformly to 1 mile each side of the primary area at 15 miles from the facility. Final approaches may be made to airports which are a maximum of 15 miles from the facility. The OPTIMUM Length of the final approach segment if 5 miles. The MAXIMUM length is 10 miles. The MINIMUM length of the final approach segment shall provide adequate distance for an aircraft to make the required descent, and to regain course alignment when a turn is required over the facility. The following table shall be used to determine the minimum length needed to regain the course:

Table 15. MINIMUM LENGTH OF FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT - NDB (Miles)

Approach Category	Magnitude of Turn over Facility		
	10°	20°	30°
A	1.0	1.5	2.0
B	1.5	2.0	2.5
C	2.0	2.5	3.0
D	2.5	3.0	3.5
E	3.0	3.5	4.0

NOTE: This table may be interpolated. If turns of more than 30 degrees are required, or if the minimum lengths specified in the table are not available for the procedure, straight-in minimums are NOT authorized. See Figure 66 for typical final approach areas.

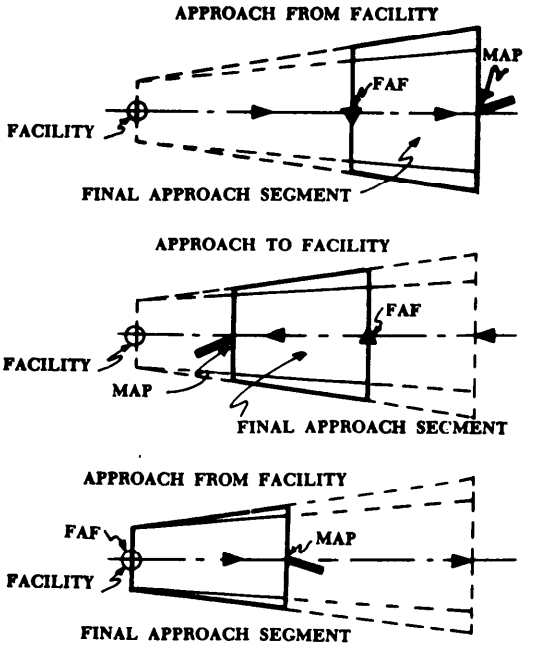


Figure 66. TYPICAL FINAL APPROACH AREAS. NDB with FAF. Par 713.b.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 300 feet. In the secondary area 300 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is as shown in Appendix 2, Figure 126.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in paragraph 713c(1), obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

d. Descent Gradient. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the final approach segment should not exceed 300 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 400 feet per mile. See also paragraph 251 and 288a.

(1) Straight-In Approach. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the runway threshold and the difference in altitude between the altitude over the FAF and the touchdown zone elevation.

(2) Circling Approach. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the first usable portion of the landing surface and the difference in altitude between the altitude over the FAF and the circling MDA.

e. Use of Fixes. Criteria for the use of radio fixes are contained in Chapter 2, Section 8. Where a procedure is based on a procedure turn and an on-airport facility is the procedure turn fix, the distance from the facility to the FAF shall not exceed 4 miles.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. Criteria for determining the MDA are contained in Chapter 3, Section 2.

714. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point and surface shall be established as follows:

a. Off-Airport Facilities.

(1) **Straight-In.** The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT FARTHER from the FAF than the runway threshold. The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See paragraph 274 and Figure 67.

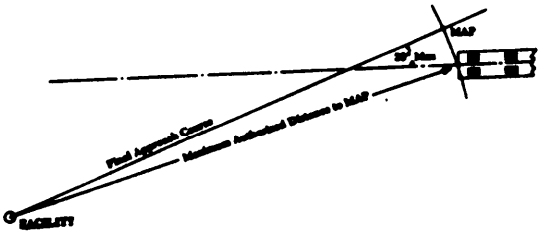


Figure 67. MISSED APPROACH POINT. Off-airport NDB with FAF. Par 714.a.(1).

(2) **Circling Approach.** The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT FARTHER from the final approach fix than the first usable portion of the landing area. The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See paragraph 274.

b. On-Airport Facilities. The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT FARTHER from the final approach fix than the facility. The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See paragraph 274.

* **715.-799. RESERVED.** *

(1) Straight-In. The angle of convergence of the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30 degrees. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the runway centerline at the runway threshold. However, when an operational advantage can be achieved, the point of intersection may be established as much as 3000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 68.

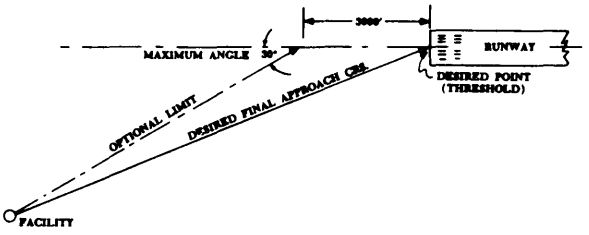


Figure 68. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. L/MF Range with FAF. Straight-In approach. Par 733.a.(1).

(2) Circling Approach. When the final approach course alignment does not meet the criteria for a straight-in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the course alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing area. See Figure 69.

b. Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance in the final approach segment starts at the final approach fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last. It is a portion of a rectangle which is 10 miles long and 3.4 miles wide, centered longitudinally on the final approach course. There is no secondary area. See Figure 70. Final approaches may be made to airports which are a MAXIMUM of 10 miles from the facility. However, only that portion of the 10 mile rectangle which falls between the final approach fix and the missed approach point shall be considered as the final approach segment for obstacle clearance purposes. See Figure 71. The OPTIMUM length of the final approach segment is 5 miles. The MAXIMUM length is 10 miles. The MINIMUM length of the final approach segment shall provide adequate distance for an aircraft to make the required descent and to regain course alignment when a turn is required over the facility. The following table shall be used to determine the minimum length needed to regain course alignment.

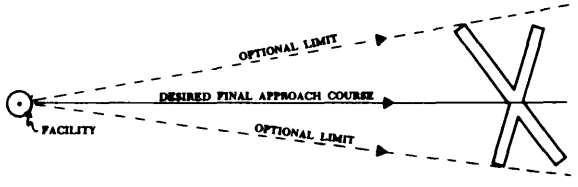


Figure 69. ALIGNMENT OPTIONS FOR FINAL APPROACH COURSE. L/MF Range with FAF. Circling approach. Par 733.a.(2).

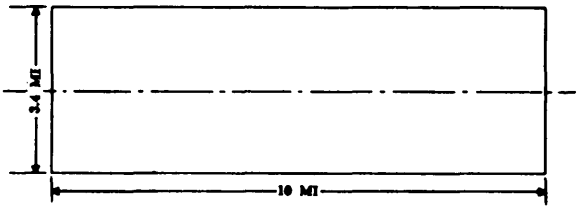


Figure 70. FINAL APPROACH OBSTACLE AREA. L/MF Range with FAF. Par 733.b.

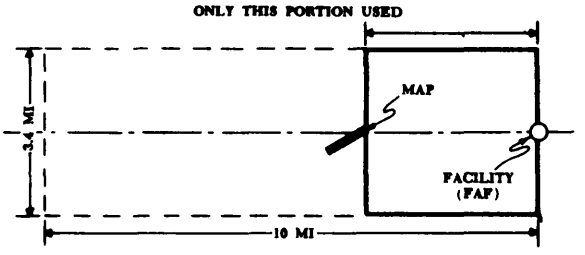


Figure 71. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. L/MF Range with FAF. Par 733.b.

Table 17. MINIMUM LENGTH OF FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT (MILES) L/MFR

Approach Category	Magnitude of Turn over the Facility		
	10°	20°	30°
A	1.0	1.5	2.0
B	1.5	2.0	2.5
C	2.0	2.5	3.0
D	2.5	3.0	3.5
E	3.0	3.5	4.0

NOTE: This table may be interpolated. If turns of more than 30 degrees are required, or if the minimum lengths specified in the table are not available for the procedure, straight-in minimums are not authorized.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In. The minimum obstacle clearance in the final approach segment is 300 feet.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 733.c.(1) above, obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

d. Descent Gradient. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the final approach segment should not exceed 300 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 400 feet per mile. See also Paragraph 251.

(1) Straight-In. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the runway threshold and the difference in altitude between the altitude over the FAF and the touchdown zone elevation.

(2) Circling Approach. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the first usable portion of the landing surface, and the difference in altitude between the altitude over the FAF and the circling MDA.

NOTE: Where straight-in descent gradient criteria are exceeded, only circling MDA shall be authorized.

e. Use of Fixes. Criteria for the use of radio fixes are contained in Chapter 2, Section 8.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. Criteria for determining the MDA are contained in Chapter 3, Section 2.

734. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point and surface shall be established as follows:

a. Straight-In. The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT farther from the FAF than the runway threshold. See Figure 66. The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

b. Circling Approach. The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT farther from the final approach fix than the first usable portion of the landing area. The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

735. – 799. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 8. VHF/UHF DF PROCEDURES

800. GENERAL. These criteria apply to Direction Finding procedures for both high and low altitude aircraft. DF criteria shall be the same as criteria provided for ADF procedures, except as specified herein. As used in this Chapter, the word "facility" means the DF antenna site. DF approach procedures are established for use in emergency situations. However, where required by a using agency, DF may be used for normal instrument approach procedures.

801.-809. RESERVED.

Section 1. VHF/UHF DF Criteria

810. ENROUTE OPERATIONS. Enroute aircraft under DF control follow a course to the DF station as determined by the DF controller. A minimum safe altitude shall be established which provides at least 1000 feet (2000 feet in mountainous areas) of clearance over all obstacles within the operational radius of the DF facility. When this altitude proves unduly restrictive, sector altitudes may be established to provide relief from obstacles which are clear of the area where flight is conducted. Where sector altitudes are established, they shall be limited to sectors of not less than 45 degrees in areas BEYOND a 10 mile radius around the facility. For areas WITHIN 10 miles of the facility, sectors of NOT LESS THAN 90 degrees shall be used. Because the flight course may coincide with the sector division line, the sector altitude shall provide at least 1000 feet (2000 feet in mountainous terrain) of clearance over obstacles in the adjacent sectors within 6 miles or 20 degrees of the sector division line, whichever is the greater. No sector altitude shall be specified which is lower than the procedure or penetration turn altitude or lower than the altitude for area sectors which are closer to the navigation facility.

811. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The initial approach fix is overhead the facility.

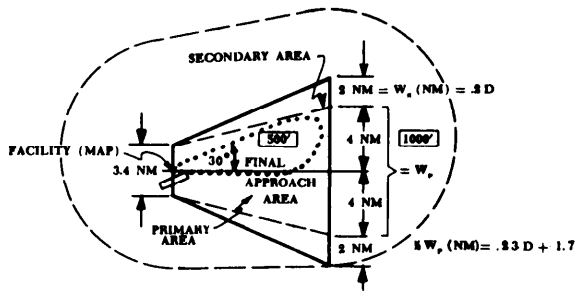


Figure 72. LOW ALTITUDE DF APPROACH AREA. Par 811.

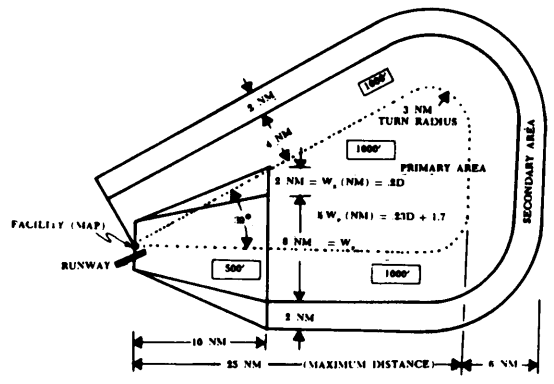


Figure 73. HIGH ALTITUDE DF APPROACH AREA. Par 811.

a. Low Altitude Procedures. The initial approach may be either a 10 mile teardrop procedure turn or the triangular procedure illustrated in Figure 72. In either case, the 10 mile procedure turn criteria contained in Paragraph 234.a., b., c., and d. apply.

b. High Altitude Procedures. The initial approach may be either the standard teardrop penetration turn or the triangular procedure illustrated in Figure 73. When the teardrop penetration turn is used, the criteria contained in Paragraph 235.a., b., c., and d. apply. When the triangular procedure is used, the same criteria apply except that the limiting angular divergence between the outbound course and the reciprocal of the inbound course may be as much as 45 degrees.

812. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Except as outlined in this paragraph criteria for the intermediate segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 4. An intermediate segment is used only when the DF facility is located off the airport, and the final approach is made from overhead the facility to the airport. The width of the primary intermediate area is 3.4 miles at the facility, expanding uniformly on each side of the course to 8 miles wide 10 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility, expanding along the primary area to 2 miles each side at 10 miles from the facility. See Figure 74.

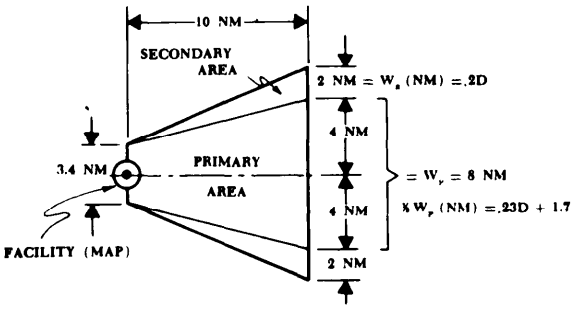


Figure 74. DF INTERMEDIATE APPROACH AREA. Par 812.

813. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach begins at the facility for off-airport facilities or where the procedure turn intersects the final approach course for on-airport facilities (see Paragraph 400 for the definition of on-airport facilities). DF procedures shall not be developed for airports which are more than 10 miles from the DF facility. When a facility is located in excess of 6 miles from an airport, the instrument approach shall end at the facility and flight to the airport shall be conducted in accordance with visual flight rules (VFR).

a. Alignment.

(1) On-Airport Facilities. Paragraph 613.a.(1) and (2) apply.

(2) Off-Airport Facilities. Paragraph 713.a.(1)(a) and (b) apply.

b. Area.

(1) Low Altitude Procedures. Figure 74 illustrates the final approach primary and secondary areas. The primary area is longitudinally centered on the final approach course and is 10 miles long. The primary area is 3.4 miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 8 miles wide at 10 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 2 miles on each side of the primary area at 10 miles from the facility.

(2) High Altitude Procedures. The area considered is identical to that described in Paragraph 623.b. and Figure 60 except that the primary area is 3.4 miles wide at the facility.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In. The minimum obstacle clearance in the primary area is 500 feet. In the secondary areas, 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the inner edge, tapering to zero feet at the outer edge. The minimum required obstacle clearance at any given point in the secondary area is shown in Appendix 2, Figure 123.

(2) Circling Approach. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 813.c.(1), obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

d. Procedure Turn Altitude. The procedure turn completion altitude (minimum base leg altitude in triangular procedures) shall be within 1500 feet of the MDA on final approach.

e. Penetration Turn Altitude (Descent Gradient). The penetration turn altitude (minimum base leg altitude in triangular procedures) shall be at least 1000 feet but not more than 4000 feet above the MDA on final approach.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA). The criteria for determining MDA are contained in Chapter 3, Section 2, except that in high altitude procedures, the MDA specified shall provide at least 1000 feet of clearance over obstacles in that portion of the initial approach segment between the final approach segment and the point where the assumed

penetration course intercepts the inbound course. See Figure 60.

814. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. For on-airport facility locations, the missed approach point is the facility. For off-airport facility locations, the missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT farther from the facility than the first usable landing surface. The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

815. - 819. RESERVED.

Section 2. Communications

820. TRANSMISSION INTERVAL. DF navigation is based on voice transmission of heading and altitude instructions by a ground station to the aircraft. The MAXIMUM interval between transmissions is:

a. Enroute Operations. 60 Seconds.

b. From the Initial Approach Fix to Within an Estimated 30 Seconds of the Final Station Passage or Missed Approach Point. 15 Seconds.

c. Within 30 Seconds of the Final Station Passage or Missed Approach Point. 5 Seconds. (15 Seconds for Doppler DF Equip.).

821. - 829. RESERVED.

Section 3. Minimums

830. APPROACH MINIMUMS. The minimums established for a particular airport shall be as prescribed by the appropriate approving agency, but the MDA shall NOT be lower than that required for obstacle clearance on final approach and in the circling area specified in Chapter 2, Section 6.

831. - 899. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 9. INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM (ILS)

900. GENERAL. This chapter applies to approach procedures based on the Instrument Landing System (ILS).

901. DEFINITION OF TYPES.

a. ILS Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a decision height of not less than 200 feet.

b. ILS Category II. See Section 6. Criteria to be incorporated at a later date.

c. ILS Category III. See Section 7. Criteria to be incorporated at a later date.

d. Localizer and LDA. Approach procedures which do not use the glide slope component of the ILS.

e. Simultaneous ILS. An ILS approach procedure based on ILS installations which serve parallel runways and provides for simultaneous approaches to authorized minimums.

902.-909. RESERVED.

Section 1. ILS Category I Components

* **910. SYSTEM COMPONENTS.** The Category I ILS procedures are based upon the components listed below. Substitution is permitted only as specified in Paragraphs 283, 911, 912, and 930.

a. Localizer (LOC), Category I quality or better.

b. Glide Slope (GS), Category I quality or better.

c. Outer Marker (OM). *

* **911. COMPASS LOCATOR (LOM).** Compass locator radio facilities may be installed at outer marker sites, but are not considered basic components of the ILS. However, when installed, they may be used in lieu of the outer marker. *

912. DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT (DME). When installed with the ILS, DME may be used in lieu of the outer marker. When a unique operational requirement exists, DME information derived from a separate facility, as specified in Paragraph 282, may also be used to provide ARC initial approaches, a FAF for back course (BC) approaches, or as a substitute for the outer marker. When used as a substitute for the outer marker, the fix displacement error shall NOT exceed plus or minue 1/2 mile and the angular divergence of the signal sources shall NOT exceed 6 degrees.

913. INOPERATIVE COMPONENTS. A complete Category I ILS consists of the components specified in Paragraph 910. When the localizer fails, an ILS approach is not authorized. When the glide slope becomes inoperative or is not available, the ILS reverts to a nonprecision approach system. In this case, obstacle clearance from Paragraph 954 and the nonprecision minimums from Paragraph 350 apply. * When other components become inoperative, the ILS may continue in use with the landing minimums as prescribed in Paragraph 350. *

914.-919. RESERVED.

Section 2. ILS Category I Criteria

920. FEEDER ROUTES. The criteria for feeder routes are contained in Chapter 2, Section 2.

921. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The criteria for the initial approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 3. Procedrue turns shall be specified from the outer marker wherever practical.

922. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. Except as stated in this paragraph, the criteria for the intermediate segment are contained in chapter 2, section 4. The intermediate segment begins at the point where the initial approach course intercepts the localizer course. It extends along the inbound localizer course to the FAF for localizer approaches or the glide slope intercept point for ILS approaches. The minimum length of the intermediate segment depends on the angle at which the initial approach course intersects the localizer course, and is specified in table 18. The MAXIMUM angle of intersection shall be 90 degrees, unless a lead radial, as specified in paragraph 232a, is provided and the length of the intermediate segment is increased in accordance with paragraph 242b. See figure 75.

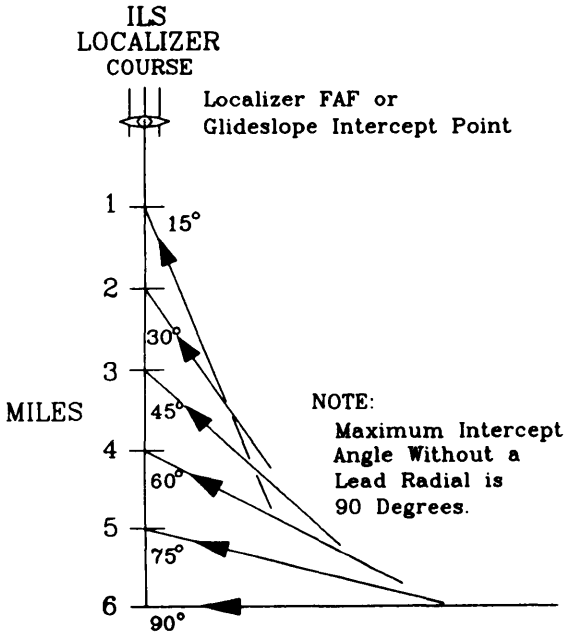


Figure 75. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT vs. ANGLE OF INTERSECTION. ILS Category I. Par. 922.

923. DESCENT GRADIENT. Even though the minimum length of the intermediate segment may be less than that specified in chapter 2, section 4, intermediate descent criteria specified in paragraphs 242d and 243d shall be applied to at least 5 miles of flight track immediately prior to the glide slope intercept point.

Table 18. INTERSECTION ANGLE vs. LENGTH OF INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT.

Maximum Angle of Intersection (Degrees)	Minimum Length of Segment (Miles)
15	1
30	2
45	3
60	4
75	5
90–96	6

924. ALTITUDE SELECTION. Altitudes selected for the initial approach and intermediate approach segments shall be established and provide required obstacle clearance as specified in chapter 2. In addition, the selected altitudes shall be limited as follows:

a. Procedure Turn. The procedure turn completion altitude shall NOT be lower than the glide slope interception altitude nor more than 500 feet above the glide slope interception altitude. The glide slope interception point shall be the outer marker whenever possible.

b. High Altitude Teardrop Penetration Turn. The penetration turn completion altitude shall NOT be lower than the glide slope interception altitude nor more than 4000 feet above the glide slope interception altitude. The glide slope interception point shall be the outer marker whenever possible.

c. Other Initial Approaches. The altitude at which the localizer course is intercepted shall NOT be less than the glide slope interception altitude.

d. Intermediate Approach. The altitude shall NOT be less than the glide slope interception altitude. The glide slope interception point shall be the outer marker whenever possible. When the glide slope is inoperative, the intermediate approach altitude shall provide at least 500 feet of obstacle clearance from the point of interception of the localizer course to the outer marker or other final approach fix. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See paragraph 231.

925.-929. RESERVED.

Section 3. ILS Category I Final Approach

930. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach segment shall begin at the point where the glide slope is intercepted, and descent to the authorized decision height (DH) begins. Where possible, this point *shall be coincidental with a designated FAF. (See paragraph 287 for satisfactory fix.) At locations where it is not possible for the point of glide slope intercept to coincide with a designated FAF, the point of glide slope interception shall be located PRIOR to the FAF. Where a designated FAF cannot be provided, specific authorization by the approving authority is required.

a. Alignment. The final approach course is normally aligned with the runway centerline. Where a unique operational requirement indicates a need for an offset course, it may be approved, provided the course intersects the runway centerline at a point 1,100 to 1,200 feet toward the runway threshold from the DH point on the glide flope and the angular divergence of the course does NOT exceed 3 degrees.

b. Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance in the final approach segment consists of a final approach area and transitional surfaces.

(1) Final Approach Area. The final approach area has the following dimensions:

(a) Length. The final approach area is 50,000 feet long measured outward along the final approach course from a point beginning 200 feet outward from the runway threshold. Where operationally required by other procedural considerations due to existing obstacles, the length may be increased al shown in Figure 76. The final approach area used shall only be that portion of the area which is between the glide slope interception point and the point 200 feet from the threshold.

(b) Width. The final approach area is centered on the extended runway centerline except in those cases where an offset localizer is required, as provided in paragraph 930a, in which case the area is centered on the final approach course. The area has a width of 1,000 feet at the point 200 feet from the threshold and expands uniformly to a width of 16,000 feet at a point 50,000 feet from the point of beginning. This width further expands uniformly where greater length is required as in paragraph 930b(1)(a). See figure 76.

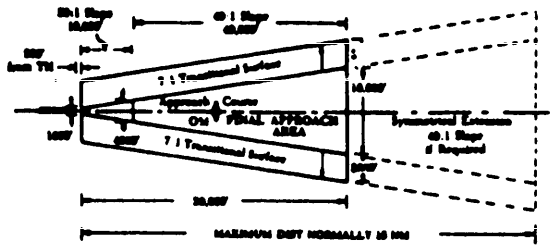


Figure 76. ILS CATEGORY I FINAL APPROACH AREA. Par 930

The width either side of the centerline at a given distance "D" from the point of beginning can be found by using the formula "500+.15D=1/2W"; e.g.; 500+.15x50,000=8,000, which is 1/2 width; therefore, the total width is 16,000 feet at the 50,000 foot point.

NOTE: *Where glide slope interception occurs at a distance greater than 50,200 feet from the threshold, the final approach area and the final approach surface may be extended symmetrically to a maximum distance dictated by the usability of the glide slope.*

931. FINAL APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE SURFACE. The final approach obstacle surface is an inclined plane which originates at the runway threshold elevation 975 feet outward from the GPI, and which overlies the final approach area. The surface is divided into two sections: an inner 10,000-foot section and an outer 40,000-foot section. The slope of the surface changes at the 10,000-foot point. The exact gradient may differ according to the angle at which the glide slope is established. The 50:1 and 40:1 slopes which are applicable to the 2 1/2-degree glide slope shall be established unless other slopes must be used to assure required clearance over existing obstacles. Table 19 specifies slopes which provide the minimum required obstacle clearance for several glide slope angles. See also paragraphs 934 and 935.

932. TRANSITIONAL SURFACES. Transitional surfaces for ILS Category I are inclined planes with a slope of 7:1 which extend outward and upward from the edge of the final approach area, starting at the height of

Table 19. ILS CATEGORY I GS ANGLE VS. SLOPES OF SURFACES.

GS Angle (Degrees)	Approximate Slope of Inner Section	Approximate Slope of Outer Section
2	96.5:1	61.5:1
2 1/4	66:1	48.5:1
2 1/2	50:1	40:1
2 3/4	40.5:1	34:1
3	34:1	29.5:1

NOTE: See graph, Appendix 2, Figure 132 for interpolation.

the applicable final approach surface and extending for a lateral distance of 5,000 feet at right angles to the final approach point. See figure 76.

933. DELETED.

934. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE OUTSIDE THE DH POINT. No obstacle shall penetrate the applicable final approach obstacle clearance surface specified in paragraph 931 or the transitional surfaces specified in paragraph 932. The required obstacle clearance is based on the difference between the glide slope angle and the appropriate final approach surface specified in paragraph 931. To determine the minimum required obstacle clearance in feet for any given distance "D" from the GPI, the following formulas may be used:

For "D" less than 10,975 feet, the minimum required clearance is .02366 D + 20 feet. See paragraph 935.

For "D" 10,975 feet or more, the minimum required clearance is .01866 D + 75 feet.

The clearance provided by these formulas is a minimum requirement. Greater clearance may be necessary in the interest of safety, due to such factors as precipitous terrain or ILS installation peculiarities. The Nomograph in Figure 77 provides a simple method for determining the minimum obstacle clearance requirements. Included in Figure 77 is also an example for determing the required glide slope angle. See also paragraph 935.

935. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE INSIDE THE DH POINT. The lowest landing minimums as specified in paragraph 350 may be approved when no obstacle penetrates the final approach obstacle clearance surface applicable to the commissioned glide slope angle, commencing 200 feet outward from the threshold and at least 975 feet from the GPI, and extending to the DH point. When penetration of this surface exists, consideration should be given to the removal of the obstacle or relocation of the landing threshold. See Figure 131.

936. GLIDE SLOPE. In addition to the required obstacle clearance, the following shall apply to the selection of glide slope angle and antenna location:

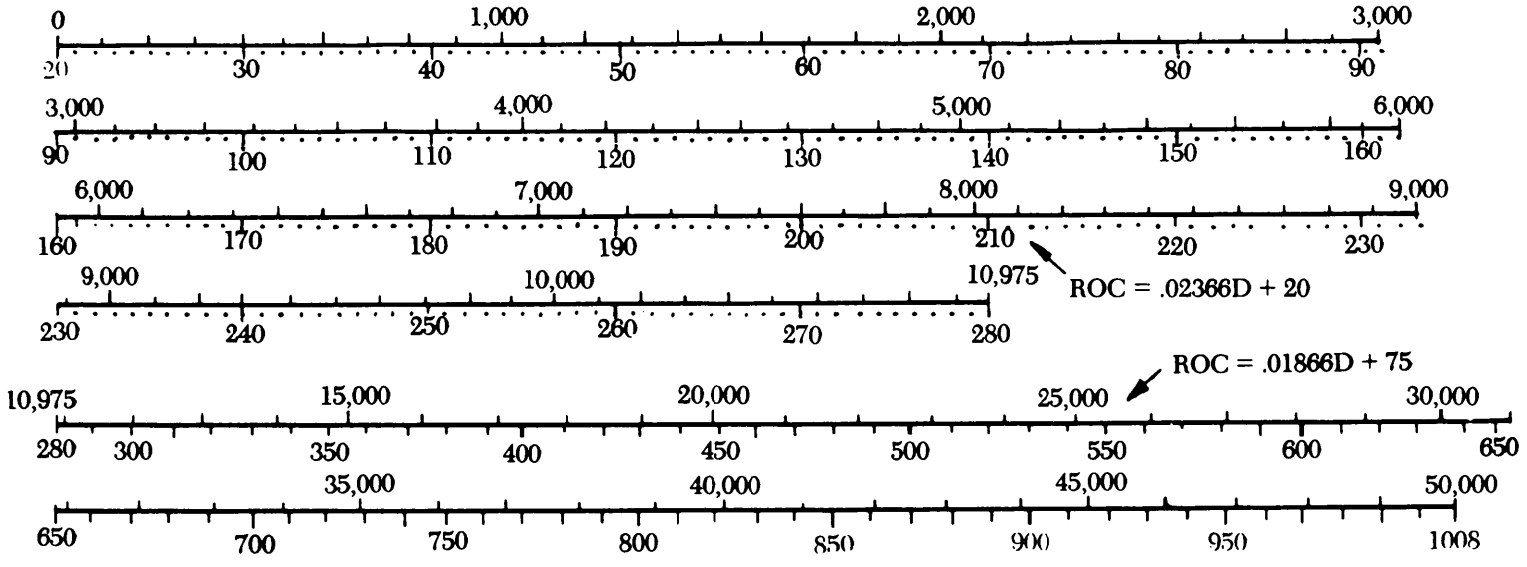
a. Glide Slope Angle.

(1) Civil ILS Facilities. All new and relocated ILS facilities will be commissioned with a 3° glide slope angle. Existing facilities may continue in operation without change in the established glide slope angle. Angles over 3° shall not be established without Office of Flight Operations, FAA, Washington, D.C., approval.

(2) Military ILS Facilities. The optimum glide slope angle is 2 1/2°. Angles less than 2° or more than 3° shall not be established without the authorization of the approving authority.

NOTE. *Where PAR serves a runway that is also served by ILS and/or VASI, the PAR, ILS, and VASI glide slope angles and RPI shall coincide. The PAR glide slope angle shall be within 0.20 of the ILS/VASI glide slope angle and the RPI shall be within plus or minue 50 feet of the ILS/RPI and/or VASI runway reference point (RRP).*

b. Glide Slope Threshold Crossing Height. The OPTIMUM threshold crossing height is 50 feet. The MAXIMUM is 60 feet. A height as low as 32 feet for military airports may be used at locations where special consideration of the glide path angle and antenna location are required. Where the glide slope threshold crossing height exceeds 60 feet, consideration shall be given to the relocation of the landing threshold to insure effective placement of the approach light system. See Appendix 2 for a method of computing threshold crossing height.



The lowest glide slope that will provide the required obstacle clearance (ROC) over a critical obstacle is found by the formula:

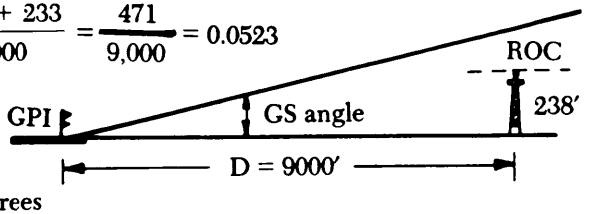
$$\text{Tan of GS angle} = \frac{\text{Obstacle height + ROC}}{\text{GPI to obstacle Distance}}$$

.EXAMPLE:

Controlling obstacle is 238 feet above runway elevation and 9000 feet from the GPI. Find the minimum GS angle

From the nomograph find 233 feet opposite 9000 feet, or use the formula $(0.02366 \times 9000) + 20 = 233$

$$\text{Tan of GS angle} = \frac{238 + 233}{9000} = \frac{471}{9{,}000} = 0.0523$$



Arc Tan 0.0523 = 3.0 degrees

NOTE: A method with an example of criteria application (Paragraphs 931 through 935) is included in Appendix 2.

Figure 77. ILS CATEGORY I FINAL APPROACH AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Par 934. (This nomograph should not be used to determine ROC inside the DH or MAP. The ROC inside the DH/MAP must be computed in accordance with Appendix 2, Par 11b (1).)

c. Antenna Mast Height. The antenna mast or monitor should be located at a MINIMUM distance of 400 feet from the runway centerline and should not exceed 55 feet in height above the elevation of the runway centerline nearest it. A mast of over 55 feet may be permitted if the minimum distance from the runway centerline is increased by 10 feet for each foot the mast exceeds 55 feet. When a mast cannot for technical or economic reasons be located at a minimum distance of 400 feet from the runway centerline, the minimum distance may be reduced to not less than 250 feet from the centerline provided the basic mast height of 55 feet is reduced by .2D; where D is the distance inward from the 400 foot point. See Figure 78.

937. RELOCATION OF GLIDE SLOPE. Where minimum obstacle clearance cannot be obtained with a 3 degree glide slope angle, and sufficient length of runway is available, the glide slope may be moved the required distance down the runway to obtain the minimum obstacle clearance in the final approach area. Where the glide slope threshold crossing height exceeds 60 feet, consideration should be given to relocating the landing threshold to insure effective placement of the approach light system. The minimum distance between the GPI and the runway threshold is 775 feet. (No minimum GPI distance need be applied to military locations provided minimum ROC and TCH standards are met.)

938. DECISION HEIGHT (DH).

a. Minimum Decision Height. For ILS Category I the decision height shall be no lower than 200 feet above the touchdown zone (TDZ) elevation.

b. Adjustment of Decision Height.

(1) Primary Final Approach Surface. When minimum obstacle clearance cannot be obtained with a 3 degree glide slope angle, and the approving authority will not approve an angle in excess of 3 degrees, and the runway length does not permit a compensating adjustment, the decision height shall be increased accordingly. To establish the minimum decision height which can be authorized, extend a line horizontally outward from the top of each penetrating obstacle, parallel with the runway centerline, to a point of interception with the established final approach obstacle clearance surface. From the controlling point, extend a line vertically to a point of intersection with the glide slope. The height at the point of intersection with the glide slope is the minimum decision height, except that application of this method need not require a decision height that is more than 250 feet above the obstacle. This decision height shall not be less than 250 feet. See Figure 79.

(2) Transitional Surface. Where minimum obstacle clearances cannot be met in the tran-

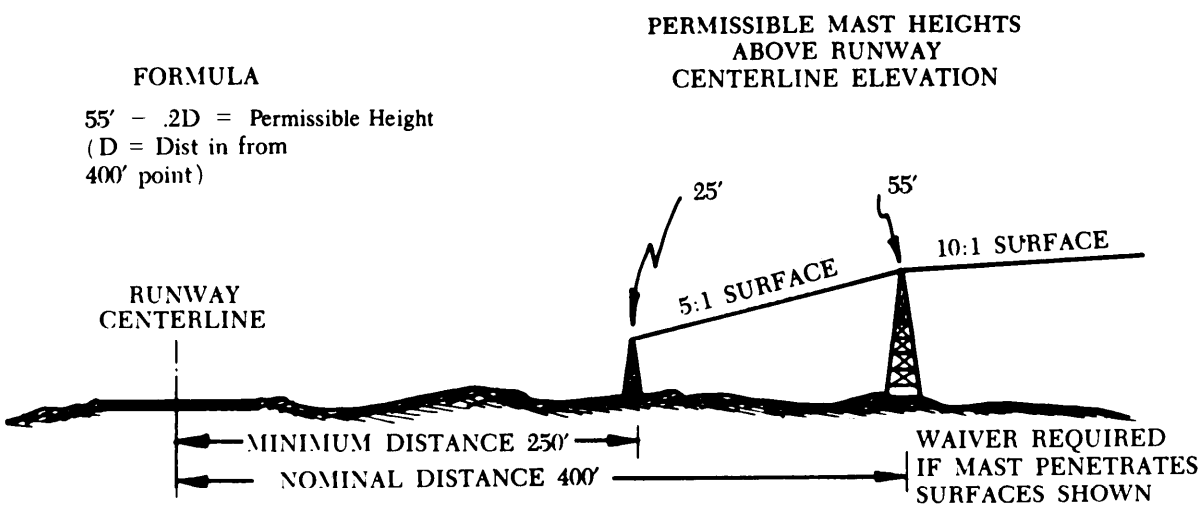


Figure 78. GLIDE SLOPE ANTENNA LOCATION VS. HEIGHT. Par 936.c.

sitional surfaces, and when deemed necessary, consideration will be given to an adjustment in the decision height commensurate with the degree of interference presented by the particular obstacle or obstacles. See Figure 79.

939. RESERVED.

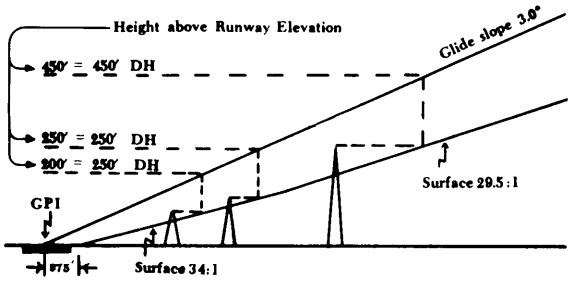


Figure 79. ADJUSTMENT OF DECISION HEIGHT. Par 938.

Section 4. ILS Category I Missed Approach

940. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. The missed approach segment begins at the missed approach point and ends at an appropriate point or fix where initial approach or enroute obstacle clearance is provided. Missed approach procedures shall be based on positive course guidance where possible.

941. MISSED APPROACH POINT (MAP). The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course where the height of the glide slope equals the authorized decision height.

942. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH. The straight missed approach area (maximum of 15 degree turn from final approach course) starts at the missed approach point. The length of the area is 15 miles, measured along the missed approach course. The area has a width equal to that of the final approach area at the missed approach point and a width equal to that of the initial approach area at a point 15 miles from the MAP. The missed approach area is divided into 2 sections.

a. Section 1 starts at the MAP and is longitudinally centered on the missed approach course. It has the same width at the MAP as the final approach area. The total width increases to 1 mile at a point 1.5 miles from the MAP.

b. Section 2 starts at the end of Section 1 and is centered on a continuation of the Section 1 course. The width increases uniformly from 1 mile at the beginning to 12 miles at a point 13.5 miles from the beginning. A secondary area for reduction of obstacle clearance is identified within Section 2. The secondary area is zero miles wide at the beginning and increases uniformly to 2 miles wide at the end of Section 2. Positive course guidance is required to reduce obstacle clearance in the secondary areas. See Figure 80.

943. TURNING MISSED APPROACH. Where turns of less than 15 degrees are required in a missed approach procedure, the provisions of Paragraph 942.a. and b. apply. Where turns of MORE than 15 degrees are required, they shall be specified to commence at an altitude which is at least 400 feet above the elevation of the touchdown zone. Altitudes required prior to commencing a turn shall be specified in the published procedure. Such turns are assumed to commence at the point where Section 2 begins. The flight track and obstacle clearance radii used shall be as specified in Table 5, Paragraph 275. The inner boundary line shall commence at the edge of Section 1 opposite the MAP. The outer and inner boundary lines shall flare to the width of the initial approach area 13.5 miles from the beginning of Section 2. Secondary areas for reduction of obstacle clearance are identified within Section 2. The secondary areas begin after completion of the turn. They are zero miles wide at the beginning and increase uniformly to 2 miles wide at the end of Section 2. Positive course guidance is required to

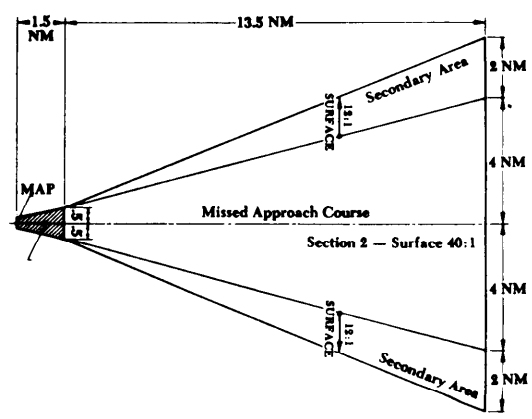


Figure 80. ILS STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par 942.

reduce obstacle clearance in the secondary area. See Figure 81.

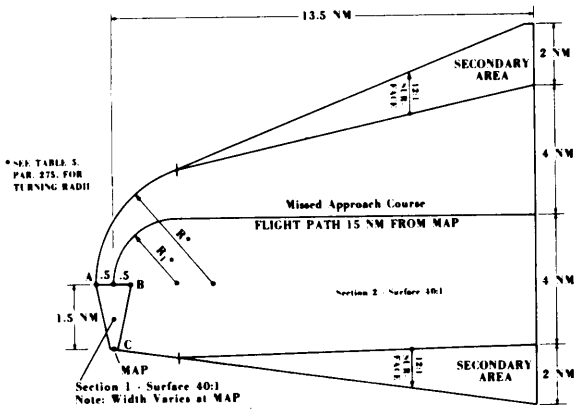


Figure 81. ILS TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par 943.

944. MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE.

a. Straight Missed Approach Area. No obstacle in Section 1 or Section 2 may penetrate a 40:1 surface which originates at the MAP at the height of the final approach obstacle clearance surface, but not more than 250 feet below the DH, and which overlies the entire missed approach area.

b. Turning Missed Approach Area. Section 1 obstacle clearance is the same as that for straight missed approaches. To determine the obstacle clearance requirements in Section 2, the dividing line between Section 1 and 2 is identified as "A-B-C". The height of the missed approach surface over any obstacle in Section 2 is determined by measuring the distance from the obstacle to the nearest point on line A-B-C and computing the height according to the 40:1 ratio, starting at the height of the missed approach surface at the end of Section 1.

c. Secondary Areas. Where secondary areas are considered, no obstacle may penetrate a 12:1 surface which slopes outward and upward from the missed approach surface.

d. Discontinuance. Where the 40:1 surface reaches a height of 1000 feet below the missed approach altitude (Paragraph 270) further application of the surface is not required.

945. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. If a straight climb to an altitude greater than 400 feet is necessary prior to commencing a missed approach turn, a combination straight and turning missed approach area must be constructed. The straight portion of this missed approach area is divided into Sections 1 and 1A. The portion in which the turn is made is Section 2.

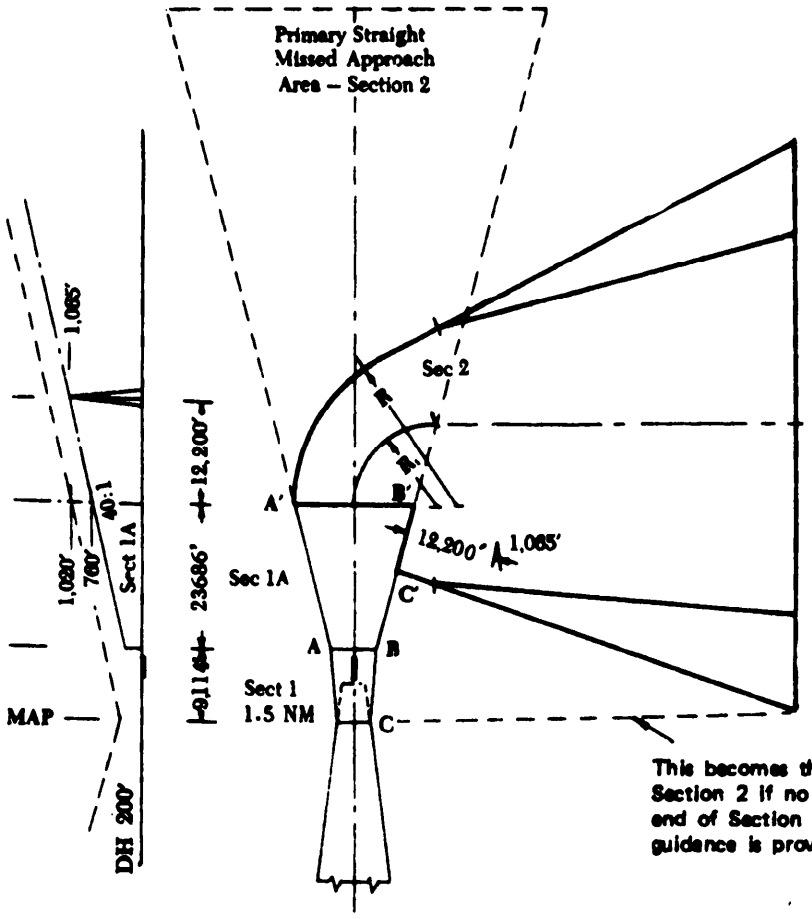
a. Straight Portion. Sections 1 and 1A correspond respectively to Sections 1 and 2 of the normal straight missed approach area and are constructed as specified in Paragraph 942 except that Section 1A has no secondary areas. Obstacle clearance is provided as specified in Paragraph 944.b. The length of Section 1A is determined as shown in Figure 82 and relates to the need to climb to a specified altitude prior to commencing the turn. The line A′-B′ marks the end of Section 1A. Point C′ is 9000 feet from the end of Section 1A. (See Figure 82.)

b. Turning Portion. Section 2 is constructed as specified in Paragraph 943 except that it begins at the end of Section 1A instead of the end of Section 1. To determine the height which must be attained before commencing the missed approach turn, first identify the controlling obstacle on the side of Section 1A to which the turn is to be made. Then measure the distance from this obstacle to the nearest edge of the Section 1A area. Using this distance as illustrated in Figure 82, determine the height of the 40:1 slope at the edge of Section 1A. This height plus 250 feet (rounded off to the next higher 20 foot increment) is the height at which the turn should be started. Obstacle clearance requirements in Section 2 are the same as those specified in Paragraph 944.b. except that Section 2 is expanded to start at Point C if no fix exists at the end of Section 1A or if no course guidance is provided in Section 2 (See Figure 82.)

946.–949. RESERVED.

Section 5. Localizer and LDA

950. FEEDER ROUTES, INITIAL APPROACH, AND INTERMEDIATE SEGMENTS. These criteria are contained in Paragraphs 920, 921, 922, and 923.



EXAMPLE:

DH is 200' MSL.

A 1085' controlling obstacle is 12200' from the near edge of Sec. 1A.

A 40:1 surface which clears the obstacle has a height of 760' MSL at the near edge of Section 1A.

12200' ÷ 40'=305'

1085' – 305'=760'

To determine minimum altitude at which the missed approach aircraft may start the turn add 250' obstacle clearance and round up the sum to the next higher 20' increment.

760' + 250' = 1010'

Rounded up = 1020'

To climb 820' from DH 200' to the turning altitude (1020' MSL) at the 40:1 climb gradient requires 32800'. Sec. 1 is 9114' long; therefore, Section 1A is required to be 23686' long.

This becomes the boundary of Section 2 if no fix exists at the end of Section 1A or if no course guidance is provided in Section 2.

Figure 82. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par 945.

951. USE OF LOCALIZER ONLY. Where no usable glide slope is available, a localizer-only (front or back course) approach may be approved, provided the approach is made on a localizer from a final approach fix located within 10 miles of the runway threshold. Criteria in this section are also applicable to procedures based on localizer type directional aids (LDA). Back course procedures shall not be based on courses which exceed 6 degrees in width and shall not be approved for offset localizers.

952. ALIGNMENT. Localizers which are aligned within 3 degrees of the runway alignment shall be identified as localizers. If the alignment exceeds 3 degrees, they will be identified as LDA facilities. The alignment of the course for LDA facilities shall meet the final approach alignment criteria for VOR on-airport facilities. See Chapter 5, Paragraph 513, and Figure 48.

953. AREA. The final approach area and transitional surface dimensions are as specified in Paragraph 930. However, only that portion of the final approach area which is between the FAF and the runway need be considered as the final approach segment for obstacle clearance purposes. The optimum length of the final approach segment is 5 miles. The MINIMUM length of the final approach segment shall be sufficient to provide adequate distance for an aircraft to make the required descent. The area shall be centered on the final approach course and shall commence at the runway threshold. For

LDA procedures the final approach area shall commence at the facility and extend to the FAF. The MAP for LDA procedures shall not be farther from the FAF than a point adjacent to the landing threshold perpendicular to the final approach course.

954. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. The minimum obstacle clearance in the final approach area shall be 250 feet. In addition, the MDA established for the final approach area shall assure that no obstacles penetrate the transitional surfaces. The transitional surfaces in localizer-only type approaches begin at a height not less than 250 feet below the MDA.

955. DESCENT GRADIENT. The OPTIMUM descent gradient for a localizer-only approach should not exceed 300 feet per mile. The MAXIMUM descent gradient and method of computation shall be as specified in paragraph 513d.

956. MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE. Because no glideslope is associated with a localizer-only approach, the lowest altitude on final approach is specified as an MDA, not a decision height (DH). The MDA adjustments specified in paragraph 232 shall be considered.

957. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. The criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in paragraphs 942, 943, and 945. The missed approach point is on the final approach course not farther from the final approach fix than the runway threshold (first usable portion of the landing area for circling approach). The missed approach surface shall commence over the MAP at the required height. See paragraph 274.

958.-959. RESERVED.

Section 6. ILS Category II

960.-969. RESERVED.

Section 7. ILS Category III

970.-979. RESERVED.

Section 8. RESERVED.

980.-989. RESERVED.

* Section 9. Simultaneous ILS Procedures

990. GENERAL. Simultaneous dual and triple ILS approach procedures using ILS installations with parallel courses may be authorized when the minimum standards in this section and section 1 are met. *

991. SYSTEM COMPONENTS. Simultaneous ILS approach procedures require the following basic components.

a. An ILS specified in section 1 of this chapter for each runway. Adjacent markers of the separate systems shall be separated sufficiently to preclude interference at altitudes intended for use.

* b. ATC approved radar for monitoring simultaneous operations.

992. INOPERATIVE COMPONENTS. When any component specified in paragraph 991 becomes inoperative, simultaneous ILS approaches are not authorized on that runway. *

993. FEEDER ROUTES. The criteria for feeder routes are contained in chapter 2, section 2.

994. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The criteria for the initial approach segment are contained in chapter 2, section 3. The initial approach shall be made from a facility or satisfactory radio fix by radar vector. Procedure and penetration turns shall not be authorized.

* a. **Altitude Selection.** In addition to obstacle clearance requirements, the altitudes established for initial approach shall provide the following vertical separation between glide slope intercept altitudes.

(1) **Dual.** Simultaneous dual ILS approaches shall require at least 1,000 feet vertical separation between glide slope intercept altitudes for the two systems. See figure 96A.

(2) **Triple.** Simultaneous triple ILS approaches shall require at least 1,000 feet vertical separation between glide slope intercept altitudes for any combination of runways. No two runways share the same glide slope intercept altitude. See figure 96B.

b. **Localizer Intercept Point.** The localizer intercept point shall be established in accordance with paragraph 922. Intercept angles may not exceed 30 degrees; 20 degrees is optimum. *

995. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the intermediate segment are contained in paragraphs 241 and 242, except that simultaneous ILS procedures shall be constructed with a straight intermediate segment aligned with the final approach course, and the minimum length shall be established in accordance with paragraph 922. The intermediate segment begins at the point where the initial approach intercepts the final approach course. It extends along the inbound course to the glideslope intercept point.

996. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the final approach segment are contained in section 3 of this chapter.

997. FINAL APPROACH COURSE STANDARDS. The final approach courses for simultaneous ILS approaches require the following:

a. Dual approaches shall have a minimum of 4,300 feet separation between parallel final approach courses.

b. Triple approaches shall have a minimum of 5,000 feet separation between parallel final approach courses. For triple parallel approach operations at airport elevations above 1000 feet MSL, airport surveillance radar with high resolution final monitor aids or high update radar with associated final monitor aids shall be required.

c. No Transgression Zone (NTZ). The NTZ shall be 2,000 feet wide equidistant between final approach courses.

d. Normal Operating Zone (NOZ). The area between the final approach course and the NTZ is half of the normal operating zone.

(1) The NOZ for dual simultaneous ILS approaches shall not be less than 1,150 feet in width each side of the final approach course. See figure 97A.

(2) The NOZ for triple simultaneous ILS approaches shall not be less than 1,500 feet in width each side of the final approach course. See figure 97B.

998. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Except as stated in this paragraph, the criteria for missed approach are contained in section 4 of this chapter. A missed approach shall be established for each of the simultaneous systems. The minimum altitude specified for commencing a turn on a climb straight ahead for a missed approach shall not be less than 400 feet above the TDZE.

a. Dual. Missed approach courses shall diverge a minimum of 45 degrees.

b. Triple. The missed approach for the center runway should continue straight ahead. A minimum of 45-degree divergence shall be provided between adjacent missed approach headings. At least one outside parallel shall have a turn height specified that is not greater than 500 feet above the TDZ elevation for that runway.

999. RESERVED.

*

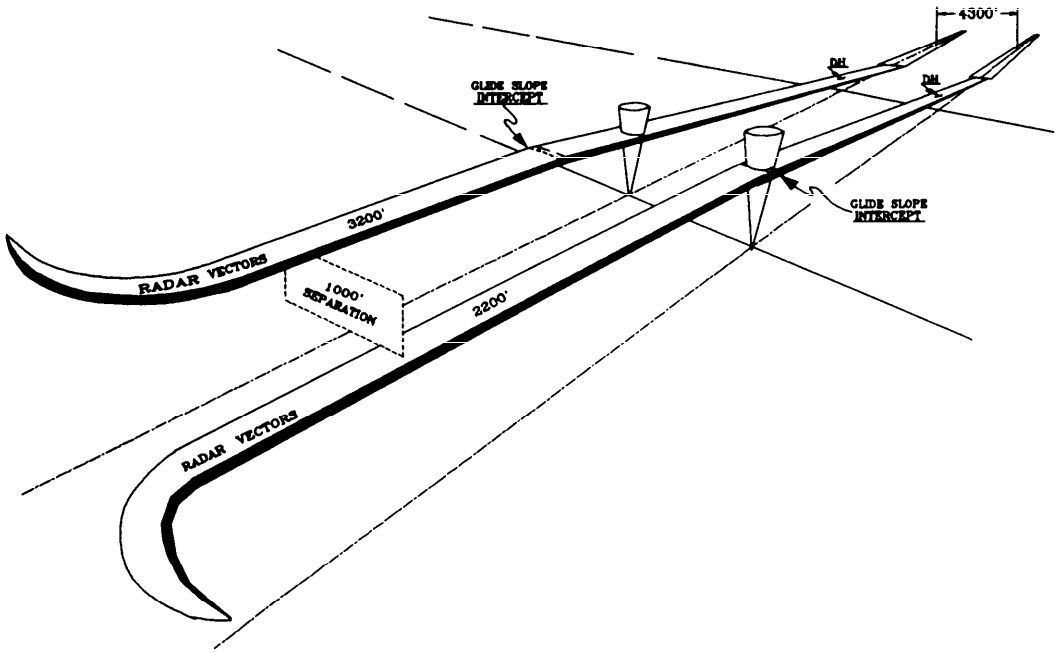


Figure 96A. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT, SIMULTANEOUS ILS. Par 994.

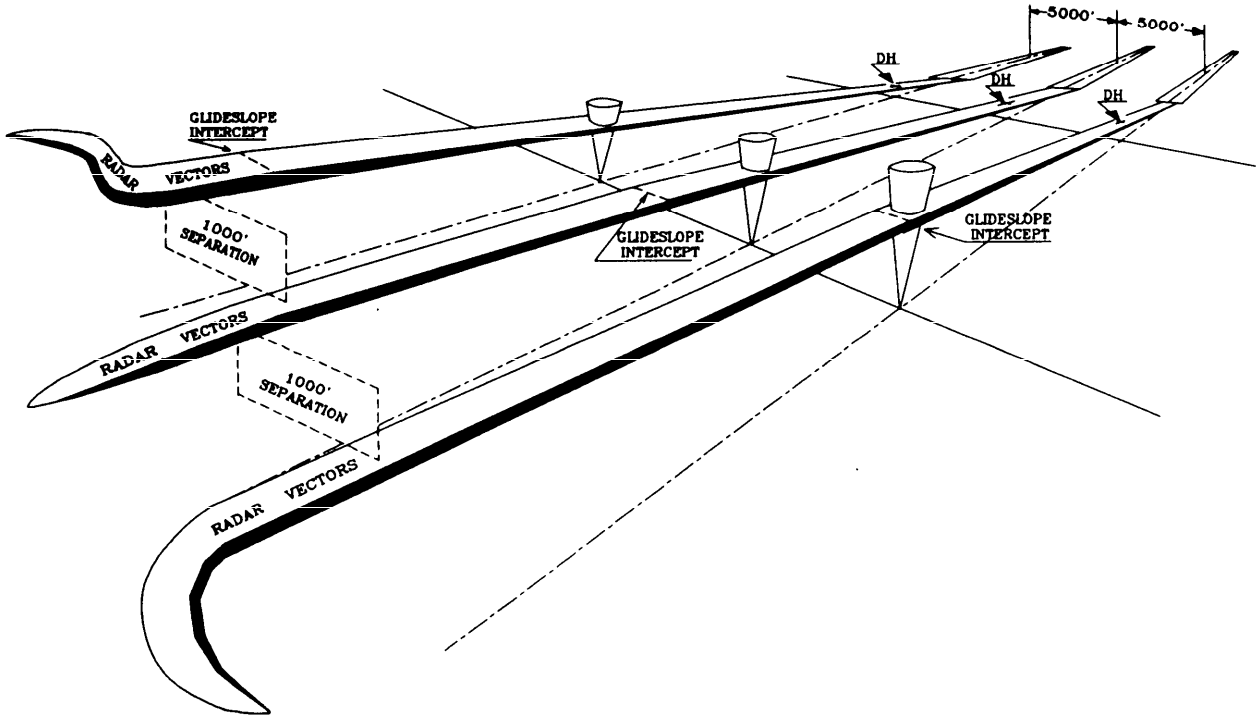


Figure 96B. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT FOR TRIPLE SIMULTANEOUS ILS. Par 994.

*

*

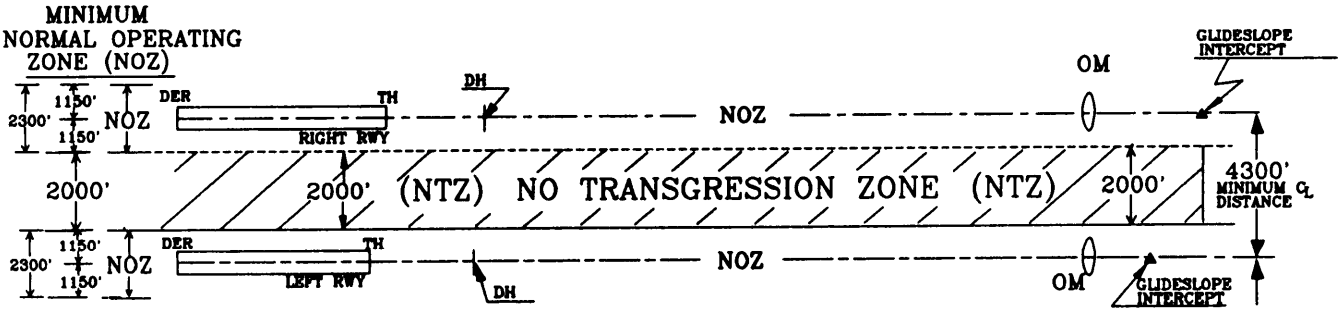


Figure 97A. DUAL SIMULTANEOUS ILS "NO TRANSGRESSION AND NORMAL OPERATING ZONES." Par 997.

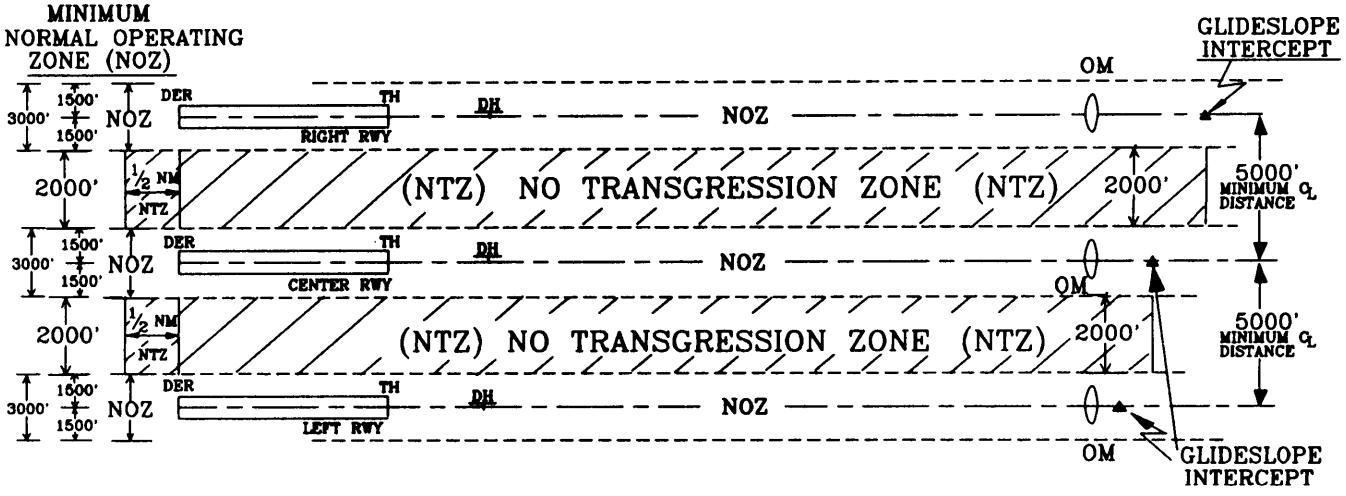


Figure 97B. TRIPLE SIMULTANEOUS ILS "NO TRANSGRESSION AND NORMAL OPERATING ZONES." Par 997.

*

CHAPTER 10. RADAR PROCEDURES

1000. GENERAL. This chapter applies to approach procedures based on the use of ground and airborne radar. Four types of radar procedures are covered:

a. Precision Approach Radar. A radar display of azimuth, range, and glide slope information, which provides for precision approaches to a runway.

b. Airport Surveillance Radar. A radar installation with a display of azimuth and range, which provides a radar vectoring capability for final approach to an airport.

c. Simultaneous Radar Procedures. A radar or radars which serve parallel runways and provide for simultaneous approaches to authorized minimums.

d. Airborne Radar. A radar installation in an aircraft with a display of azimuth and range which provides a capability for an instrument approach when used with appropriate terrain, reflector, or transponder return.

1001.–1009. RESERVED.

Section 1. Precision Approach Radar (PAR)

1010. SYSTEM COMPONENTS. A PAR system consists of a precision approach radar facility which meets the requirements for the operating agency.

1011. INOPERATIVE COMPONENTS. Failure of azimuth and range information renders the entire PAR inoperative. When the glide slope feature becomes inoperative, the PAR reverts to a non-precision approach system and non-precision minimums (paragraph 350) apply. In this case, obstacle clearance shall be as specified in paragraph 953 for localizer and LDA approaches.

1012. LOST COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES. The PAR procedure shall include instructions for the pilot to follow in the event of a loss of communications with the radar controller. Alternate lost communications procedures shall be established for use where multiple approaches are authorized.

1013. FEEDER ROUTES AND INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENTS. Navigational guidance for feeder routes and initial segments may be provided by surveillance radar, other navigation facilities, or a combination thereof. When radar is used as the primary means of navigation guidance, the criteria specified in Section 4 of this chapter shall apply. When other navigational facilities are used as the primary means of navigational guidance, the criteria specified in Chapter 2, Sections 2 and 3, shall apply as appropriate.

1014. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Navigational guidance in the intermediate segment may be provided by ASR, PAR, other navigation facilities, or combination thereof. Except as stated in this paragraph, the criteria for the intermediate segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 4. The intermediate segment begins at the point where the initial approach course intercepts an extension of the final approach course. This extension is the intermediate course. It extends along the inbound final approach course to the point of interception of the glide path. The minimum length of the intermediate segment depends on the angle at which the initial approach course intercepts the intermediate, and is specified in Table 20. The MAXIMUM angle of interception shall be 90°.

Table 20. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT ANGLE OF INTERCEPT VS. SEGMENT LENGTH.

Maximum Angle (Degrees)	Minimum Length (Miles)
15	1
30	2
45	3
60	4
75	5
90	6

NOTE: This table may be interpolated.

1015. DESCENT GRADIENT. Even though the minimum length of the intermediate segment may be less than that specified in Chapter 2, Section 4, intermediate descent criteria specified in paragraphs 242d and 243d shall be applied to at least 5 miles of flight track immediately prior to the glide slope intercept point.

1016. ALTITUDE SELECTION. Altitudes selected for the initial approach and intermediate approach segments provide required obstacle clearance as specified in Chapter 2. In addition, the selected altitudes shall NOT be less than the glide slope interception altitude. Where PAR and ILS serve the same runway, the glide slope interception altitude should be the same for both, and the point of interception should be the outer marker wherever possible.

1017.–1019. RESERVED.

Section 2. PAR Final Approach

1020. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach segment begins at the final approach fix (FAF). The FAF in PAR procedures is the point where interception of the glide slope occurs. The point of glide slope interception shall NOT be less than 3 miles from the landing threshold. When the glide slope is inoperative, the FAF is a point on the final approach course within 5 miles of the landing threshold but not less than the distance required by descent gradient criteria. The FAF for procedures without a glide slope should coincide with the FAF for PAR.

a. Alignment. The final approach course shall be aligned with the runway centerline.

b. Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance in the final approach segment consists of a final approach area and transitional surfaces (see paragraph 1022). The final approach area has the following dimensions:

(1) **Length.** The final approach area is 50,000 feet long, measured outward along the final approach course from a point beginning 200 feet outward from the runway threshold. Where operationally required by other procedural considerations due to existing obstacles, the length may be increased as shown in Figure 98. The final approach area used shall only be that portion of the area which is between the glide slope interception point and the point 200 feet from the runway threshold.

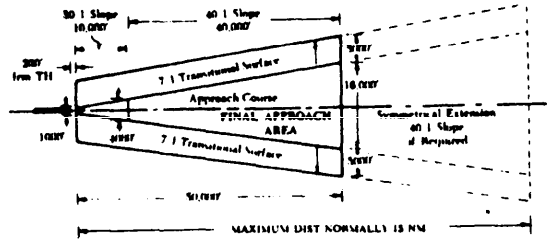


Figure 98. PAR FINAL APPROACH AREA. Par 1020.b.

(2) **Width.** The final approach area is centered on the extended runway centerline. The area has a total width of 1,000 feet at the point 200 feet from the threshold and expands uniformly to a total width of 16,000 feet at a point 50,000 feet from the point of beginning. This width further expands uniformly where a greater length is required as in paragraph 1020b(1). See Figure 98. The width either side of the centerline at a given distance "D" from the point of beginning can be found by using the formula 500 + .15D = 1/2W. For example, if D is 50,000 feet; 500 + .15 x 50,000 = 8,000, which is 1/2 the width. Therefore, the total width is 16,000 feet at the 50,000 foot point.

NOTE: ***Where glide slope interception occurs at a distance greater than 50,200 feet from the threshold, the final approach area and the final approach surface may be extended symmetrically to a maximum distance dictated by the usability of the glide slope.***

1021. FINAL APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE SURFACE. The final approach obstacle clearance surface is an inclined plane which originates at the runway threshold elevation 975 feet outward from the GPI, and which overlies the final approach area. The surface is divided into two sections, an inner 10,000-foot section and an outer 40,000-foot section. The slope of the surface changes at the 10,000-foot point. The exact gradient may differ according to the angle at which the glide slope is established. The 50:1 and 40:1 slopes which are applicable to the 2 1/2° glide slope shall be established unless other slopes must be used to

assure required clearance over existing obstacles. Table 21 specifies the slopes which provide required obstacle clearance for several glide slope angles. See also paragraph 1025.

Table 21. GS ANGLE VS. FINAL APPROACH SURFACE SLOPE RATIOS.

GS Angle (Degrees)	Approximate Slope of Inner Section	Approximate Slope of Outer Section
2	96.5:1	61.5:1
2 1/4	66:1	48.5:1
2 1/2	50:1	40:1
2 3/4	40.5:1	34:1
3	34:1	29.5:1

NOTE: See graph, Appendix 2, Figure 132 for interpolation.

1022. TRANSITIONAL SURFACES. Transitional surfaces for PAR are inclined planes with a slope of 7:1 which extend outward and upward from the edges of the final approach area, starting at the height of the applicable final approach surface and extending for a lateral distance of 5,000 feet at right angles to the runway centerline. See Figure 98.

1023. DELETED.

1024. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE OUTSIDE THE DH POINT. No obstacle shall penetrate the applicable final approach obstacle clearance surface specified in paragraph 1021 or the transitional surfaces specified in paragraph 1022. The required obstacle clearance is based on the difference between the glide slope angle and the appropriate final approach surface specified in paragraph 1021. To determine the minimum required obstacle clearance in feet at any distance "D" from the GPI the following formula may be used:

For "D" less than 10,975 feet, the minimum required clearance is .02366 D + 20 feet. See also paragraph 1025.

For "D" 10,975 feet or over, the minimum required clearance is .01866 D + 75 feet.

NOTE: *The clearance provided by the formula is a MINIMUM requirement. Obstacle clearance greater than 500 feet need not be applied unless required in the interest of safety due to such factors as precipitous terrain or PAR installation peculiarities. The Nomograph in Figure 99 provides a simple method of determining the minimum obstacle clearance requirements. Also included in Figure 99 is an example of a method for determining the required glide slope angle. For additional obstacle limitations see paragraph 1025.*

1025. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE INSIDE THE DH POINT. The lowest landing minimums as specified in paragraph 350 may be approved when no obstacles penetrate the final approach obstacle clearance surface applicable to the commissioned glide slope angle, beginning 200 feet outward from the threshold and at least 975 feet from the GPI, and extending to the DH point. When penetration of this surface exists, consideration should be given to the removal of the obstacle or relocation of the landing threshold. See Figure 131.

1026. GLIDE SLOPE. In addition to the required obstacle clearance, the following shall apply to the selection of the glide slope angle and antenna location.

a. Glide Slope Angle. The optimum glide slope angle is 2 1/2°. Angles less than 2° or more than 3° shall not be established without the authorization of the approving authority. Where PAR serves a runway that is also served by ILS and/or VASI, the PAR, ILS, and VASI glide slope angles and RPI shall coincide. The PAR glide slope angle shall be within 0.20° of the ILS/VASI glide slope angle and the RPI shall be within plus or minus 50 feet of the ILS/RPI and/or VASI runway reference point (RRP).

b. Glide Slope Threshold Crossing Height. The optimum threshold crossing height is 50 feet. The MAXIMUM height is 60 feet. A height as low as 32 feet for military airports may be used at locations where special considerations of the glide path angle and antenna location are required. Where the glide slope threshold crossing height exceeds 60 feet, consideration shall be given to the relocation of the landing threshold to insure effective placement of the approach light system. See Appendix 2 for a method of computing the threshold crossing height.

1027. RELOCATION OF GLIDE SLOPE. Where minimum obstacle clearance cannot be obtained with a 3° glide slope angle, and sufficient length of runway is available, the glide slope may be moved the required distance down the runway to obtain the minimum obstacle clearance in the final approach area. Where the glide slope threshold crossing height exceeds 60 feet, consideration should be given to relocating the landing threshold to insure effective placement of the approach light system. The minimum distance between the GPI and the runway threshold is 775 feet. (No minimum GPI distance need be applied to military locations provided minimum ROC and TCH standards are met).

1028. DECISION HEIGHT (DH)

a. Minimum Decision Height. For PAR the decision height above the touchdown zone shall be no lower than 100 feet for military procedures and 200 feet for civil procedures.

b. Adjustment of Decision Height.

(1) **Primary Final Approach Surface.** When minimum obstacle clearance cannot be obtained with a 3° glide slope angle, and the approving authority will not approve an angle in excess of 3°, and the runway length does not permit a compensating adjustment, the decision height shall be increased accordingly. To establish the minimum decision height which can be authorized, extend a line horizontally outward from the top of each penetrating obstacle, parallel with the runway centerline, to a point of interception with the established final approach obstacle clearance surface. From the controlling point, extend a line vertically to a point of interception with the glide slope. The height at the point of intersection with the glide slope is the minimum decision height, except that application of this method need not require a decision height that is more than 250 feet above the obstacle. This decision height shall not be less than 250 feet. See Figure 79.

(2) **Transitional Surface.** Where minimum obstacle clearances cannot be met in the transitional surfaces, and when deemed necessary, consideration will be given to an adjustment in the decision height commensurate with the degree of interference presented by the particular obstacle or obstacles. See Figure 79.

1029. RESERVED.

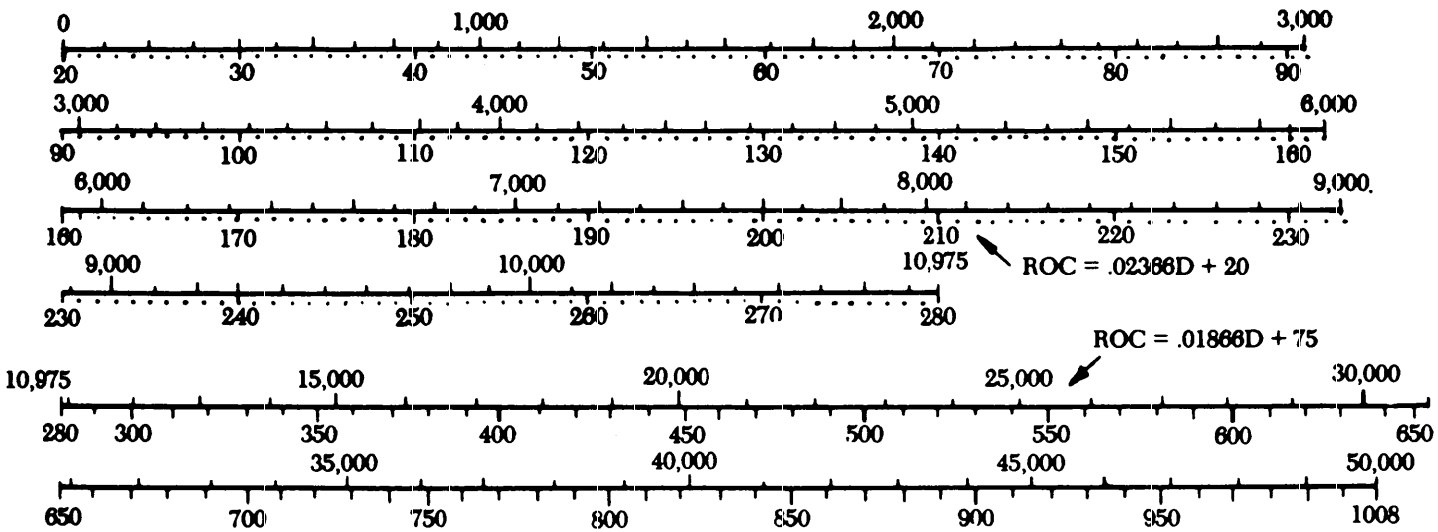
Section 3. PAR Missed Approach

1030. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. The missed approach segment begins at the missed approach point and ends at an appropriate point or fix where initial approach or en route obstacle clearance is provided. Missed approach procedures shall be based on positive course guidance where possible.

1031. MISSED APPROACH POINT (MAP). The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course where the height of the glide slope is equal to the authorized decision height.

1032. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH. The straight missed approach area (maximum of 15° turn from final approach course) starts at the MAP. The length of the area is 15 miles measured along the missed approach course. The area has a width equal to that of the final approach area at the missed approach point and a width equal to that of the initial approach area at a point 15 miles from the MAP. The missed approach area is divided into 2 sections.

* a. *Section 1* starts at the MAP and is longitudinally centered on the missed approach course. It has the same width at the MAP as the final approach area. *



The lowest glide slope that will provide the required obstacle clearance (ROC) over a critical obstacle is found by the formula:

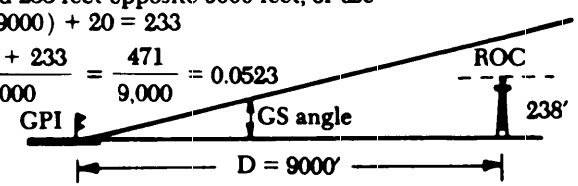
$$\text{Tan of GS angle} = \frac{\text{Obstacle height + ROC}}{\text{GPI to obstacle Distance}}$$

EXAMPLE:

Controlling obstacle is 238 feet above runway elevation and 9000 feet from the GPI. Find the minimum GS angle

From the nomograph find 233 feet opposite 9000 feet, or use the formula (0.02366 × 9000) + 20 = 233

$$\text{Tan of GS angle} = \frac{238 + 233}{9000} = \frac{471}{9,000} = 0.0523$$



Arc Tan 0.0523 = 3.0 degrees

NOTE: A method with an example of criteria application (Paragraphs 1021 through 1025) is included in Appendix 2.

Figure 99. PAR OBSTACLE CLEARANCE NOMOGRAPH. Par 1024

b. Section 2 starts at the end of Section 1 and is centered on a continuation of the Section 1 course. The width increases uniformly from 1 mile at the beginning to 12 miles at a point 13.5 miles from the beginning. A secondary area for reduction of obstacle clearance is identified within Section 2. The secondary area is zero miles wide at the beginning and increases uniformly to 2 miles wide at the end of Section 2. Positive course guidance is required to reduce obstacle clearance in the secondary area. See Figure 100.

1033. TURNING MISSED APPROACH. Where turns of more than 15 degrees are required in a missed approach procedure, they shall begin at an altitude which is at least 400 feet above the elevation of the touchdown zone. Such turns are assumed to begin at the point where Section 2 begins. The flight track and obstacle clearance radii used shall be as specified in Table 5, paragraph 275. To determine the length of Section 1:

a. Add 400 feet to touchdown zone elevation.

b. Round to next higher 100 foot increment.

c. Subtract the decision height value from the result of steps a & b.

d. Divide the result by 152 to obtain the required length of Section 1 in nautical miles.

e. Minimum length of Section 1 shall be 1.5 NM.

The width at the end of Section 1 is determined by symmetrically extending Section 1 to the required

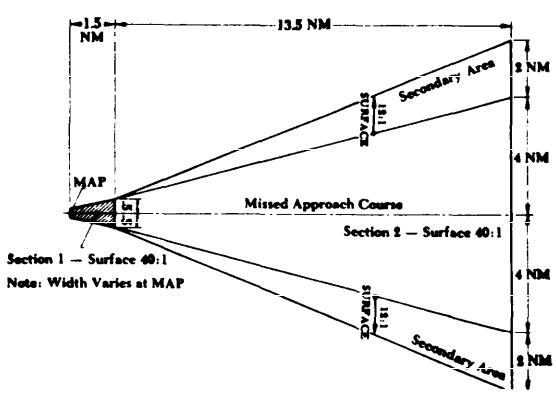


Figure 100. PAR STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par 1032.b.

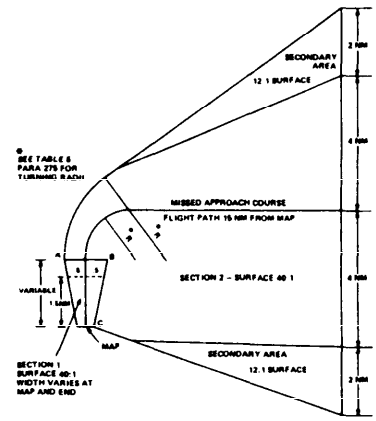


Figure 101. PAR TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par 1033

length. The inner boundary of Section 2 shall begin at the edge of Section 1 opposite the MAP. The outer and inner boundary lines shall flare to the width of the initial approach area at 15 NM from the MAP measured along the flight path. Secondary areas for reduction of obstacle clearance are identified within Section 2. The secondary areas begin after completion of the turn. They are zero miles wide at the point of beginning and increase uniformly to 2 miles wide at the end of Section 2. Positive course guidance is required to reduce obstacle clearance in the secondary areas. See Figure 101.

1034. MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE.

a. Straight Missed Approach Area. No obstacle in Section 1 or Section 2 may penetrate a 40:1 surface which originates at the MAP at the height of the final approach surface, but not more than 250 feet below the DH, and which overlies the entire missed approach area.

b. Turning Missed Approach Area. Section 1 obstacle clearance is the same as that for straight missed approaches. To determine the obstacle clearance requirements in Section 2, the dividing line between Section 1 and 2 is identified as "A-B-C". The height of the missed approach surface over any obstacle in Section 2 is determined by measuring the distance from the obstacle to the nearest point on line A-B-C, and computing the height according to the 40:1 ratio, starting at the height of the missed approach surface at the end of Section 1.

c. Secondary Areas. Where secondary areas are considered, no obstacle may penetrate a 12:1 surface which slopes outward and upward from the missed approach surface.

d. Discontinuance. Where the 40:1 surface reaches a height of 1000 feet below the missed approach altitude (Paragraph 270) further application of the surface is not required.

1035. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. If a straight climb to an altitude greater than 400 feet is necessary prior to commencing a missed approach turn, a combination straight and turning missed approach area must be constructed. The straight portion of this missed approach area is divided into Sections 1 and 1A. The portion in which the turn is made is Section 2.

a. Straight Portion. Sections 1 and 1A correspond respectively to Sections 1 and 2 of the normal straight missed approach area and are constructed as specified in Paragraph 1032 except that Section 1A has no secondary areas. Obstacle clearance is provided as specified in Paragraph 1034.b. The length of Section 1A is determined as shown in Figure 102 and relates to the need to climb to a specified altitude prior to commencing the turn. The line A′-B′ marks the end of Section 1A. Point C′ is 9000 feet from the end of Section 1A (see Figure 102).

b. Turning Portion. Section 2 is constructed as specified in Paragraph 1033 except that it begins at the end of Section 1A instead of the end of Section 1. To determine the height which must be attained before commencing the missed approach turn, first identify the controlling obstacle on the side of Section 1A to which the turn is to be made. Then measure the distance from this obstacle to the nearest edge of the Section 1A area. Using this distance as illustrated in Figure 102 determine the height of the 40:1 slope at the edge of Section 1A. This height plus 250 feet (rounded off to the next higher 20 foot increment) is the height at which the turn should be started. Obstacle clearance requirements in Section 2 are the same as those specified in Paragraph 1034.b except that Section 2 is expanded to start at Point C if no fix exists at the end of Section 1A or if no course guidance is provided in Section 2 (see Figure 102).

1036. - 1039. RESERVED.

Section 4. Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR)

1040. GENERAL. This section applies to approach procedures based on the use of ASR. ASR may be used to provide primary navigation guidance within the operational coverage of the radar. ASR approaches may be established where the coverage and alignment tolerances specified in the U.S. Standard Flight Inspection Manual can be met and the airport is not more than 20 miles from the radar antenna.

1041. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The initial approach segment begins at the position the aircraft is in when radar contact is established, and ends at the intermediate fix. Radar guidance may be used in pre-established patterns or may be provided by diverse vectors issued by the radar controller.

a. Radar Patterns. Radar patterns shall begin at an established fix or point which permits positive radar identification.

(1) Alignment. The initial approach course, or courses, shall be selected to coincide with aircraft maneuvering capability and to satisfy air traffic flow requirements. The angle at which the initial approach course joins the intermediate course shall not exceed 90 degrees.

(2) Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance is 3 miles (5 miles at distances greater than 40 miles from the radar antenna) either side of the designated pattern course. There is no secondary area. The area has no specific maximum or minimum length. However, the initial approach must be long enough to permit the altitude loss required by the procedure at the authorized descent gradient.

NOTE: Air Route Surveillance Radar (ARSR) may be used to provide course guidance up to and including the intermediate fix or point.

(3) Obstacle Clearance. A minimum of 1000 feet of clearance shall be provided over all obstacles in the initial approach area. Clearance over a prominent obstacle which is displayed as a permanent echo on the radar scope may be discontinued after the aircraft has been observed to pass the obstacle. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be made as specified in Paragraph 323. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance criteria specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See Paragraph 1043.

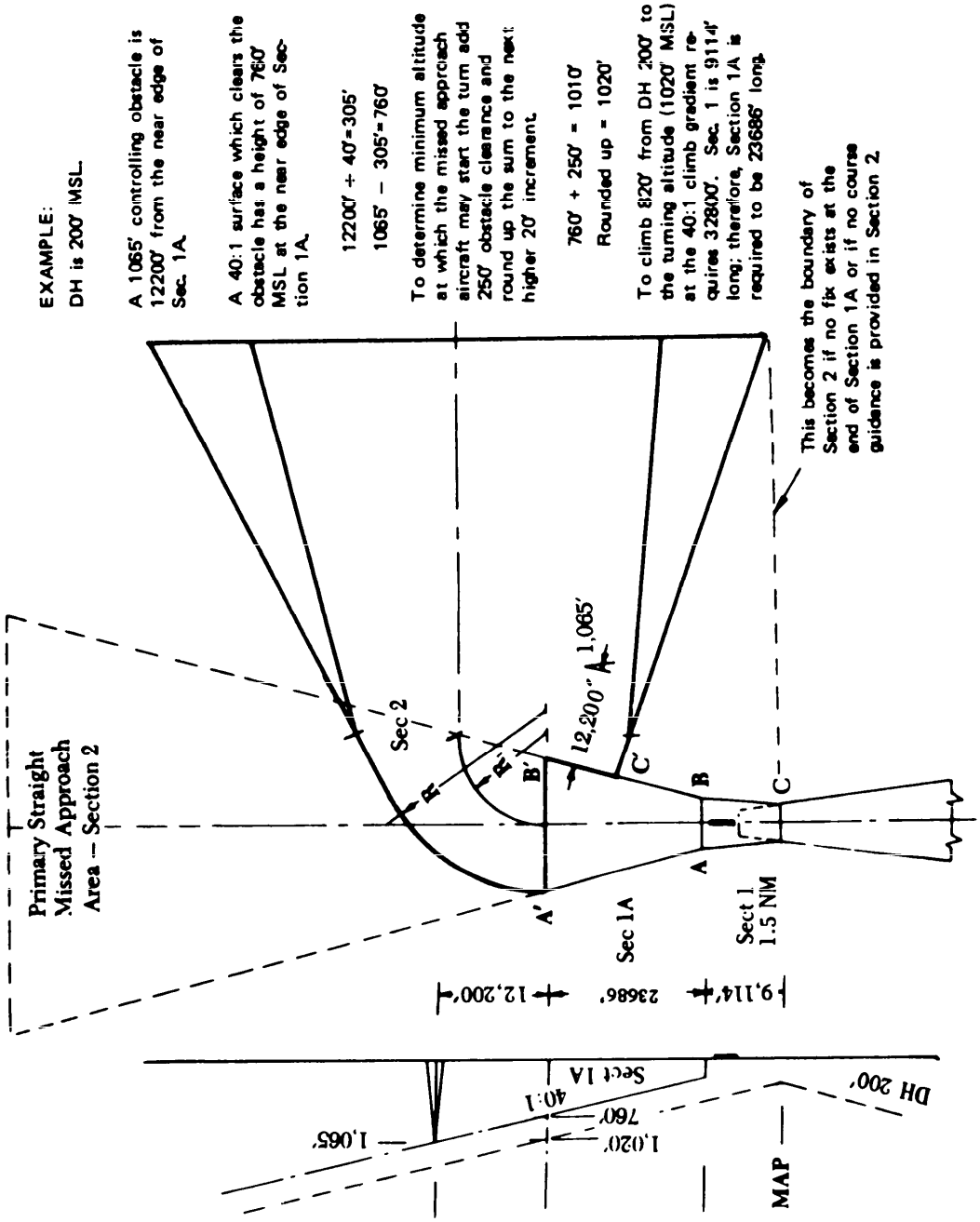


Figure 102. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. Par 1035.

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1979 O—305-993

after the aircraft has been observed to pass the obstacle. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be made as specified in Paragraph 323. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance criteria specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See Paragraph 1043.

(4) Descent Gradients. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the initial approach is 250 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 500 feet per mile. The OPTIMUM descent gradient for high altitude penetrations is 800 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 1000 feet per mile.

b. Diverse Vectors. Navigation guidance of an aircraft by diverse vectors issued by the radar controller may commence upon positive radar identification.

(1) Alignment. Diverse vectors issued by the controller are selected to coincide with aircraft maneuvering capability and to satisfy air traffic flow requirements.

(2) Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance shall be the entire area within the operational coverage of the radar. This area may be sub-divided to gain relief from obstacles which are clear of the area in which flight is to be conducted. There is no prescribed limit on the size, shape, or orientation of these sub-divisions; however, they shall be designed to emphasize simplicity and safety in radar air traffic control applications.

(3) Obstacle Clearance. A minimum of 1000 feet of clearance shall be provided over all obstacles within the operational coverage of the radar or within the appropriate subdivision where subdivisions have been established. Altitudes established for use shall also provide 1000 feet of clearance over all obstacles outside of the subdivision within 3 miles of the subdivision boundary (5 miles at distances greater than 40 miles from the antenna). Clearance over a prominent obstacle which is displayed as a permanent echo on the radar scope may be discontinued after the aircraft has been observed to pass the obstacle. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be made as specified in Paragraph 323. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance criteria specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See Paragraph 1043.

(4) Descent Gradient. The OPTIMUM descent gradient in the initial approach is 250 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 500 feet per mile. The OPTIMUM descent gradient for high altitude penetrations is 800 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the MAXIMUM permissible gradient is 1000 feet per mile.

1042. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. The intermediate segment begins at the radar fix where the initial approach course intersects an extension of the final approach course. This extension is the intermediate course, and the point of intersection is the intermediate fix. The intermediate segment extends along the intermediate course inbound to the point where final approach descent commences. This point is the final approach fix.

a. Alignment. The intermediate course is an extension of the final approach course.

b. Area. The width of the intermediate segment is 3 miles either side of the course at the intermediate fix. It tapers to the width of the final approach area at the final approach fix. There are no secondary areas. The length of the intermediate segment shall not exceed 15 miles. The minimum length of the intermediate segment depends on the angle at which the initial approach course intercepts the intermediate course, and is specified in the table below. The MAXIMUM angle of interception shall be 90 degrees.

c. Obstacle Clearance. A minimum of 500 feet of clearance shall be provided over all obstacles in

Table 22. INTERCEPTION ANGLE VS. LENGTH OF INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT.

Maximum Angle of Interception (Degrees)	Minimum Length of Segment (Miles)
15	1
30	2
45	3
60	4
75	5
90	6

NOTE: This Table may be interpolated. See Figure 75.

the intermediate area. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be made as specified in Paragraph 323. Clearance over a prominent obstacle which is displayed as a permanent echo on the radar scope may be discontinued after the aircraft has been observed to pass the obstacle. The altitudes selected by the application of the obstacle clearance criteria specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet. See Paragraph 1043.

d. Descent Gradient. Because the intermediate segment is used to prepare the aircraft speed and configuration for entry into the final approach segment, the descent gradient should be as flat as possible. The OPTIMUM descent gradient should not exceed 150 feet per mile. The MAXIMUM descent gradient is 300 feet per mile. When the length of the intermediate segment is less than specified in Paragraph 242, intermediate descent criteria shall be applied to at least 5 miles of flight track immediately prior to the FAF.

1043. ALTITUDE SELECTION. Altitudes selected for the initial and intermediate approach segments shall be established in 100 foot increments. For example, 1149 feet may become 1100 feet; and 1150 feet shall become 1200 feet.

1044. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach begins at the final approach fix, which is a radar fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last.

a. Alignment. The final approach course shall be aligned on the extended runway centerline for straight-in approach and to the center of the airport for circling approach. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course for circling may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing surface.

b. Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance begins at the final approach fix and ends at the runway or missed approach point, whichever is encountered last, and is centered on the final approach course. The minimum length of the final approach area shall be 3 miles. The maximum length should not exceed 6 miles. See Figure 103. The width of the primary area (Wp) is based on a formula which provides 2 miles of width at the radar antenna, increasing to 6 miles of width at a distance (D) of 20 miles from the radar antenna. The formula is $1/2Wp = 0.1D + 1$ mile. There are no secondary areas. See Figure 104.

c. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Straight-In. A minimum of 250 feet of clearance shall be provided over all obstacles in the final approach area, except that where a prominent obstacle which is displayed as a permanent echo on the radar scopes exists it need not be considered for obstacle clearance after the aircraft is observed to have passed the obstacle. Allowance for precipitous terrain as specified in Paragraph 323 should be made.

(2) Circling. In addition to the minimum requirements specified in Paragraph 1044.c.(1) obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

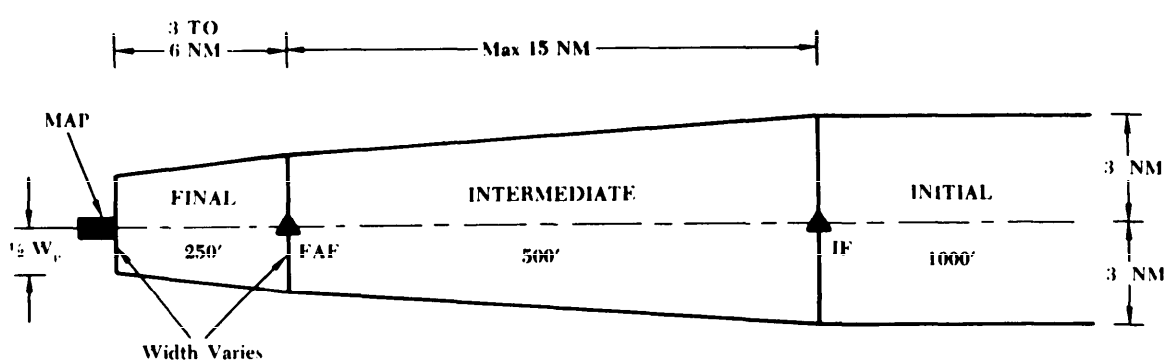
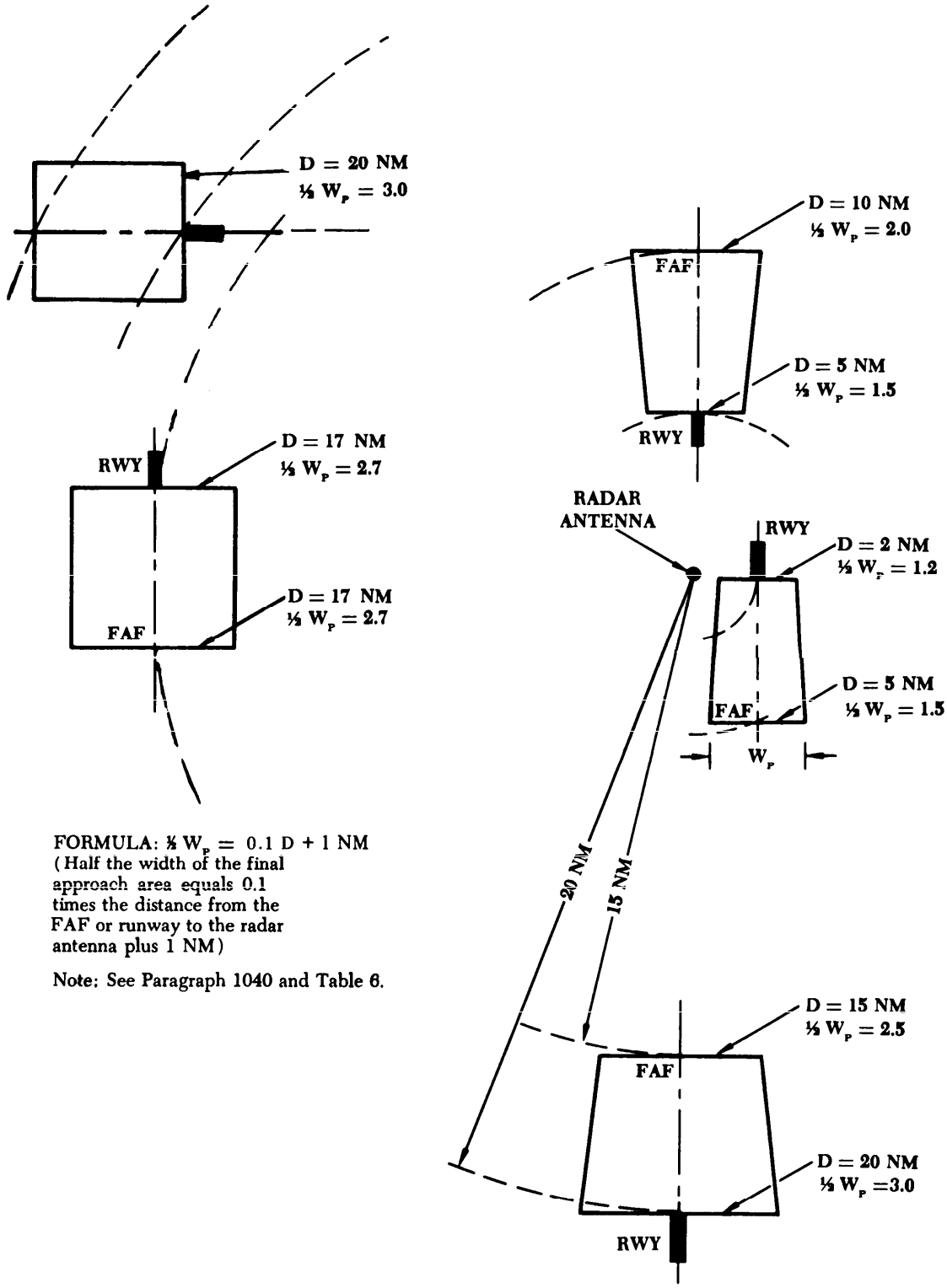


Figure 103. TYPICAL ASR APPROACH SEGMENTS. Par 1044.b.



FORMULA: $\frac{1}{2} W_P = 0.1\ D + 1$ NM
(Half the width of the final approach area equals 0.1 times the distance from the FAF or runway to the radar antenna plus 1 NM)

Note: See Paragraph 1040 and Table 6.

Figure 104. EXAMPLES OF ASR FINAL APPROACH AREA DIMENSIONS. Par 1044.b.

1044.d. DESCENT GRADIENT. The OPTIMUM descent gradient is 300 feet per mile. The MAXIMUM descent gradient is 400 feet per mile.

(1) Straight-In Approach. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the runway threshold and the difference between the altitude over the FAF and TDZ elevation.

(2) Circling Approach. The descent gradient shall be computed using the distance from the FAF to the MAP and the difference between the altitude over the FAF and MDA.

1045. DEVIATION FROM ESTABLISHED RADAR PATTERNS. Whenever it is necessary to deviate from established radar patterns, obstacle clearance prescribed in Paragraph 1041.b. for diverse vectors shall be provided by approved radar vectoring charts.

1046. RADAR MONITOR. The use of ASR to monitor aircraft flying a published procedure based on another navigation system is encouraged to increase accuracy and expedite air traffic flow. However, no reduction in obstacle clearance may be made as a result of such monitoring. This does not preclude establishment of radar fixes in such published procedures for the purpose of permitting descent to a lower altitude.

1047. LOST COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES. The ASR procedure shall include instructions for the pilot to follow in the event of loss of communications with the radar controller. Alternate lost communication procedures shall be established for use where multiple approaches are authorized.

1048. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. The criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. The missed approach point is on the final approach course not farther from the final approach fix than the runway threshold (first usable portion of the landing area for circling approach). The missed approach surface shall commence over the MAP at the required height. See Paragraph 274.

1049. RESERVED.

Section 5. Simultaneous PAR Procedures

1050. GENERAL. Where facilities and equipment are available to support the requirement, PAR approach procedures to parallel runways may be established. The criteria specified in Chapter 9, Section 9, for simultaneous ILS procedures shall be used as a guideline in developing such procedures.

1051. - 1059. RESERVED.

Section 6. Airborne Radar Procedures

1060. GENERAL. Airborne radar procedures will be developed and published for military use at a later date.

1061. - 1099. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 11. HELICOPTER PROCEDURES

Section 1. Administrative

1100. GENERAL. This chapter contains criteria for application to "helicopter only" procedures. These criteria are based on the premise that helicopters are approach Category A aircraft with special maneuvering characteristics. The intent, therefore, is to provide relief from those portions of other TERPS chapters which are more restrictive than the criteria specified herein. However, any criteria contained elsewhere in other chapters of this document may be applied to helicopter only procedures when an operational advantage may be gained.

a. Identification of Inapplicable Criteria. Criteria contained elsewhere in this document normally apply to helicopter procedures. Where this chapter changes such criteria, the changed material is identified. Circling approach and high altitude penetration criteria do not apply to helicopter procedures.

b. Use of Existing Facilities. Helicopter only procedures based on existing facilities may be developed using criteria contained in this chapter.

1101. TERMINOLOGY. The following terms are peculiar to helicopter procedures and are defined as follows:

a. HAL. Height above landing area elevation.

b. HAS Height Above the Surface. The height of the MDA above the highest terrain/surface within a 5,200-foot radius of the MAP in Point in Space procedures.

c. Landing Area as used in helicopter operations refers to the portion of the heliport or airport runway used, or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of helicopters.

d. Landing Area Boundary (LAB). The beginning of the landing area of the heliport or runway.

e. Point in Space Approach is an instrument approach procedure to a point in space, identified as a missed approach point, which is not associated with a specific landing area within 2,600 feet of the MAP.

f. Touchdown zone as used in helicopter procedures is identical to the landing area.

1102. DELETED.

1103. TYPE OF PROCEDURE. HELICOPTER ONLY PROCEDURES are designed to meet low altitude straight-in requirements ONLY.

1104. FACILITIES FOR WHICH CRITERIA ARE NOT PROVIDED. This chapter does not include criteria for procedures predicated on VHF/UHF DF, area navigation (RNAV), airborne radar approach (ARA), or microwave landing system (MLS). Procedures utilizing VHF/UHF DF may be developed in accordance with the appropriate chapters of this documents. Criteria for RNAV, ARA, and MLS with high glide path angle or selectable glide path angle capability will be developed at a later date.

1105. PROCEDURE IDENTIFICATION. Helicopter only procedures shall bear an identification which includes the term "COPTER," the type of facility providing final approach course guidance, and a numerical identification of the final approach course, e.g., COPTER VOR 090, COPTER NDB 270, COPTER PAR 327, COPTER ASR 327, etc. If the procedure includes an arc final approach, the word "ARC" will be used, and will be followed by a sequential number, e.g., COPTER VORTAC ARC 1, COPTER VOR/DME ARC 2, COPTER TACAN ARC 3, etc.

NOTE: *Where separate procedures at the same location use the same type of facility and same final approach course such procedures will be differentiated by adding an alphabetical suffix.*

Section 2. General Criteria

1106. APPLICATION. These criteria are based on the unique maneuvering capability of the helicopter at airspeeds not exceeding 90 knots.

1107. POINT IN SPACE APPROACH. Where the center of the landing area is not within 2,600 feet of the MAP, an approach procedure to a point in space may be developed using any of the facilities for which criteria are provided in this chapter. In such procedures the point in space and the missed approach point are identical and upon arrival at this point, helicopters must proceed under visual flight rules (or special VFR in control zone as applicable) to a landing area or conduct the specified missed approach procedure. The published procedure shall be noted to this effect and also should identify available landing areas in the vicinity by noting the course and distance from the MAP to each selected landing area. Point in space approach procedures will not contain alternate minima.

1108. APPROACH CATEGORIES. When helicopters use instrument flight procedures designed for fixed wing aircraft, approach Category "A" approach minima shall apply regardless of helicopter weight.

1109. PROCEDURE CONSTRUCTION. Paragraph 214 applies except for the reference to circling approach.

1110. DESCENT GRADIENT. The descent gradient criteria specified in other chapters of this document do not apply. The optimum descent gradient in *all* segments of helicopter approach procedures is 400 feet per mile. Where a higher descent gradient is necessary, the recommended maximum is 600 feet per mile. However, where an operational requirement exists, a gradient of as much as 800 feet per mile may be authorized, provided the gradient used is depicted on approach charts. See special procedure turn criteria in paragraph 1112.

1111. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENTS BASED ON STRAIGHT COURSES AND ARCS WITH POSITIVE COURSE GUIDANCE. Paragraph 232 is changed as follows:

a. Alignment.

(1) **Courses.** The 2-mile lead radial specified in paragraph 232a(1) is reduced to 1 mile. See Figure 3.

(2) **Arcs.** The minimum arc radius specified in paragraph 232a(2) is reduced to 4 miles. The 2-mile lead radial may be reduced to 1 mile. See Figure 10.

1112. INITIAL APPROACH BASED ON PROCEDURE TURN. Paragraph 234 applies except for all of subparagraph d and the number 300 in subparagraph e(1) which is changed to 600. Since helicopters operate at approach Category A speeds the 5-mile procedure turn will normally be used. However, the larger 10-and 15-mile areas may be used if considered necessary.

a. Descent Gradient. Because the actual length of the track will vary with environmental conditions and pilot technique, it is not practical to specify a descent gradient solely in feet per mile for the procedure turn. Instead, the descent gradient is controlled by requiring the procedure turn completion altitude to be as close as possible to the final approach fix altitude. The difference between the procedure turn completion altitude and the altitude over the final approach fix shall not be greater than those shown in Table 23.

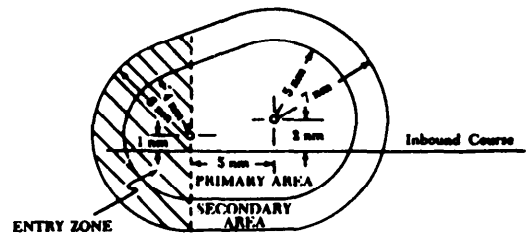


Figure 105. HELICOPTER PROCEDURE TURN AREA. Par 1112.

Table 23. PROCEDURE TURN COMPLETION ALTITUDE DIFFERENCE. Par 1112.

Type Procedure Turn	Altitude Difference
15 mile PT from FAF	Within 6000 ft of alt over FAF
10 mile PT from FAF	Within 4000 ft of alt over FAF
5 mile PT from FAF	Within 2000 ft of alt over FAF
15 mile PT, no FAF	Not Authorized
10 mile PT, no FAF	Within 4000 ft of MDA on Final
5 mile PT, no FAF	Within 2000 ft of MDA on Final

1113. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT BASED ON STRAIGHT COURSES. Paragraph 242 is changed as follows:

a. Alignment. The provisions of paragraph 242a apply with the exception that the intermediate course shall not differ from the final approach course by more than 60 degrees.

b. Area.

(1) **Length.** The OPTIMUM length of the intermediate approach segment is 2 miles. The minimum length is 1 mile and the recommended maximum is 5 miles. A distance greater than 5 miles should not be used unless an operational requirement justifies the greater distance. When the angle at which the initial approach course joins the intermediate course exceeds 30 degrees (see figure 3), the MINIMUM length of the intermediate course is as shown in table 24.

1114. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT BASED ON AN ARC. Paragraph 243 is changed as follows: Arcs with a radius of less than 4 miles or more than 30 miles from the navigation facility shall not be used.

a. Area.

(1) **Length.** The OPTIMUM length of the intermediate approach segment is 2 miles. The minimum length is 1 mile and the recommended maximum is 5 miles. A distance greater than 5 miles should not be used unless an operational requirement justifies the greater distance. When the angle at which the initial approach course joins the intermediate course exceeds 30 degrees (see figure 3), the MINIMUM length of the intermediate course is as shown in table 24.

Table 24. MINIMUM INTERMEDIATE COURSE LENGTH (Not applicable to PAR and ILS)

ANGLE (degrees)	MINIMUM LENGTH (miles)
30	1.0
60	2.0
90	3.0
120	4.0

Note: This table may be interpolated.

1115. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT WITHIN A PROCEDURE TURN SEGMENT. Paragraph 244b is changed as follows: The normal procedure turn distance is 5 miles from the fix or from the facility. This produces an intermediate segment 5 miles long. The portion of the intermediate segment considered for obstacle clearance will always have the same length as the procedure turn distance. A distance greater than 5 miles should not be used unless an operational requirement justifies the greater distance. See figure 13, paragraph 244.

1116. FINAL APPROACH. Paragraph 250 applies except that the word runway is understood to include landing area and the reference to circling approach does not apply. The final approach course in precision approach procedures shall be aligned as indicated in paragraphs 1152 and 1159. For nonprecision procedures final approach course alignment shall be as follows:

a. Approaches to a Landing Area. The final approach course should be aligned so as to pass through the landing area. Where an operational advantage can be achieved, a final approach course which does not pass through the landing area may be established, provided such a course lies within 2600 feet of the center of the landing area at the MAP.

b. Point-in-Space Approaches. The final approach course should be aligned to provide for the most effective operational use of the procedure consistent with safety.

1117. MISSED APPROACH POINT. Paragraph 272 is changed to state that the specified distance may not be more than the distance from the final approach fix to a point not more than 2600 feet from the center of the landing area. The MAP may be located more than 2600 feet from the landing area, provided the minimum visibility agrees with the increased distance; e.g., MAP 3800 feet from landing area, basic visibility is 3/4 mile. See figure 108. For point-in-space approaches the MAP is on the final approach course at the end of the final approach area.

1118. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AREA. Paragraph 273 applies with the exception that the length of the primary and secondary missed approach area is

reduced from 15 miles to 7.5 miles and will have the width of the appropriate airway at termination.

1119. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Paragraph 274 applies except that "TDZ or airport elevation" is changed to "landing area elevation;" the slope of the missed approach surface is changed from 40:1 to 20:1; and the secondary area slope is changed from 12:1 to 4:1.

1120. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. The provisions of paragraph 275 apply with the exception that when applying missed approach criteria shown in figures 19 through 24, and table 5, change all flight path lengths to 7.5 miles, missed approach surface slope to 20:1, secondary slopes to 4:1, obstacle clearance radius (R) to 1.3 miles, and flight path radius (R_1) to 4000 feet (.66 miles). The area width will expand uniformly to the appropriate airway width.

1121. TURNING MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. All missed approach areas described in paragraph 276 and depicted in figures 25 and 26 will be adjusted for helicopter operation using the values shown in paragraph 1120. The area width will expand uniformly to the appropriate airway width.

1122. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH. Paragraph 277 applies except that the values shown in paragraph 1120 shall be used, and point B is relocated to a position abeam the MAP. The area width will expand uniformly to the appropriate airway width. See figure 106.

1123. HOLDING ALIGNMENT. The provisions of paragraph 291 apply with the exception when the final approach fix is a facility, the inbound holding course shall not differ from the final approach course by more than 90 degrees.

1124. HOLDING AREA. Paragraph 292 applies except that the minimum size pattern is No.1.

Section 3. Takeoff and Landing Minimums

1125. APPLICATION. The minimums specified in this section apply to Helicopter Only procedures.

1126. ALTITUDES. Chapter 3, section 2, is changed as follows:

a. In paragraph 320 "runway environment" is understood also to mean "landing area environment."

b. In paragraph 321 reference to 40:1 is changed to 20:1.

c. Paragraph 322 does not apply.

d. Paragraphs 324, 938 and 1028 apply except that a DH of 100 feet may be approved without approach lights; the tables in paragraph 350 do not apply, and table 29 in paragraph 1167 governs the establishment of the DH.

1127. VISIBILITY. Chapter 3, section 3, is changed as follows:

* *a. Nonprecision Approaches.*

(1) **Approach to Runway.** The minimum visibility may be 1/2 the computed straight-in CAT A fixed-wing value from tables 6, 9, or 10, as applicable, but not less than 1/4 mile/1,200 RVR.

(2) **Approach to Landing Area.** (Landing area within 2600 feet of MAP). The minimum visibility required prior to applying credit for lights may not be less than the visibility associated with the HAL, as specified in table 25. Paragraphs 330 and 331 do not apply.

b. Precision Approaches.

(1) **Approach to Runway.** The minimum visibility may be 1/2 the computed straight-in CAT A fixed-wing values specified in tables 9 and 10, but not less than 1/4 mile/1200 RVR.

(2) **Approach to Landing Area.** The minimum visibility authorized prior to applying credit for lights is 1/2 mile/2400 RVR. Paragraphs 330 and 331 do not apply. *

c. Point-in-Space Approaches. The minimum visibility prior to applying credit for lights is 3/4 mile. If the HAS exceeds 800 feet, the minimum no-lights visibility shall be 1 mile. No credit for lights will be authorized unless an approved visual lights guidance system is provided. See also paragraph 344. Alternate minimums are not authorized. Table 25 does not apply.

EXAMPLE
MDA is 360' MSL based on obstacles in the approach area. A 1098' MSL controlling obstacle is 1 mile (6076') from the near edge of Section 1.
A 20:1 surface which clears the obstacle has a height of 794' MSL at the near edge of Section 1.
6076 Divided by 20 Equals 304 1098 Minus 304 Equals 794.
To determine minimum altitude at which the missed approach aircraft may start the turn add 250' obstacle clearance and round up the sum to the next higher 20' increment.
794' Plus 250' Equals 1044' rounded up Equals 1060' MSL.
To climb 700' from MDA 360' MSL to the turning altitude (1060' MSL) at the 20:1 climb gradient requires 14,000'. This is the minimum length of Section 1.

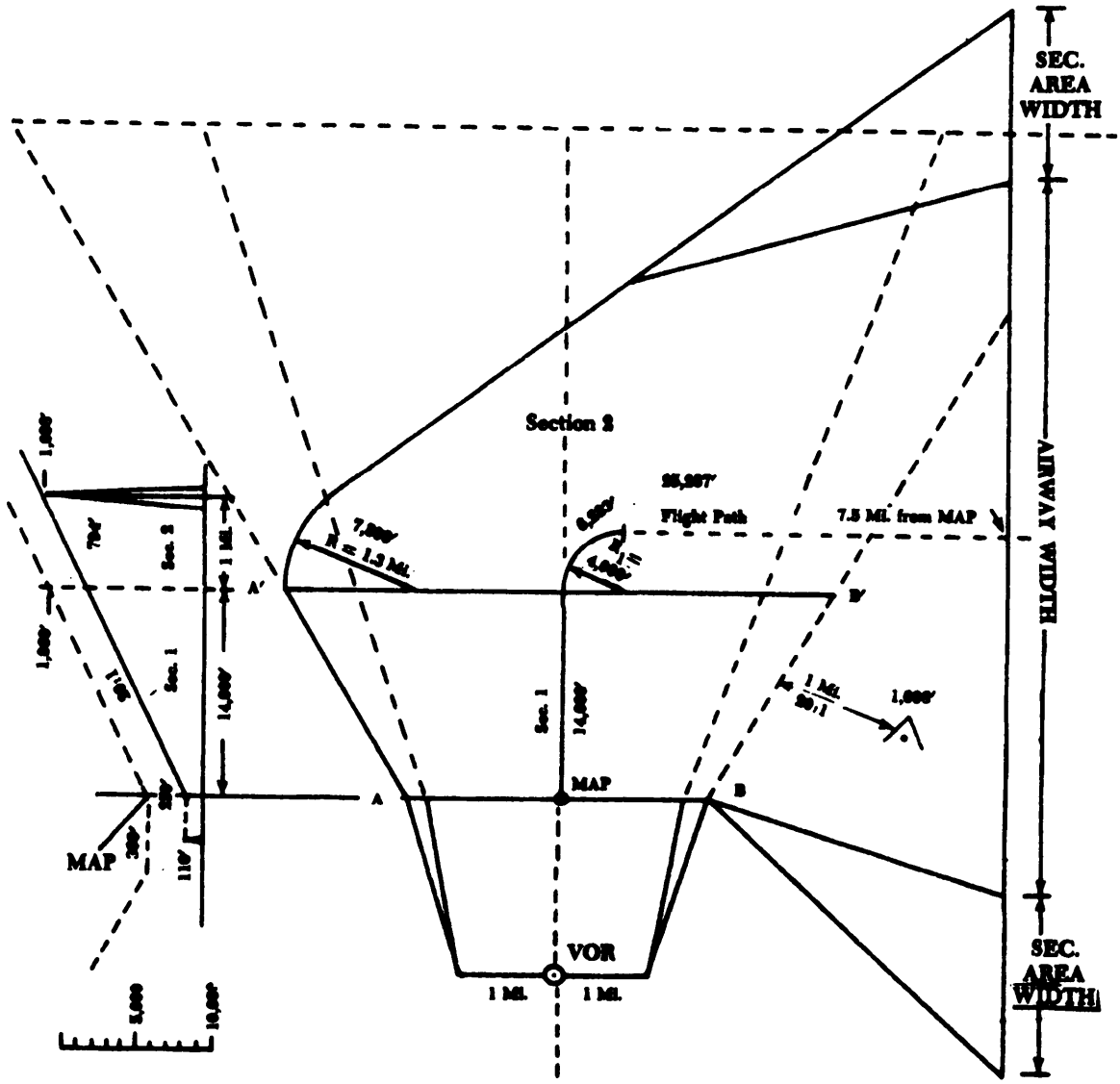


Figure 106. COMBINATION MISSED APPROACH AREA. Paragraph 1122.

* **1128. VISIBILITY CREDIT.** Where visibility credit for lighting facilities is allowed for fixed-wing operations, the same type credit should be considered for helicopter operations. The approving authority will grant credit on an individual case basis, until such time as a standard for helicopter approach lighting systems is established. The concepts stated in paragraph 342 apply, except heliport markings may be substituted for the runway marking requirements specified therein. *

Table 25. EFFECT OF HAL HEIGHT ON VISIBILITY MINIMUMS. Par 1127a

HAL	250-600 ft.	601-800 ft.	More than 800 ft.
Visibility Minimum (Mi)	1/2	3/4	1

* *

1129. TAKEOFF MINIMUMS. Paragraph 370 does not apply. Helicopter takeoff minimums will be in accordance with the appropriate Federal Aviation Regulations and Military Regulations.

Section 4. On-Heliport VOR (No FAF)

1130. GENERAL. Paragraph 400 does not apply. These criteria apply to procedures based on a VOR facility located within 2600 feet of the center of the landing area in which no final approach fix is established. These procedures must incorporate a procedure turn.

1131. INITIAL AND INTERMEDIATE SEGMENTS. These criteria are contained in section 2 of this chapter.

1132. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 413 does not apply, except as noted below. The final approach begins where the procedure turn intersects the final approach course inbound.

a. Alignment. Paragraph 1116a applies.

b. Area. The primary area is longitudinally centered on the final approach course. The MINIMUM length is 5 miles. This may be extended if an operational requirement exists. The primary area is 2 miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to 4 miles wide at 5 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility and expands uniformly to .67 mile on each side of the primary area at 5 miles from the facility. See figure 107.

c. Obstacle Clearance. Paragraph 413c(1) applies.

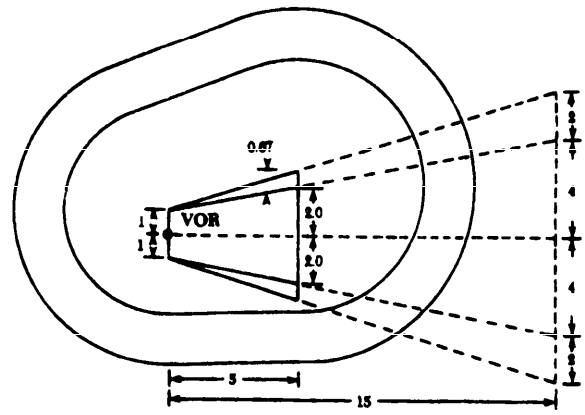


Figure 107. FINAL APPROACH PRIMARY AND SECONDARY AREA. On-Heliport VOR, No FAF, Par 1132b. See also Figure 105.

d. Procedure Turn Altitude. The procedure turn completion altitude shall be in accordance with table 23.

e. Use of Stepdown Fix. Paragraph 413e applies, except that 4 miles is changed to 2.5 miles.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. Criteria for determining MDA are contained in section 3 of this chapter and chapter 3.

Section 5. TACAN, VOR/DME, and VOR with FAF

1133. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 513 does not apply, except as noted below.

a. Alignment. Paragraphs 1116a and b apply.

b. Area. Paragraph 513b applies, except that portion which refers to the minimum length of the final approach segment. The minimum length of the final approach segment is shown in table 26.

Table 26. MINIMUM LENGTH OF FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT (MILES)

Magnitude of Turn Over the Facility		
30°	60°	90°
1.0	2.0	3.0

NOTE: This table may be interpolated.

c. Obstacle Clearance. Paragraph 513.c.(1) applies.

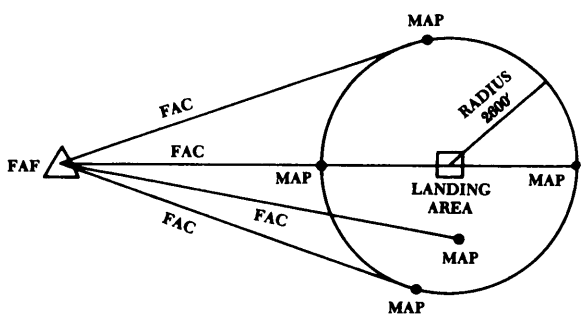
1134. RESERVED

1135. MISSED APPROACH POINT. The identification of the MAP in Paragraph 514 is changed as follows: The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is not farther than 2600 feet from the center of the landing area. See Figure 108. For point in space approaches the MAP is on the final approach course at the end of the final approach area.

1136. ARC FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT RADIUS. Paragraph 523.b. does not apply. The final approach arc shall be a continuation of the intermediate arc. It shall be specified in nautical miles and tenths thereof. The minimum arc radius on final approach is 4 miles.

1137. ARC FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT ALIGNMENT. Paragraph 523.b.(1) does not apply. The final approach arc should be aligned so as to pass through the landing area. Where an operational advantage can be achieved, a final approach course which does not pass through the landing area may be established provided the arc lies within 2600 ft. of the landing area at the MAP.

1138. RESERVED.



MISSED APPROACH POINT OPTIONS

Figure 108. MISSED APPROACH POINTS. Off-Heliport VOR with FAF. Par. 1135.

Section 6. ON-HELIPORT NDB, No FAF

1139. GENERAL. Paragraph 600 does not apply. These criteria apply to procedures based on an NDB facility located within 2600 feet of the center of the landing area in which no final approach fix is established. These procedures must incorporate a procedure turn.

1140. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 613 does not apply except as noted below. The final approach begins where the procedure turn intersects the final approach course, inbound.

a. Alignment. Paragraph 1116.a. applies.

b. Area. The primary area is longitudinally centered on the final approach course. The MINIMUM length is 5 miles. This may be extended if an operational requirement exists. The primary area is 2.5 miles wide at the facility, and expands uniformly to 4.25 miles wide at 5 miles from the facility. A secondary area is on each side of the primary area. It is zero miles wide at the facility, and expands uniformly to .67 miles wide on each side of the primary area at 5 miles from the facility. Figure 109 illustrates the primary and secondary areas.

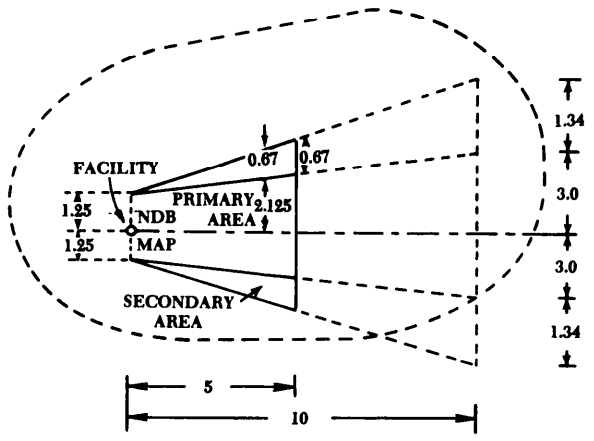


Figure 109. FINAL APPROACH PRIMARY AND SECONDARY AREAS. On-Heliport NDB. No FAF. Paragraph 1140.

c. Obstacle Clearance. Paragraph 613.c.(1) applies.

d. Procedure Turn Altitude (Descent Gradient). The procedure turn completion altitude shall be in accordance with Table 23.

e. Use of Stepdown Fix. Paragraph 613.e. applies except that 4 miles is changed to 2.5 miles.

f. Minimum Descent Altitude. Criteria for determining the MDA are contained in Section 3 of this chapter and Chapter 3.

Section 7. NDB Procedures with FAF

1141. GENERAL. These criteria apply to procedures based on an NDB facility which incorporates a final approach fix.

1142. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 713 does not apply except as noted below:

a. Alignment. Paragraphs 1116.a. and b. apply.

b. Area. Paragraph 713.b. applies except that portion which refers to the minimum length of the final approach segment. The minimum length is specified in Table 26.

c. Obstacle Clearance. Paragraph 713.c.(1) applies.

1143. MISSED APPROACH POINT. The identification of the MAP in Paragraph 714 is changed as follows: The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is not farther than 2600 feet from the center of the landing area. See Figure 108. For point in space approaches, the MAP is on the final approach course at the end of the final approach area.

Section 8. RESERVED.

1144.-1149. RESERVED.

Section 9. ILS Procedures

1150. GENERAL. Chapter 9 is changed as noted in this section. These criteria apply to the present design of instrument landing systems (on airport) only.

1151. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 922 applies with the exception that Table 27 specifies the minimum length of the intermediate segment based on the angle of intersection of the initial approach course with the localizer course.

1152. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 930 applies except that glide slope interception need not occur prior to the FAF normally used for fixed wing operations.

a. The optimum length of the final approach course is 3.0 miles. The minimum length is 2.0 miles. A distance in excess of 4.0 miles should not be used unless a special operational requirement exists.

b. Final Approach Termination. The final approach shall terminate at a landing point (runway) or at a hover point between the Decision Height and the GPI. Where required, visual hover/taxi routes will be provided to the terminal area.

1153. MISSED APPROACH AREA. Normally existing missed approach criteria will be utilized for helicopter operations. However, if an operational advantage can be gained, the areas described in Paragraphs 1168 through 1171 may be substituted.

1154. MICROWAVE ILS. Additional criteria will be developed to exploit the capabilities of the microwave ILS which is now under development. It is expected that this new equipment will provide glide slope angles in the range from 3 to 12 degrees and the flexibility to satisfy special aircraft and ground siting requirements.

1155. LOCALIZER AND LDA. Section 5 of Chapter 9 is changed as noted in this paragraph.

a. Alignment. Paragraph 952 applies except that LDA alignment shall be as specified in paragraphs 1116.a. and b.

b. Area. Paragraph 953 applies except that portion which refers to the minimum length of the final approach segment. The minimum length of the final approach segment is shown in Table 26.

c. Missed Approach Point. The identification of the MAP in Paragraph 957 is changed as follows: The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is not farther than 2600 feet from the landing area. See Figure 108. For point-in-space approaches, the MAP is on the final approach course at the end of the final approach area.

Section 10. Precision Approach Radar (PAR)

1156. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 1014 applies with the exception that Table 27 specifies the minimum length of the intermediate segment based on the angle of intersection of the initial approach course with the intermediate course.

Table 27. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT ANGLE OF INTERCEPT VS. SEGMENT LENGTH. Paragraph 1156.

Angle (Degrees)	Minimum Length (Miles)
30	1
60	2
90	3

NOTE: This table may be interpolated.

1157. RESERVED.

1158. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The provisions of Paragraph 1020.b.(1) and (2) do not apply. The minimum distance from the glide slope intercept point to the GPI is 2 miles.

1159. FINAL APPROACH ALIGNMENT. Paragraph 1020.a. applies with the exception that a final approach course shall be aligned to a landing area. Where required, visual hover/taxi routes shall be established leading to terminal areas.

1160. FINAL APPROACH AREA.

a. Length. The final approach area is 25,000 feet long, measured outward along the final approach course from the GPI. Where operationally required for other procedural considerations or for existing obstacles, the length may be increased or decreased symmetrically, except when glide slope usability would be impaired or restricted. See Figure 110.

b. Width. The final approach area is centered on the final approach course. The area has a total width of 500 feet at the GPI and expands uniformly to a total width of 8000 ft. at a point 25,000 ft. outward from the GPI. The widths are further uniformly expanded or reduced where a different length is required as in Paragraph 1160.a. above. See Figure 110. The width either side of the centerline at a given distance "D" from the point of beginning can be found by using the formula 250 + .15D = 1/2 width.

1161. RESERVED.

1162. FINAL APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE SURFACE. Paragraph 1021 does not apply. The final approach obstacle clearance surface is divided into two sections.

a. Section 1. This section originates at the GPI and extends for a distance of 775 feet in the direction of the FAF. It is a level plane, the elevation of which is equal to the elevation of the GPI.

b. Section 2. This section originates 775 feet outward from the GPI. It connects with Section 1 at the elevation of the GPI. The gradient of this section varies with the glide path angle used.

(1) To identify the glide slope angle and associated final approach surface gradient to clear obstacles in Section 2:

(a) Determine the distance "D" from the GPI to the controlling obstacle and the height of the controlling obstacle above the GPI.

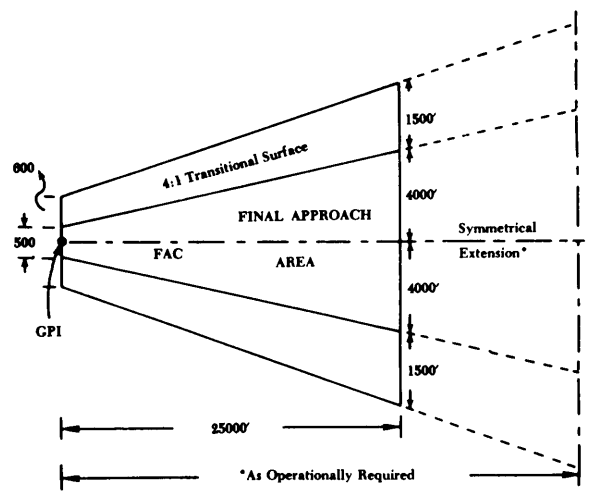


Figure 110. PAR FINAL APPROACH AREA.
Par 1159 and 1160

Table 28. FINAL APPROACH GLIDE SLOPE – SURFACE SLOPE ANGLES. Par. 1162.b.

Glide Slope Angle (Degrees)	Less Than 3	3	4	5	6	7	8	12
Section 2 obstacle clearance surface gradient (degrees)	*	1.65	2.51	3.37	4.23	5.09	5.95	9.39

NOTE: This table may be interpolated.
** See Par 1165.a.*

(b) Enter these values in the formula:

$$\text{TAN. ANGLE} = \frac{\text{Obstacle height}}{\text{D-775}}$$

(c) Convert the tangent angle. This is the angle of the Section 2 approach surface gradient measured at the height of the GPI.

(d) The minimum glide slope angle required is found in Table 28.

1163. TRANSITIONAL SURFACES. Paragraph 1022 does not apply. Transitional surfaces for PAR are inclined planes with a slope of 4:1 which extend outward and upward from the edges of the final approach surfaces. They start at the height of the applicable final approach surface, and are perpendicular to the final approach course. They extend laterally 600 feet at the GPI and expand uniformly to a width of 1500 feet at 25,000 feet from the GPI.

1164. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Paragraph 1024 does not apply. No obstacle should penetrate the applicable final approach surfaces specified in Paragraph 1162 or the transitional surfaces specified in Paragraph 1163. Obstacle clearance requirements greater than 500 feet need not be applied unless required in the interest of safety due to precipitous terrain or radar system peculiarities.

NOTE: The terrain in Section 1 may rise at a gradient of 75:1 without adverse effect on minimums provided the surface is free of obstacles.

1165. GLIDE SLOPE. Required obstacle clearance is specified in Paragraph 1164. In addition, consideration shall be given to the following in the selection of the glide slope angle:

a. If angles less than 3 degrees are established, the obstacle clearance requirements shall be arrived at in accordance with Paragraphs 1024 and 1025.

b. Angles greater than 6 degrees shall not be established without authorization of the approving authority. The angle selected should be no greater than that required to provide obstacle clearance.

c. Angles selected should be increased to the next higher tenth of a degree, e.g., 4.71 degrees becomes 4.8; 4.69 degrees becomes 4.7.

1166. RELOCATION OF THE GLIDE SLOPE. Paragraph 1027 does not apply. The GPI shall normally be located at the arrival edge of the landing area. If obstacle clearance requirements cannot be satisfied, or if other operational advantages will result, the GPI may be moved into the landing area provided sufficient landing area is available forward of the displaced or relocated GPI.

1167. ADJUSTMENT OF DH. An adjustment is required whenever the angle to be used exceeds 3.8 degrees. See Table 29. This adjustment is necessary to provide ample deceleration distance between the DH point and the landing area.

1168. MISSED APPROACH OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. No obstacle may penetrate a 20:1 missed approach surface which overlies the missed

Table 29. MINIMUM DH – GS ANGLE RELATIONSHIP. Par. 1167.

GS Angle (degrees)	up to 3.80	3.81 to 5.70	Over 5.70
Minimum DH (feet)	100	150	200

approach areas illustrated in Figures 113, 114 and 115. The missed approach surface originates at the GPI. However, to gain relief from *existing* obstacles in the missed approach area the point at which the surface originates may be relocated as far backward from the GPI as a point on the final approach course which is directly below the MAP. In such cases the surface originates at a height below the DH as specified in Table 30. See Figure 112.

NOTE: When penetration of the 20:1 surface originating at the GPI occurs, an upward adjustment to the DH equal to the maximum penetration of the surface should be considered.

1169. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AREA. The straight missed approach (maximum of 15 degree turn from final approach course) area starts at the MAP and extends to 7.5 miles.

a. Primary Area. This area is divided into three sections.

(1) Section 1A is a continuation of the final approach area. It starts at the MAP and ends at the GPI. It has the same width as the final approach area at the MAP.

(2) Section 1B is centered on the missed approach course. It begins at the GPI and extends to a point 1 mile from the MAP outward along the missed approach course. It has a beginning width the same as the final approach area at the MAP and expands uniformly to 4000 feet at 1 mile from the MAP.

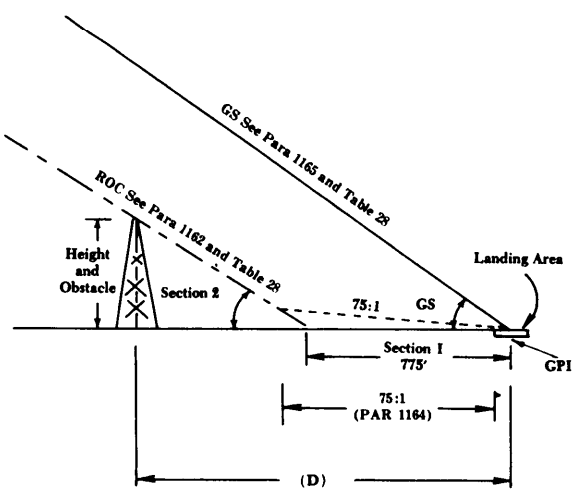


Figure 111. FINAL APPROACH AREA SURFACE AND OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Paragraphs 1162 and 1164.

Table 30. BEGINNING POINT OF MISSED APPROACH SURFACE. Par. 1168.

GS Angle (Degrees)	3	6	9
Dist. below DH point (feet)	100	150	200

NOTE: This table may be interpolated.

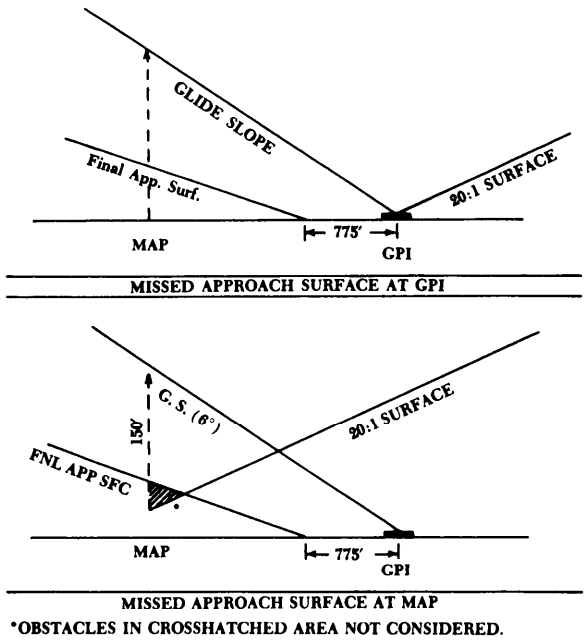


Figure 112. MISSED APPROACH SURFACE OPTIONS (Par 1168)

(3) Section 2 is centered on the continuation of the Section 1B course. It begins 1 mile from the MAP and ends 7.5 miles from the MAP. It has a beginning width of 4000 feet, expanding uniformly to a width equal to that of an initial approach area at 7.5 miles from the MAP.

b. Secondary Area. The secondary area begins at the MAP, where it has the same width as the final approach secondary area. In Section 1A the width remains constant from the MAP to the GPI, after which it increases uniformly to the appropriate airway width at 7.5 miles from the MAP. See Figure 113.

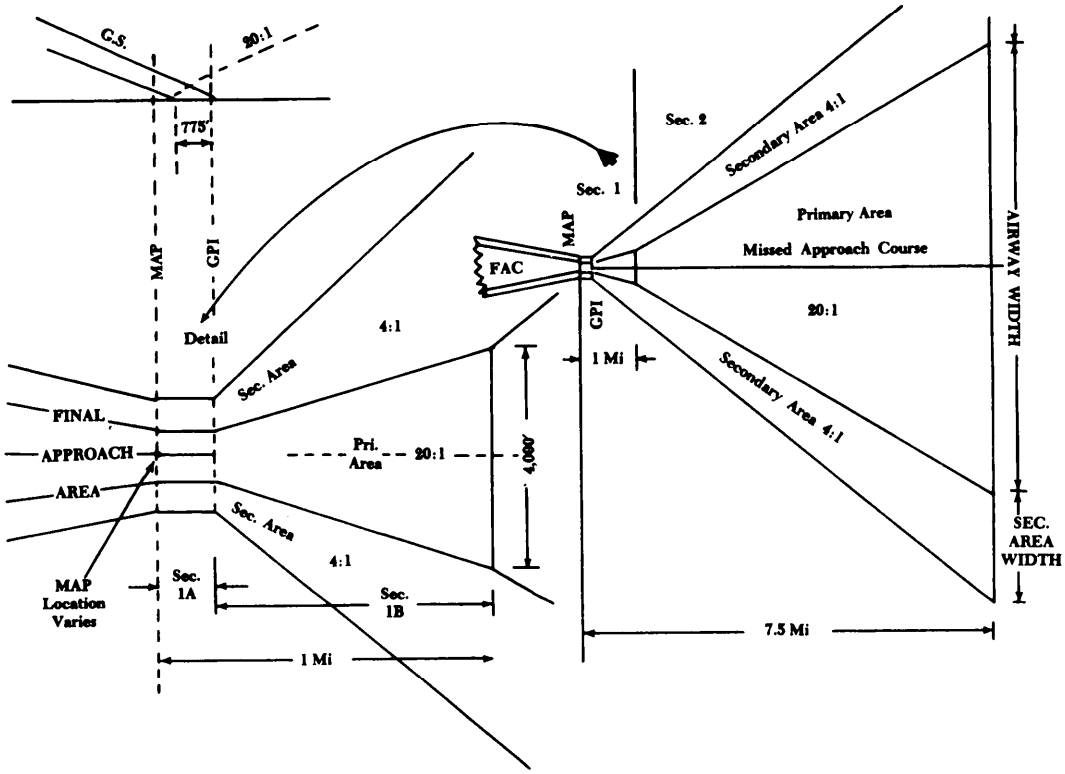


Figure 113. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH.

1170. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. Where turns of more than 15 degrees are required in a missed approach procedure, they shall commence at an altitude which is at least 400 feet above the elevation of the landing area. Such turns are assumed to commence at the point where Section 2 begins. The turning flight track radius shall be 4000 feet (.66 miles).

a. Primary Area. The outer boundary of the Section 2 primary area shall be drawn with a 1.3 mile radius. The inner boundary shall commence at the beginning of Section 1B. The outer and inner boundary shall flare to the width of an initial approach area 7.5 miles from the MAP.

b. Secondary Area. Secondary areas for reduction of obstacle clearance are identified with Section 2. The secondary areas begin after completion of the turn. They are zero miles wide at the point of beginning and increase uniformly to the appropriate airway width at the end of Section 2. Positive course guidance is required to reduce obstacle clearance in the secondary area. See Figure 114.

1171. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA. If a straight climb to an altitude greater than 400 feet is necessary prior to commencing a missed approach turn, a combination straight and turning missed approach area must be constructed. The straight portion of this missed approach area is divided into Sections 1 and 2A. The portion in which the turn is made is Section 2B.

a. Straight Portion. Sections 1 and 2A correspond respectively to Sections 1 and 2 of the normal straight missed approach area and are constructed

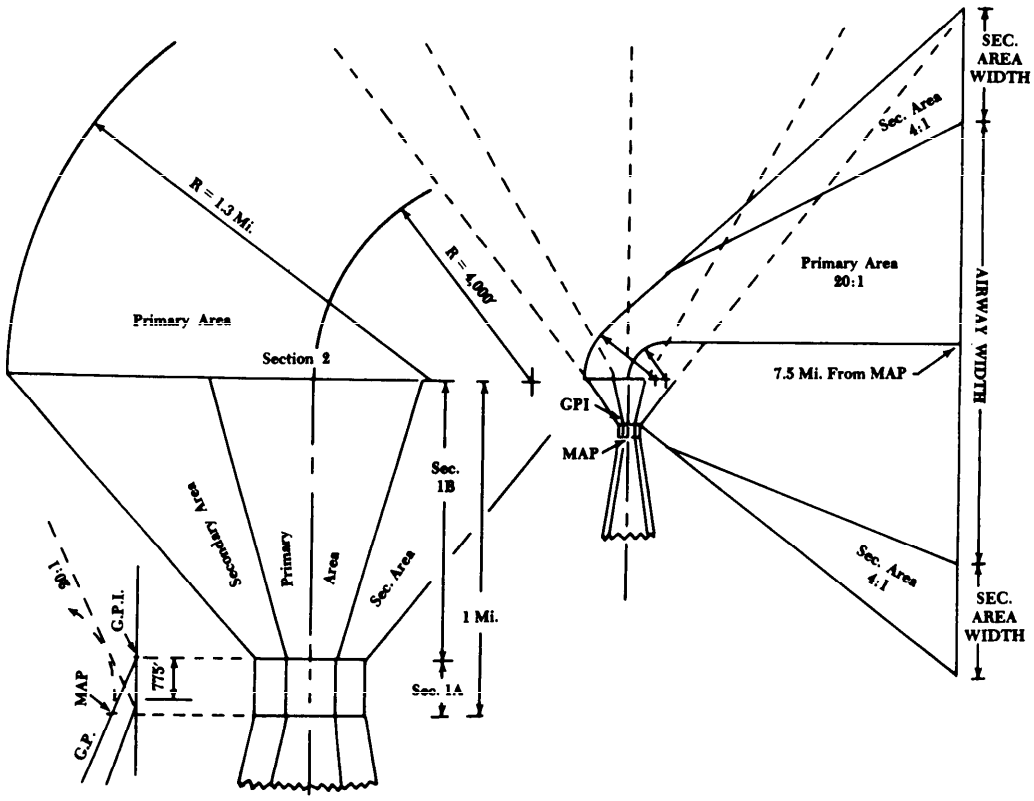


Figure 114. TURNING MISSED APPROACH AREA.
Par 1170.

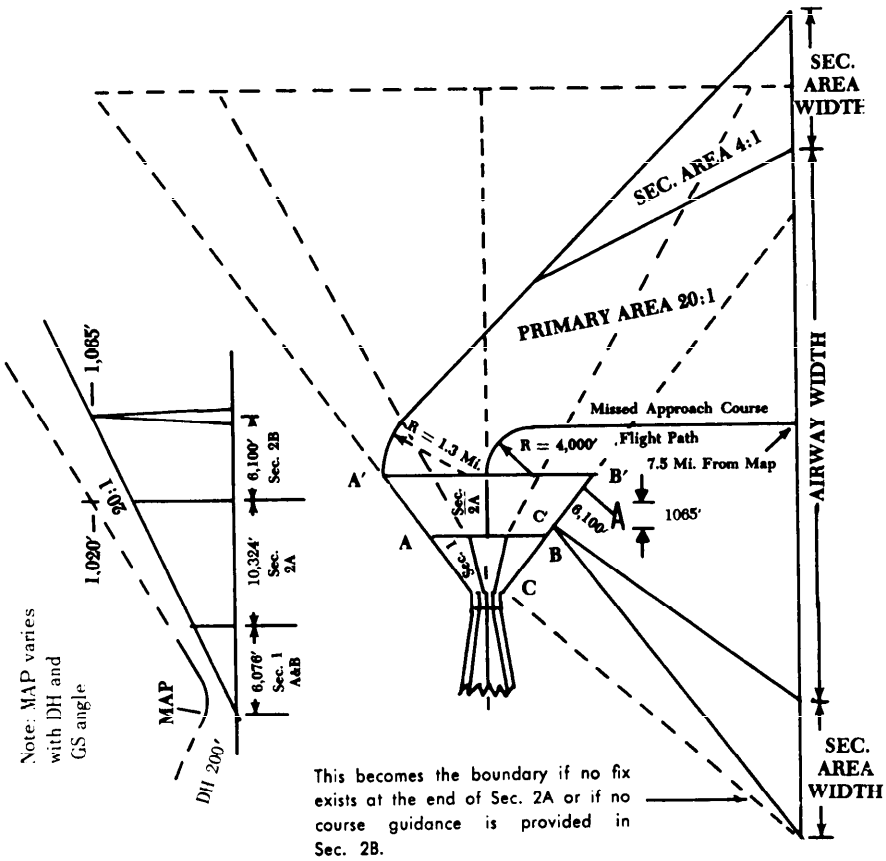
as specified in Paragraph 1169 except that Section 2A has no secondary areas. Obstacle clearance is provided as specified in Paragraph 1119. The length of Section 2A is determined as shown in Figure 115, and relates to the need to climb to a specified altitude prior to commencing the turn. The line A'-B' marks the end of Section 2A. Point C' is 5300 feet from the end of Section 2A.

b. Turning Portion. Section 2B is constructed as specified in Paragraph 1169 except that it begins at the end of Section 2A instead of the end of Section 1. To determine the height which must be attained before commencing the missed approach turn, first identify the controlling obstacle on the side of Section 2A to which the turn is to be made. Then measure the distance from this obstacle to the nearest edge of the Section 2A area. Using this distance as illustrated in Figure 115, determine the height of the 20:1 slope at the edge of Section 2A. This height plus 250 feet (rounded off to the next higher 20 foot increment) is the height at which the turn should be started. Obstacle clearance requirements in Section 2B are the same as those specified in Paragraph 1121 except that Section 2B is expanded to start at Point C if no fix exists at the end of Section 2A or if no course guidance is provided in Section 2 (see Figure 115).

NOTE: The missed approach areas expand uniformly to the appropriate airway width.

Section 11. Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR)

1172. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 1041.a.(1) applies except that 90 degrees is changed to 120 degrees.



EXAMPLE:

DH is 200' MSL.

A 1065' controlling obstacle is 6100' from the near edge of Sec. 2A.

A 20:1 surface which clears the obstacle has a height of 760' MSL at the near edge of Section 2A.

6100'÷20'=305'

1065−305=760'

To determine minimum altitude at which the missed approach aircraft may start the turn add 250' obstacle clearance and round up the sum to the next higher 20' increment.

760'+250'=1010'

Rounded up=1020'

To climb 820' from DH 200' to the turning altitude (1020' MSL) at the 20:1 climb gradient requires 16,400'. Sec. 1 is 6076' long; therefore Section 2A is required to be 10,324' long.

Figure 115. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH. Paragraph 1171.

1173. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 1042.b. applies with the exception that the maximum angle of intercept is changed to 120 degrees and Table 24 is used to determine the required minimum length of the intermediate segment.

1174. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Paragraph 1044 applies except for subparagraphs a., c.(2) and d.

a. Alignment. Paragraphs 1116.a. and b. apply.

1175. MISSED APPROACH POINT. The identification of the MAP in Paragraph 1048 is changed as follows. The missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is not farther than 2600 feet from the center of the landing area. See Figure 108. For point in space approaches the MAP is on the final approach course at the end of the final approach area.

1176.–1199. RESERVED.

CHAPTER 12. DEPARTURE PROCEDURES

1200. GENERAL. These criteria specify the obstacle clearance requirements to be applied to diverse departures, departure routes, and standard instrument departures (SIDs). Obstacle identification surfaces (OIS) of 40:1 are used. A climb gradient of 200 feet per NM will provide at least 48 feet per NM of clearance above objects which do not penetrate the OIS. Objects which penetrate the OIS are obstacles and shall be considered in the departure procedure by specifying a flight path which will safely avoid the obstacle(s) or by specifying a climb gradient greater than 200 feet per NM that will provide 48 feet of required obstacle clearance (ROC) for each NM of the flight path. Takeoff ceiling and visibility minimums shall be established for those departures specifying a climb gradient.

1201. APPLICATION. Diverse departure criteria (paragraph 1202) shall be applied to all runways authorized by the approving authority for instrument departures. Application of diverse departure criteria may result in the need to develop specific departure routes to avoid obstacles (paragraph 1203).

1202. DIVERSE DEPARTURES. At many airports, a prescribed departure route is not required for ATC purposes nor as the only suitable route to avoid obstacles. In spite of this, there may be obstacles in the vicinity of the airport that should be considered in determining that restrictions to departures are to be prescribed in a given sector(s). The areas and surfaces described herein are to be used to identify such obstacles. Sectors shall be described by bearings and distance from the airport reference point which diverge at least 15° either side of the controlling obstacle. Departure restrictions shall be published as described in paragraph 1207a.

a. Zone 1.

(1) Area. The area begins at the departure end of the runway (DER) and has a beginning width of 1000 feet (± 500 feet from centerline). The area splays 15° on each side of the extended runway centerline for a distance of 2 NM from the DER. See Figure 116A.

(2) Obstacle Identification Surface. A 40:1 OIS overlies Zone 1. It begins no higher than 35 feet above the elevation of the DER and rises in the direction of departure.

b. Zone 2.

(1) Area. Zone 2 extends radially from a point on the runway centerline located 2000 feet from the start end of the runway. It is centered on the extended takeoff surface centerline and excludes Zone 1. It extends the distance necessary for the 40:1 OIS to reach the minimum altitude authorized for en route operations. See Figure 116B.

2. Obstacle Identification Surface. A 40:1 OIS overlies Zone 2 and has a beginning height equal to the height of the OIS at the end of Zone 1. Distance measurements to an obstacle shall be made

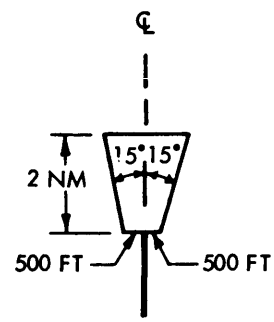


Figure 116A. ZONE 1 DIVERSE DEPARTURE.

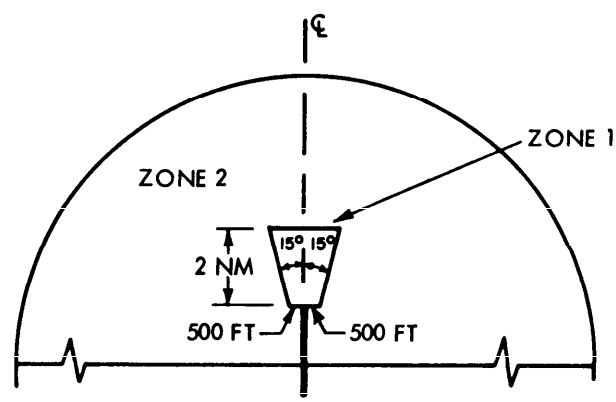


Figure 116B. ZONE 2 DIVERSE DEPARTURE.

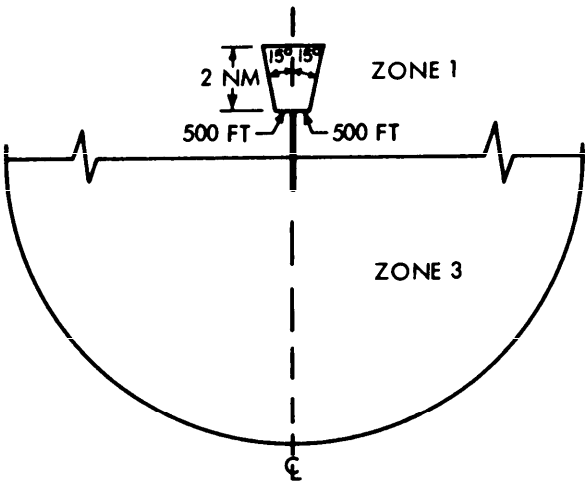


Figure 116C. ZONE 3 DIVERSE DEPARTURE.

from the runway edge or edge of Zone 1, whichever is the shorter distance.

c. Zone 3.

(1) Area. Zone 3 covers the area in the direction opposite to the takeoff, beginning 2000 feet from the start end of the runway. It provides clearance for 180° turn departures and extends the distance necessary for the 40:1 OIS to reach the minimum altitude authorized for en route operations. See Figure 116C.

(2) Obstacle Identification Surface. A 40:1 OIS overlies Zone 3 and begins 400 feet above airport elevation along the runway edge and rises therefrom.

1203. DEPARTURE ROUTES. There are three basic types of departure routes: straight, turning, and combination straight and turning. Departure routes shall be based on positive course guidance acquired within 10 NM from the DER on straight departures and within 5 NM after completion of turns on departures requiring turns. Surveillance radar, when available, may be used to provide positive course guidance.

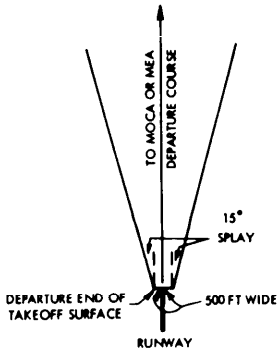


Figure 116D. STRAIGHT DEPARTURE AREA WITHOUT COURSE GUIDANCE.

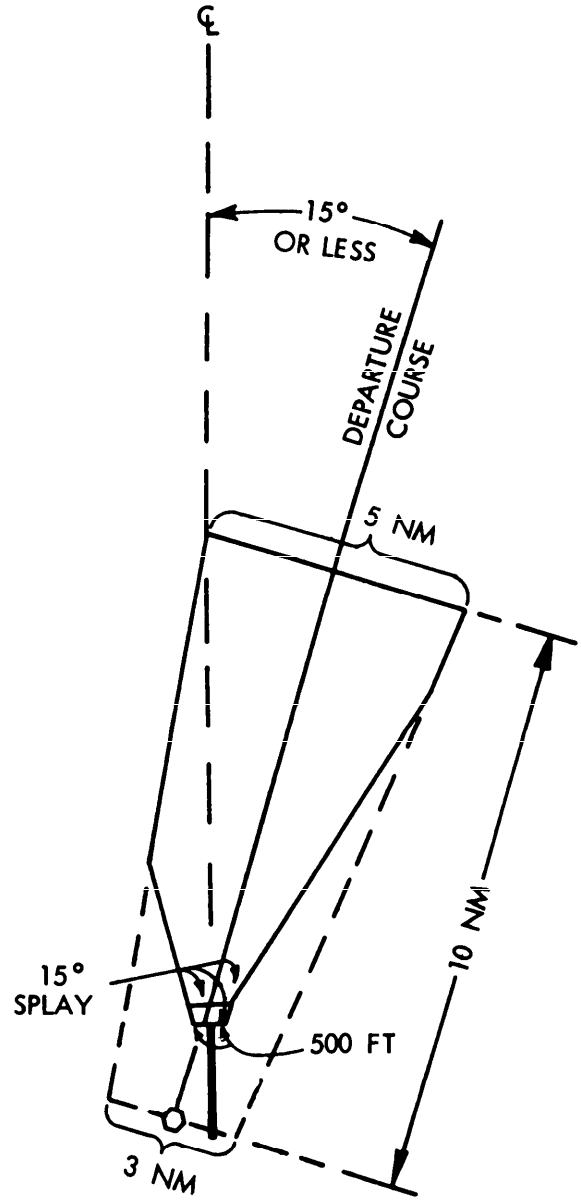


Figure 116E. STRAIGHT DEPARTURE WITH COURSE GUIDANCE FROM ON AIRFIELD FACILITY.

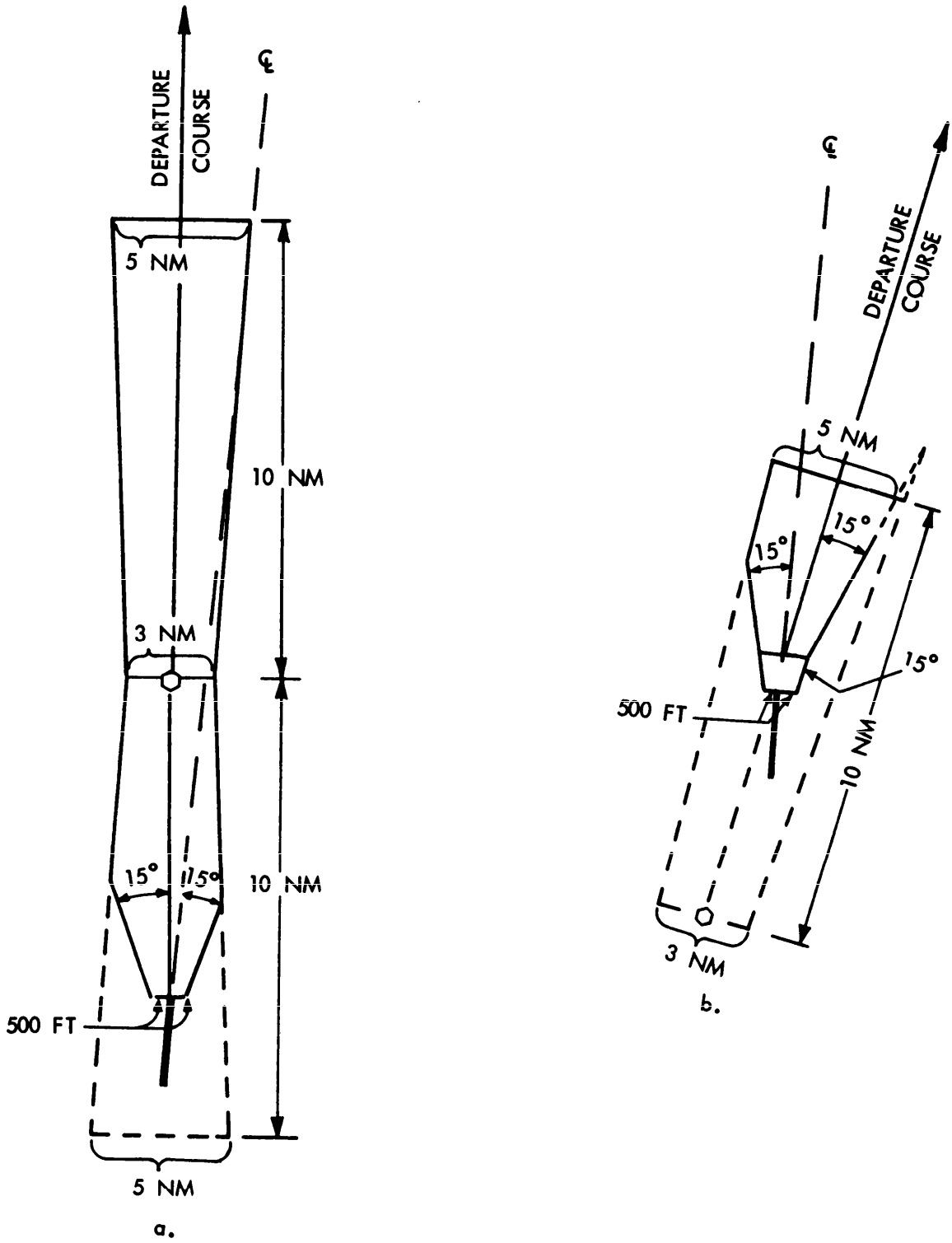


Figure 116F. STRAIGHT DEPARTURE WITH COURSE GUIDANCE FROM ON AIRFIELD FACILITY.

a. Straight Departures. A straight departure is one in which the initial departure course is within 15° of the alignment of the takeoff surface. Additionally, the departure course must intersect the runway centerline extended within 2 NM from the DER or the departure course must lie within 500 feet laterally of the runway centerline at the DER. See Figures 116D, 116E, 116F, 116G, and 116H. When the initial departure course is to a facility, a maneuvering segment is provided under the provisions of paragraph 1203a(1)(b).

(1) Area. The area begins at the departure end of the runway. It is based on the departure course

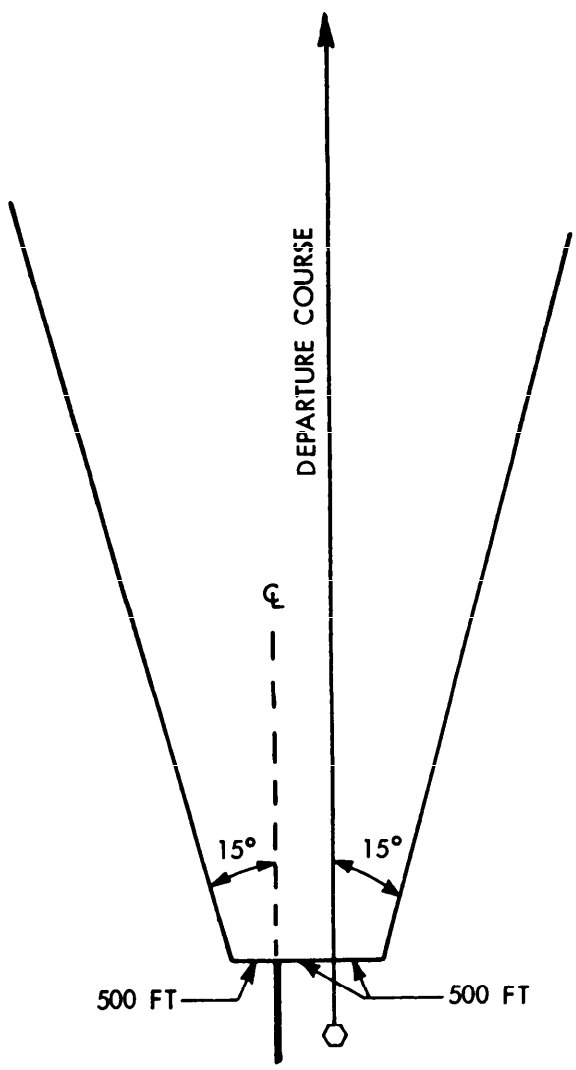


Figure 116G. STRAIGHT DEPARTURE WITH OFFSET DEPARTURE COURSE.

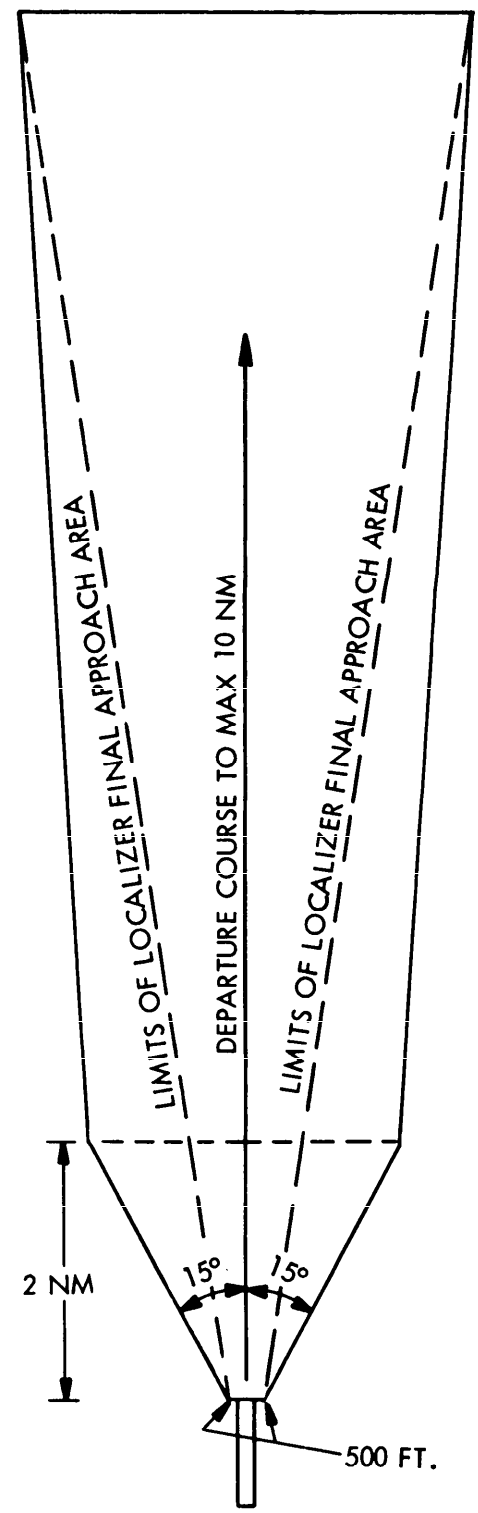


Figure 116H. DEPARTURE AREA WHEN LOCALIZER IS USED FOR COURSE GUIDANCE.

and has a minimum beginning width of 1000 feet (± 500 feet from centerline). The edge of the area shall be no less than 500 feet from the centerline of the runway and the departure course. For example, if the departure course lies 500 feet from the centerline, the beginning width of the area shall be no less than 1500 feet. See Figure 116G. The area splays 15° on each side of the departure course and/or runway centerline extended (whichever protects the greater area) to the point where the boundaries intercept the area associated with the navaid providing course guidance.

(a) When course guidance is provided by a localizer, the area specified in paragraph 1202a(1) shall be used for the first 2 NM of the departure. This area shall be joined to the localizer final approach area stated in paragraph 930b by lines drawn from the extremities of the area at 2 NM from the departure threshold to the width of the localizer area at 10 NM. See Figure 116H. (At certain airports, localizers, although installed, may not be available for use as a departure navaid.)

(b) The area associated with the navaid (other than a localizer) providing course guidance shall have the following dimensions. It shall be 3 NM (± 1 1/2 NM) wide at the facility, it shall have a maximum length of 10 NM and shall splay to a width of 5 NM[1] (± 2 1/2 NM) at 10 NM from the facility. If additional distance is required, the area may be joined from its extremities to the primary en route area using 4.5°[2] of splay until primary en route width is reached.

NOTE 1: 6 NM (± 3 NM) for NDB
NOTE 2: 5° for NDB

(i) If a turn of 15° or less is required over the facility, the inbound and outbound areas outer boundaries shall be joined by an arc of 1 1/2 NM radius.

(ii) If a turn of more than 15° but less than 30° is required over the facility, the turning departure area outer boundary radius (Table 31) shall be applied to join the two areas. The outbound area outer boundary shall be applied to join the two areas. The outbound area outer boundary shall be constructed by a line tangent to the arc and drawn to the edge of the outbound area at 10 NM from the facility. See Figure 116I.

(iii) If a turn of 30° or more is required over the facility, the area shall be extended a distance of 1 NM beyond the facility aligned with the inbound track at a width of 3 NM (± 1 1/2 NM) and the turning departure area outer boundary radius (Table 31) shall be applied to join the extension to the area associated with the outbound track. The outbound area outer boundary shall be constructed by a line tangent to the arc and drawn to the edge of the outbound area at 10 NM from the facility. See Figure 116J.

(2) Obstacle Identification Surface. A 40:1 OIS overlies the straight departure area and rises in the direction of departure. The OIS begins at the DER at an elevation no higher than 35 feet above the elevation of the DER.

b. Turning Departures. If the initial departure course does not meet the criteria specified in paragraph 1203a, a turning departure shall be constructed.

Table 31. Departure Turn Radii

TURN ALTITUDE	FLIGHT TRACK RADIUS NM (R_1)		OUTER BOUNDARY RADIUS NM (R)	
	CATs A & B	OTHERS	CATs A & B	OTHERS*
S.L. to 1000′ MSL	1.0	2.5	2.0	5.5
1001′ to 3500′ MSL	1.2	2.7	2.4	5.9
3501′ to 6000′ MSL	1.3	2.9	2.6	6.3
6001′ to 8500′ MSL	1.4	3.1	2.8	6.7
Above 8500′ MSL	1.6	3.4	3.2	7.3

**These turn radii will accommodate speeds up to 350 KIAS with 30° angle of bank. Outer boundary radius may be reduced 1/2 NM for operational advantage. Procedure must be annotated with airspeed restriction of 250 KIAS.*

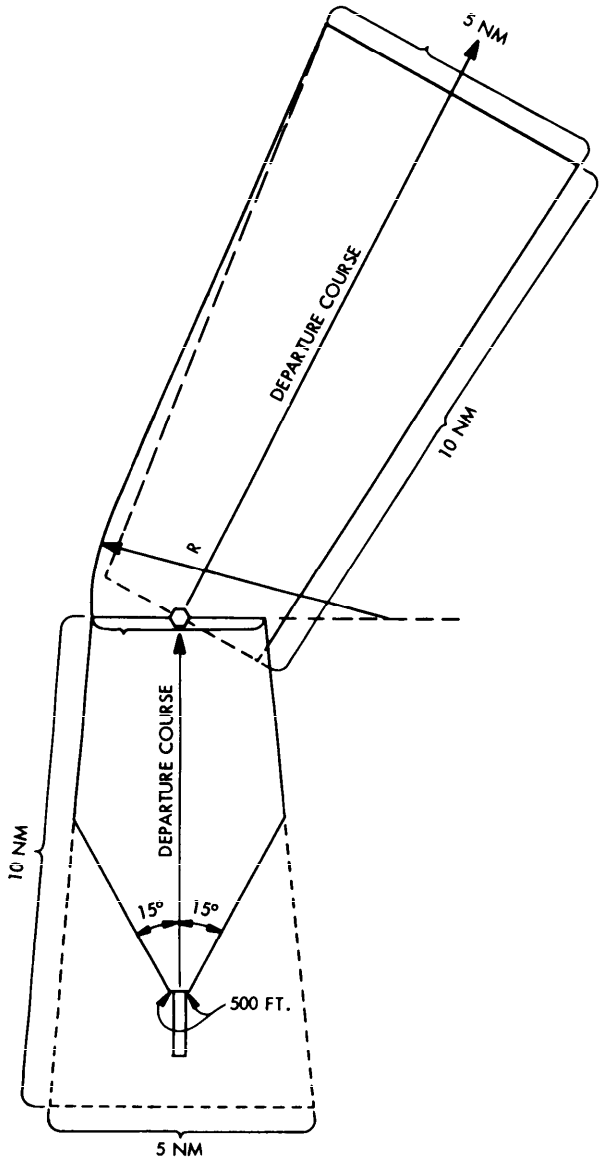


Figure 116I. TURN OF MORE THAN 15° BUT LESS THAN 30° OVER FACILITY.

A turning departure is one in which the aircraft climbs straight ahead on the heading of the takeoff surface until reaching 400 feet above the airport elevation (within 2 NM) and then immediately begins a turn to intercept a departure course. Positive course guidance is required within 5 NM after completion of the turn. See Figure 116K.

(1) Area. The turning departure area is divided into Sections 1 and 2.

(a) Section 1 is identical to the 15° splay area specified in paragraph 1203a(1). It terminates 2 NM from the beginning of the 15° splay area.

(b) Section 2 starts at the end of Section 1. The flight track and outer boundary radii shall be determined from Table 31. The outer boundary line shall splay 15° from the departure course beginning at the point abeam the point where the turn is completed. The inner boundary line shall begin at the runway edge 2000 feet from the start end of the takeoff surface on the side in the direction of the turn (Point D).

It terminates at the same distance abeam the departure course as the outer boundary does at the end of the departure. The splay of Section 2 terminates when the width reaches that of the primary en route structure. Thereafter, en route criteria apply.

(2) Obstacle Identification Surface.

(a) Section 1. A 40:1 OIS overlies Section 1 and is identical to the 40:1 specified in paragraph 1203a(2).

(b) Section 2. The dividing lines between Sections 1 and 2 are identified as "AB, BC, CD." A 40:1 OIS overlies Section 2 and has an initial height equal to the terminating height of Section 1 at any point along the dividing line and rises in the direction of the departure course. The height of the OIS at any point in Section 2 is determined by measuring the straight line distance from this point to the nearest point on the "AB, BC, CD" dividing line.

c. Combination Straight and Turning Departure. If a straight climb to a height which is more than 400 feet above the elevation of the DER is necessary prior to beginning the departure turn, a combination straight and turning departure area must be applied. Whenever possible, the point at which the turn commences shall be identified by a fix or by the intersection of the initial dead reckoning departure course with a radial or bearing which provides positive course guidance. When a fix, radial or bearing is not available, the turn may be specified to commence at an altitude based on a climb gradient of 200 feet per NM. For example, a turn 1000 feet above DER elevation shall be assumed to commence 5 NM from the end of

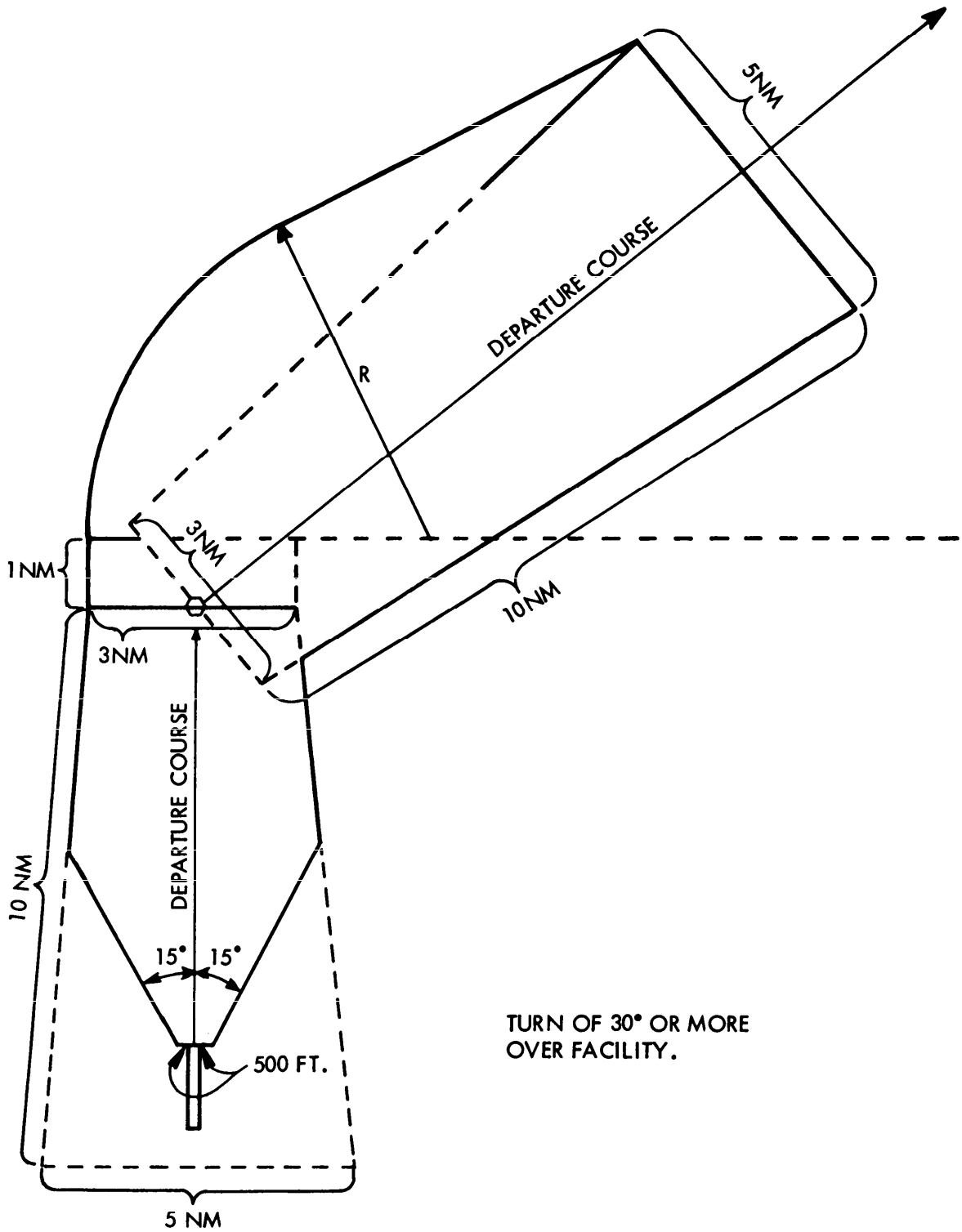


Figure 116J. TURN OF 30° OR MORE OVER FACILITY.

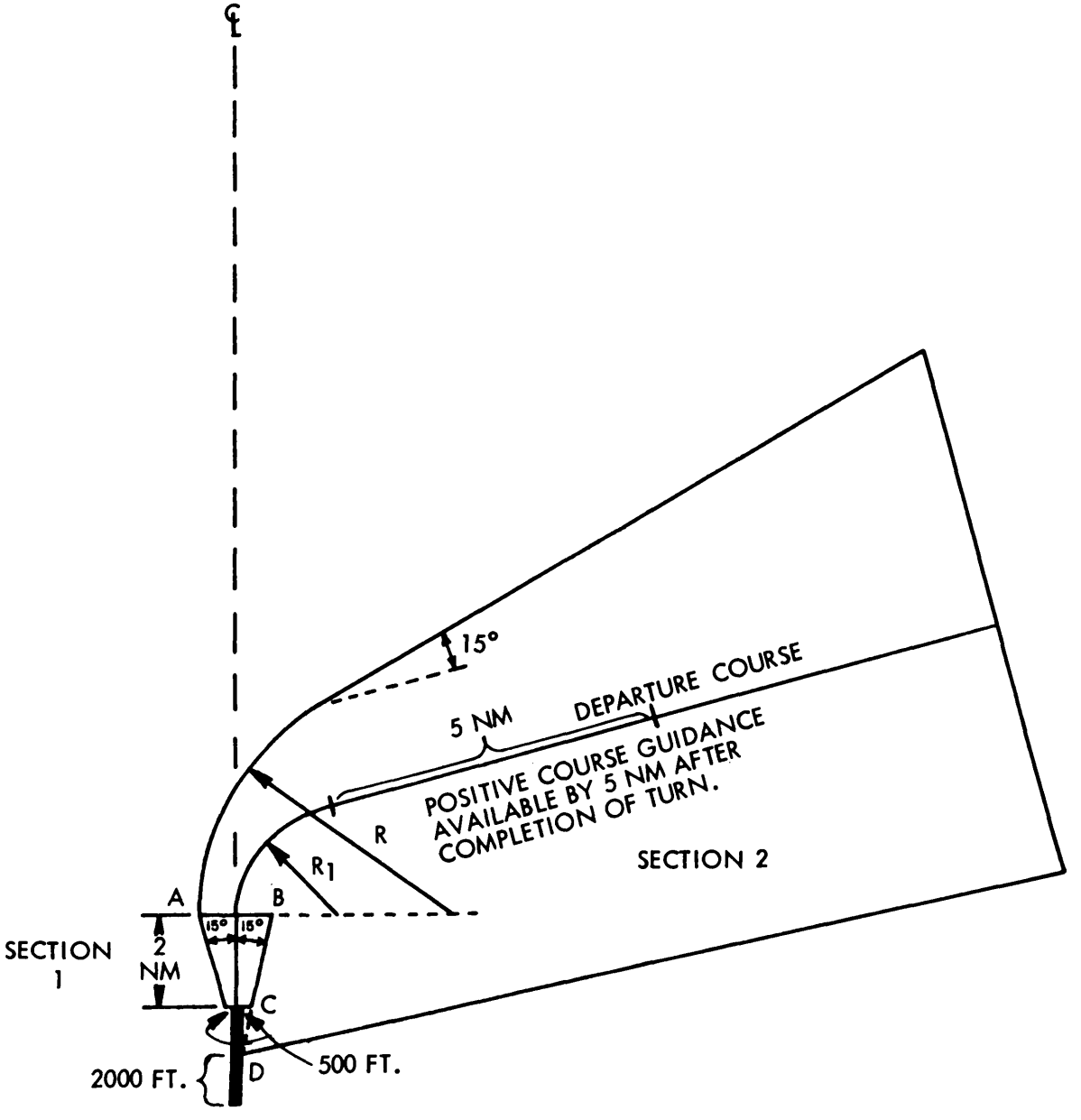


Figure 116K. TURNING DEPARTURE.

runway. Positive course guidance is required within 5 NM after completion of the turn.

(1) **Area.** The combination straight and turning departure is divided into Sections 1 and 2. See Figure 116L.

(a) Section 1 is identical to the straight departure area except that it extends to the point at which the turn begins.

(b) Section 2 starts at the end of Section 1. The flight track and outer boundary radii shall be determined from Table 31. The outer boundary radius shall be drawn beginning a distance past the plotted position of the turning point equal to the fix error, along track accuracy, or abeam plotted position; whichever is further from the end of the departure runway. The inner boundary line shall begin at the edge of the 15° splay area at a distance prior to the plotted position of the turning point equal to the fix

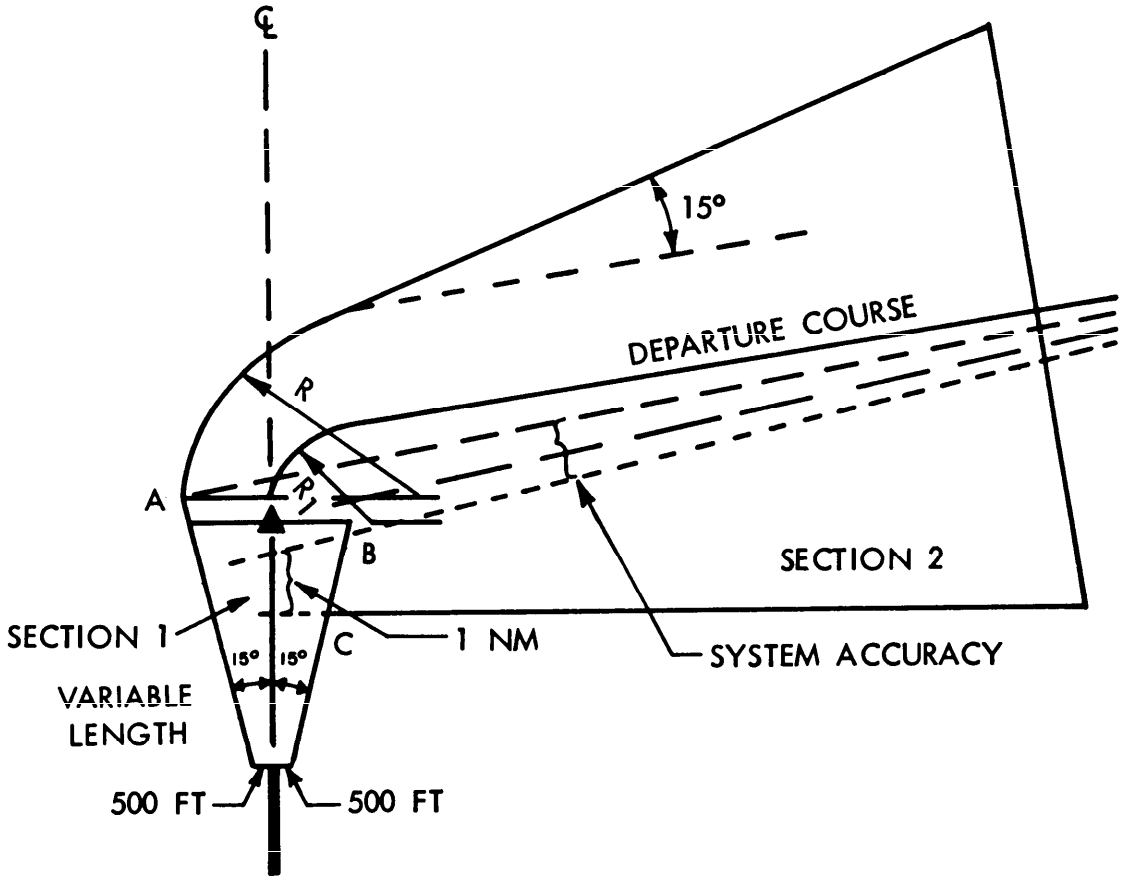


Figure 116L. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING DEPARTURE.

error or along track accuracy plot plus 1 NM. Where the turn is specified to commence at an altitude, the outer boundary radius begins at the end of Section 1, and the inner boundary line begins at the edge of the 15° splay area abeam the DER. The outer boundary line shall splay 15 degrees from the departure course beginning at the point abeam the point where the turn is completed. The inner boundary line is drawn from the point of beginning to a point which is the same distance abeam the departure course as the outer boundary is at the end of the departure.

(c) Where a turn is required to intercept a radial/bearing to proceed to or from a facility, alternate area construction is necessary. See Figure 116M. The appropriate flight track radius will join the radial/bearing and the runway centerline extended. The arc will be drawn from a point on the bisector of the angle between the runway centerline extended and the plotted position of the radial/bearing. Section 1 ends at the point of tangency of the extended centerline and the arc. The inner boundary begins at the near edge of Section 1 at a point 1 NM prior to the end of that section. The outer boundary begins at the intersection of the extended 15° splay line of Section 1 and the plotted position of the radial/bearing. The splay of Section 2 terminates when the width reaches that of the primary en route structure. Thereafter, en route width criteria apply.

(2) Obstacle Identification Surface.

(a) Section 1. A 40:1 OIS overlies the straight departure area. It begins no higher than 35 feet above the elevation of the DER and rises in the direction of departure.

(b) Section 2. The dividing lines between Sections 1 and 2 are identified as "AB, BC." A 40:1 OIS overlies Section 2. It has the same height as the Section 1 OIS at the dividing line AB and rises in the direction of the departure course.

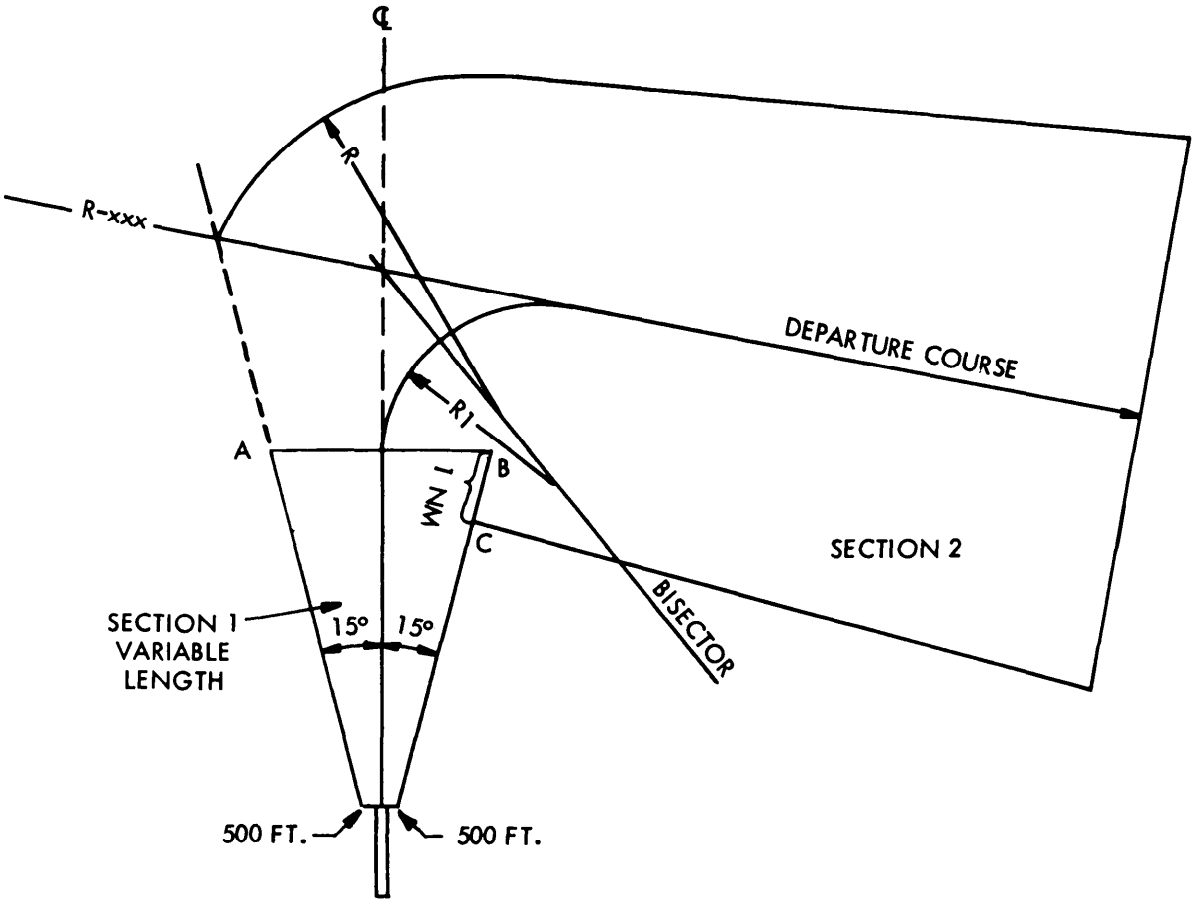


Figure 116M. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING DEPARTURE (TO INTERCEPT RADIAL OR BEARING).

1204. EARLY TURNS. Some obstacles, because of location and height (causing excessively high climb gradients), may require a turn as soon as practicable after takeoff (less than 400 feet above airport elevation). Where this condition exists, Zones 1, 2, and 3 of paragraph 1202 (see Figures 116A, 116B, and 116C) shall be used with the following exceptions. The Zone 2 OIS begins at an elevation 50 feet above the elevation of the airport and the Zone 3 OIS (if utilized) begins 200 feet above the elevation of the airport. Measurements in Zones 2 and 3 shall be made to the obstacle from the runway edge. Early turns, when developed, shall be subject to the conditions of paragraph 1207c.

1205. CLIMB GRADIENTS. Climb gradients shall include 48 feet per NM required obstacle clearance. When precipitous terrain is a factor, consideration shall be given to increasing the obstacle clearance (see paragraph 323a). Gradients shall be specified to an altitude or fix at which a gradient of more than 200 feet per NM is no longer required.

a. Diverse Departures. In cases where departure routes are not required to avoid obstacles, but obstacles exist in a sector(s) such as a mountain range, the required gradient shall be computed from the origin of the Zone 2 or 3 OIS (as applicable) direct to the obstacle. The altitude to which the climb gradient must be maintained is based on the obstacle plus ROC requiring the highest altitude in that sector.

b. Departure Routes. Climb gradients shall be computed from the elevation of the OIS at the DER along the shortest possible flight path within the obstacle clearance area to the obstacle.

c. Early Turns. When an early turn is required toward an obstacle in either Zone 2 or 3, the gradient

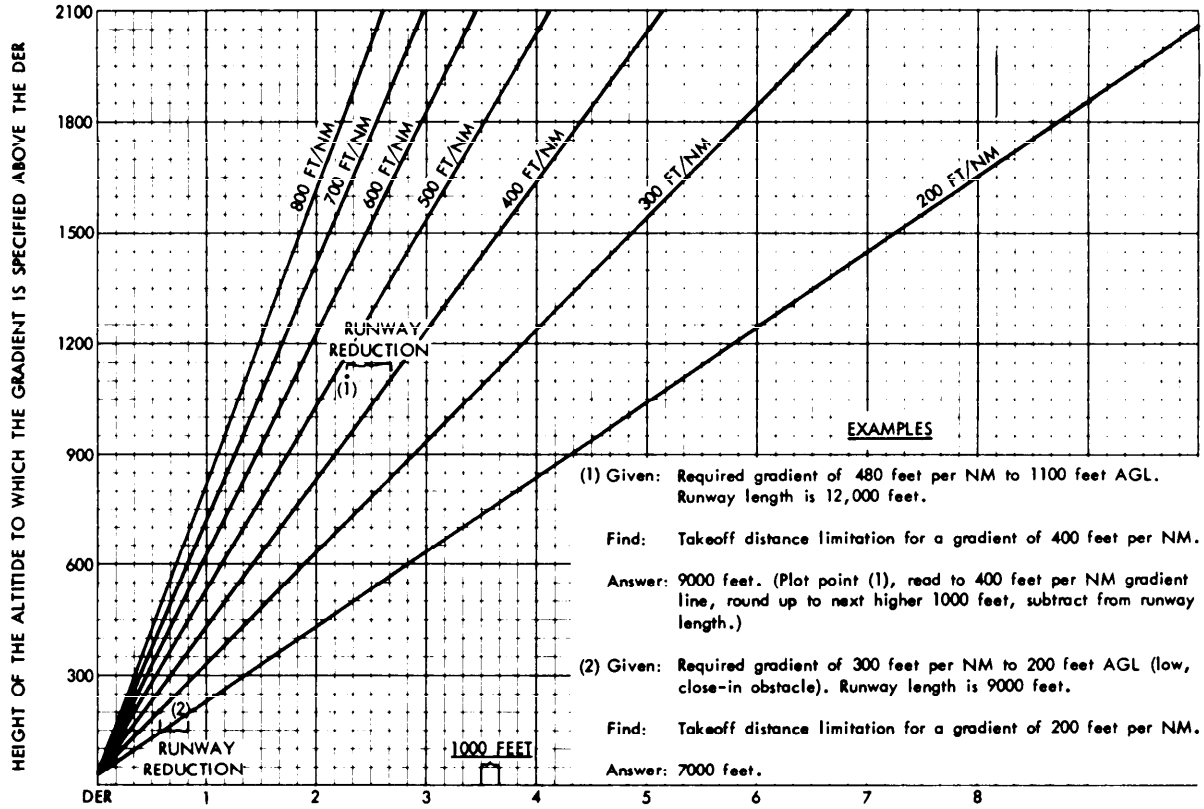


Figure 116N. DISTANCE FROM DER (NM) & RUNWAY REDUCTION (1000'S OF FEET).

will be computed from the origin of the Zone 2 or 3 OIS (as applicable) direct to the obstacle.

d. Climb gradients to 200 feet above DER or less shall not be specified. These gradients would normally be caused by low, close-in obstacles. The provisions of paragraph 1205e should be applied and/or a note published stating that the obstacle(s) exist and should be considered by the pilot.

e. When a climb gradient in excess of 400 feet per NM would be required, a reduction in that gradient for aircraft which use less than the full length of the runway shall be provided. A chart is available to reduce the computed gradient. See Figure 116N.

f. When a climb gradient is specified, it shall be parenthetically stated in climb rate expressed in feet per minute for average ground speeds of 150K, 200K, and additionally at elevations above 5,000 feet MSL at 250K. Example: climb gradient is 300 feet per NM to 3,000 feet MSL (750 feet per minute at 150K, 1,000 feet per minute at 200K).

1206. END OF DEPARTURE. The departure area terminates at a point where the 40:1 OIS, measured along the flight track, reaches the minimum altitude authorized for en route operations or radar vectoring, whichever is applicable.

1207. PUBLISHED INFORMATION. The minimum information to be published for departure procedures is specified as follows:

a. Diverse Departures. Departure restrictions shall be expressed as sectors to be avoided or sectors in which climb gradients and/or minimum altitudes are specified to enable an aircraft to safely overfly an obstacle. When more than one sector is involved, the climb gradient selected shall be the highest in any sector that may be expected to be overflown. The

altitude to which the gradient is specified must permit the aircraft to continue at 200 feet per NM minimum through that sector, a succeeding sector, or to an en route altitude. A fix may also be designated to mark the point at which a climb gradient in excess of 200 feet per NM is no longer required.

b. Departure Routes. A departure route must specify all courses, points, fixes, and altitudes required in the procedure. When obstacles must be overflown, minimum crossing altitudes and climb gradient information shall be provided for all departures requiring a climb gradient greater than 200 feet per NM. The altitude or fix at which a climb gradient in excess of 200 feet per NM is no longer required shall also be specified.

c. Early Turns. The early turn shall be expressed as a turn to a heading or to intercept a course as soon as practicable. When obstacles exist in Zone 1, a minimum ceiling value of 400 feet and a visibility value of at least one mile shall be published. In the event an early turn must be made toward an obstacle within 6 NM of the departure runway, and if no positive course guidance is available, a suitable climb gradient shall be published.

d. The resultant takeoff distance limitation when the provisions of paragraph 1205e are applied.

e. Ceiling and visibility minimums imposed in accordance with paragraph 1208.

f. When departures are limited to Categories A and B aircraft, the procedure shall be clearly annotated.

1208. REQUIRED CEILING AND VISIBILITY MINIMUMS. Procedures requiring a climb gradient in excess of 200 feet per NM shall also specify a ceiling and visibility to be used as an alternative for aircraft incapable of achieving the gradient. The ceiling value shall be the 100-foot increment above the controlling obstacle or above the altitude required over a specified point from which a 40:1 gradient will clear the obstacle. Ceilings of 200 feet or less shall not be specified. The visibility value shall be at least one mile.

1209.–1299. RESERVED.

* CHAPTER 14. SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITIES (SDF) PROCEDURES

1400. GENERAL. This chapter applies to approach procedures based on Simplified Directional Facilities (SDF). "SDF" is a directional aid facility providing only lateral guidance (front or back course) for approach from a final approach fix.

1401.-1409. RESERVED.

1410. FEEDER ROUTES. Criteria for feeder routes are contained in paragraph 220.

1411. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the initial approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 3 (see also Figures 44 and 45).

1412. INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the intermediate approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 4. See Figures 44 and 45.

1413. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach shall be made only "TOWARD" the facility, because of system characteristics. The final approach segment begins at the final approach fix and ends at the missed approach point.

a. Alignment. The alignment of the final approach course with the runway centerline determines whether a straight–in or circling–only approach may be established.

(1) **Straight-in.** The angle of convergence of the final approach course and the extended runway centerline shall not exceed 30°. The final approach course should be aligned to intersect the extended runway centerline 3,000 feet outward from the runway threshold. When an operational advantage can be achieved, this point of intersection may be established at any point between the threshold and a point 5,200 feet outward from the threshold. Also, where an operational advantage can be achieved, a final approach course which does not intersect the runway centerline, or which intersects it at a distance greater than 5,200 feet from the threshold, may be established, provided that such a course lies within 500 feet laterally of the extended runway centerline at a point 3,000 feet outward from the runway threshold. See Figure 48.

(2) **Circling Approach.** When the final approach course alignment does not meet the criteria for a straight–in landing, only a circling approach shall be authorized, and the course alignment should be made to the center of the landing area. When an operational advantage can be achieved, the final approach course may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing surface. See Figure 49.

b. Area. The area considered for obstacle clearance in the final approach segment starts at the final approach fix (FAF) and ends at, or abeam, the runway threshold. It is a portion of a 10-mile-long trapezoid which is centered longitudinally on the final approach course. See Figure 14-1. For 6° course width facilities, it is 1,000 feet wide at, or abeam, the runway threshold and expands uniformly to 19,228 feet at 10 miles from the threshold. For 12° course width facilities, it is 2,800 feet wide at, or abeam, the runway threshold and expands uniformly to a width of 21,028 feet at 10 miles from the threshold. For course widths between 6° and 12°, the area considered for obstacle clearance may be extrapolated from the 6° and 12° figures to the next intermediate whole degree. For example, the width of the obstacle clearance area for a 9° course width would start at 1,900 feet and expand to 20,148 feet. The OPTIMUM length of the final approach segment is 5 miles. The MAXIMUM length is 10 miles. The MINIMUM length of the final approach segment shall provide adequate distance for an aircraft to make the required descent, and to regain course alignment when a turn is required over the facility. Table 14 shall be used to determine the minimum length needed to regain the course. *

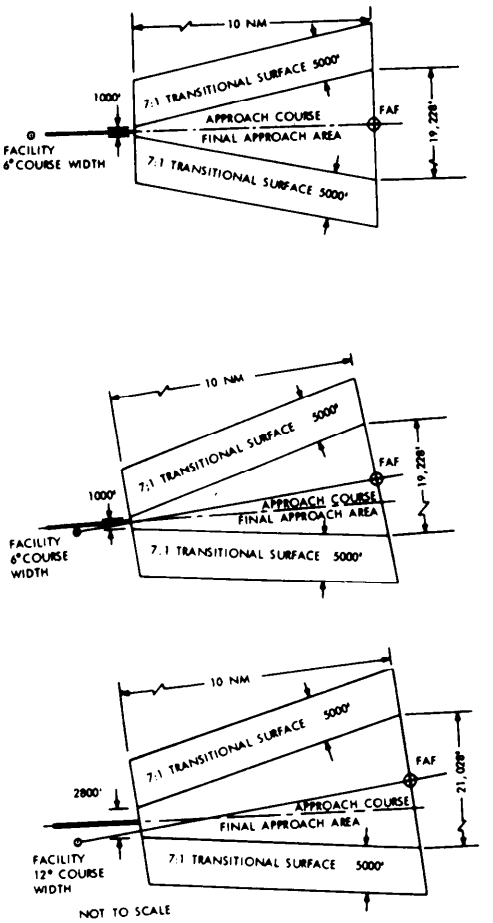


Figure 14–1. FINAL APPROACH AREAS WITH FAF.

c. Transitional Surfaces. Transitional surfaces are inclined planes with a slope of 7:1 which extend upward and outward 5,000 feet from the edge of the final approach area. The transitional surfaces begin at a height no less than 250 feet below the MDA.

d. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) **Straight–in Landing.** The minimum obstacle clearance in the final approach area shall be 250 feet. In addition, the MDA established for the final approach area shall assure that no obstacles penetrate the transitional surfaces.

(2) **Circling Approach.** In addition to the minimum requirements specified in paragraph 1413a(2), obstacle clearance in the circling area shall be as prescribed in Chapter 2, Section 6.

e. Descent Gradient. Criteria for descent gradient are specified in paragraph 513d.

f. Use of Fixes. Criteria for the use of radio fixes are contained in Chapter 2, Section 2.

g. Minimum Descent Altitudes. Criteria for determining the MDA are contained in Chapter 3, Section 2.

1414. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. Criteria for the missed approach segment are contained in Chapter 2, Section 7. For SDF procedures, the missed approach point is a point on the final approach course which is NOT farther from the final approach fix than the runway threshold (first usable portion of the landing area for circling). The missed approach surface shall commence over the missed approach point at the required height. See paragraph 274, missed approach obstacle clearance.

1415. BACK COURSE PROCEDURES. Back course SDF procedures may be developed using these criteria except that the beginning point of the final approach obstacle clearance trapezoid is at the facility.

1416.–1499. RESERVED.

* CHAPTER 15. AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV)

1500. GENERAL. This chapter applies to instrument procedures based on airborne area navigation (RNAV) systems. Separate criteria are presented for VOR/DME and non-VOR/DME RNAV systems.

a. VOR/DME Systems. This includes systems using signals based solely upon VOR/DME, VORTAC, and TACAN facilities. VOR/DME is synonymous with the terms VORTAC or TACAN.

b. Non-VOR/DME Systems.

(1) Self-contained systems, including inertial (INS) and Doppler.

(2) Satellite systems, currently including only the global positioning system (GPS).

(3) Other ground-based systems, such as Loran-C, Omega, Rho-Rho, etc.

(4) Multi-sensor systems; those which use a combination of input information.

1501. TERMINOLOGY. The following terms, peculiar to RNAV procedures, are defined as follows:

a. Airport (APT) Waypoint (WP). A waypoint located on the final approach course at or abeam the first usable landing surface, which is used for construction of the final approach area for a circling-only approach.

b. Alongtrack Distance (ATD) Fix. The ATD fix is an alongtrack position defined as a distance in NM, with reference to the next waypoint.

c. Alongtrack (ATRK) Fix Displacement Tolerance. Fix displacement tolerance along the flight track.

d. Crosstrack (XTRK) Fix Displacement Tolerance. Fix displacement tolerance to the left or right of the flight track.

e. Instrument Approach Waypoint. Fixes used in defining RNAV instrument approach procedures, including the feeder waypoint (FWP), the initial approach waypoint (IAWP), the intermediate waypoint (IWP), the final approach waypoint (FAWP), the runway waypoint (RWY WP), and the airport waypoint (APT WP), when required.

f. Non-VOR/DME RNAV is not dependent upon a reference facility and will hereinafter be referred to as non-VOR/DME, which includes the following:

(1) Long Range Navigation (Loran-C). Loran-C is a radionavigation system which allows position determination by measuring the difference in time of arrival of pulses from 100 kHz transmitting stations. Groups of three to five of these stations are operated together as a "chain." Specific Loran-C criteria may be developed when performance standards reflecting the full capability of Loran-C are published. Until separate Loran-C criteria are developed, non-VOR/DME criteria apply.

(2) Omega. A low frequency navigation system using precise timed pulsed signals from eight ground transmitting stations spaced long distances apart. Limited to en route only.

(3) Global Positioning System (GPS). GPS will provide three-dimensional position and velocity information to users anywhere in the world. The position determinations are based on the measurement of the transit time of RF (radio frequency) signals from satellites in the constellation. GPS is in the testing and development stage. Specific GPS criteria may be developed when performance standards reflecting the full capability of GPS are published. Until separate GPS criteria are developed, non-VOR/DME criteria apply.

(4) Inertial Navigation System (INS). A self-contained system which utilizes gyros to determine angular motion and accelerometers to determine linear motion. They are integrated with computers to provide several conditions which include true heading, true air speed, wind, glidepath, velocity, and position.

(5) Doppler. A self-contained system which determines velocity and position by the frequency shift of a signal transmitted from the

aircraft and reflected from the surface back to the aircraft.

(6) Rho-Rho. A system based on two or more DME ground facilities.

(7) Multi-Sensor System. Based on any VOR/DME or non-VOR/DME certified approved system or a combination of certified approved systems. The non-VOR/DME criteria apply.

g. Reference Facility. A VOR/DME, VORTAC, or TACAN facility used for the identification and establishment of an RNAV route, waypoint, or standard instrument approach procedure.

h. RNAV Descent Angle. A vertical angle defining a descending flightpath from the FAF to the RWY WP.

i. Routes. Two subsequently related waypoints or ATD fixes define a route segment.

(1) Jet/victor routes.

(2) Random routes. Any airway not established under the jet/victor designation. This is normally used to refer to a route that is not based on VOR radials and requires an RNAV system.

j. Runway WP. A waypoint located at the runway threshold and used for construction of the final approach area when the final approach course meets straight-in alignment criteria.

k. Tangent Point (TP). The point on the VOR/DME RNAV route centerline from which a line perpendicular to the route centerline would pass through the reference facility.

l. Tangent Point Distance (TPD). Distance from the reference facility to the tangent point.

m. Time Difference (TD) Corrections. Loran-C systems use the time of signal travel from ground facilities to the aircraft to compute distance and position. The time of signal travel varies seasonally within certain geographical areas. The TD correction factor is used to correct these seasonal variations for each geographical area. RNAV criteria assume local TD corrections will be applied.

n. Turn Anticipation. The capability of RNAV systems to determine the point along a course, prior to a turn waypoint, where a turn should be initiated to provide a smooth path to intercept the succeeding course, and to annunciate the information to the pilot.

o. Turn Waypoint. A waypoint which identifies a change from one course to another.

p. VOR/DME RNAV is dependent on VOR/DME, VORTAC, or TACAN. It is a system using radials and distances to compute position and flight track and will hereinafter be referred to as VOR/DME.

q. Waypoint (WP). A predetermined geographical position used for route definition and/or progress reporting purposes that is defined by latitude/longitude. For VOR/DME systems, it is defined also by the radial/distance of the position from the reference facility.

r. Waypoint Displacement Area. The rectangular area formed around and centered on the plotted position of a waypoint. Its dimensions are plus-and-minus the appropriate alongtrack and crosstrack fix displacement tolerance values which are found in tables 15-1, 15-2, and 15-3.

1502. PROCEDURE CONSTRUCTION. RNAV procedural construction requirements are as follows:

a. Reference Facility. An RNAV approach procedure shall be supported by a single reference facility.

b. Waypoints. A WP shall be used to identify the point at which RNAV begins and the point at which RNAV ends, except when the RNAV portion of the procedure terminates at the missed approach point (MAP), and the MAP is an ATD fix.

c. Segment. Approach segments begin and end at the WP or ATD fix.

(1) The segment area considered for obstacle clearance begins at the earliest point the WP or ATD fix can be received and, except for the final approach segment, ends at the plotted position of the fix.

(2) Segment length is based on the distance between the plotted positions of the WP or ATD fix defining the segment ends.

(3) Segment width (primary and secondary areas), at the earliest point, shall be the same as the width of the adjacent preceding segment at that point. Segment widths are specified in appropriate paragraphs of this chapter, but in no case will they be narrower than XTRK fix displacement tolerances for that segment.

(4) Minimum segment widths are also determined/limited in part according to WP location relative to the reference facility. This limiting relationship is depicted in figure 15-2 and explained in the note following figure 15-2.

d. Fix Displacement. Except in the case of the MAP overlapping the RWY WP or APT WP (see paragraph 1532), the ATRK fix displacement tolerance shall not overlap the plotted position of the adjacent fix. Additionally, except for a turn at a MAP designated by a WP, WP displacement tolerances shall be oriented along the courses leading to and from the respective WP. See figure 15-17.

e. Turning Areas. Turning area expansion criteria shall be applied to all turns, en route and terminal, where a change of direction of more than 15° is involved. See paragraphs 1510c and 1520.

f. Cone of Ambiguity. The primary obstacle clearance area at the minimum segment altitude shall not be within the cone of ambiguity of the reference facility. If the primary area for the desired course lies within the cone of ambiguity, the course should be relocated or the facility flight inspected to verify that the signal is adequate within the area. FAA Order 9840.1, U.S. National Aviation Handbook for the VOR/DME/TACAN Systems, defines the vertical angle coverage. Azimuth signal information permitting satisfactory performance of airborne components is not provided beyond the following ranges:

(1) VOR - beyond 60° above the radio horizon.

(2) TACAN - beyond 40° above the radio horizon. See figure 15-1.

g. Use of ATD Fixes. ATD fixes are normally used in lieu of approach waypoints when no course change is required at that point. An ATD fix shall not be used in lieu of a RWY WP. The final approach fix (FAF), MAP, and any stepdown fixes may be defined by ATD fixes. Consistent with operational need, flyability, and fix displacement tolerance overlap restrictions, there is no maximum number of stepdown fixes in any segment. Multiple stepdown fixes shall be defined in whole nautical mile (NM) increments.

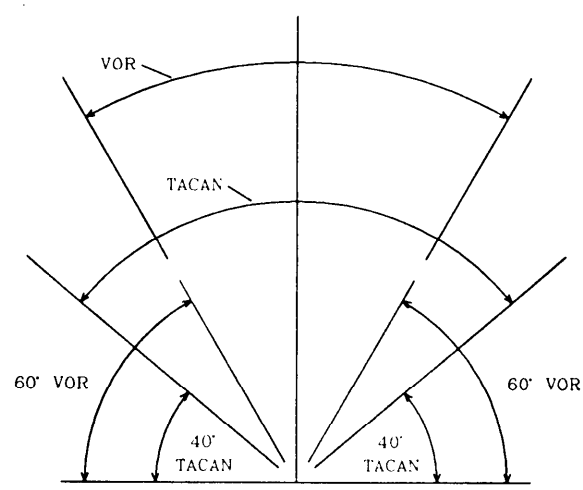


Figure 15-1. CONES OF AMBIGUITY.
Paragraph 1502.

AREA NAVIGATION
ROUTE WIDTH SUMMARY
DISTANCE ALONG-TRACK FROM TANGENT POINT

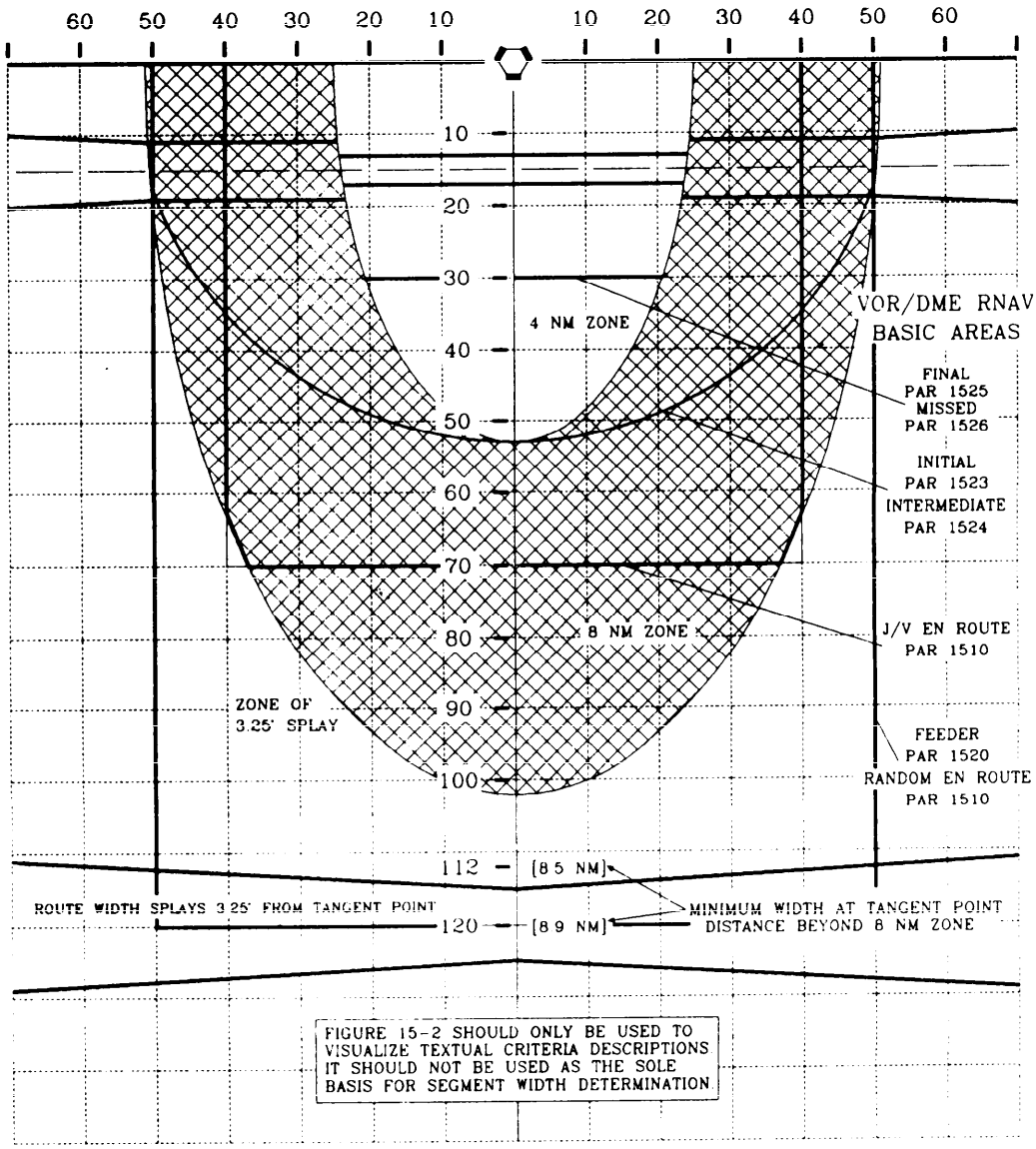


Figure 15-2
Paragraph 1502

NOTE: Segment width (for instance at a specific WP) is based upon a mathematical relationship between TPD, and the ATD from the TP, at that point. This relationship is represented by the two elliptical curves shown on figure 15-2. One curve encloses the "4 NM ZONE" wherein the segment primary area width is ± 2 miles from route centerline. The other curve encloses the "8 NM ZONE" wherein the segment primary area width is ± 4 miles from route centerline.

The formula for the 4 NM ZONE curve is: $\frac{X^2}{(25.5)^2} + \frac{Y^2}{(53)^2} = 1$

The formula for the 8 NM ZONE curve is: $\frac{X^2}{(51)^2} + \frac{Y^2}{(102)^2} = 1$

where X = ATD from the TP
and, Y = TPD

APPLICATION:

4 NM ZONE: To determine the maximum acceptable ATD value associated with a given TPD value and still allow segment primary width at ± 2 miles.

Given: TPD = 40 miles (this is the Y-term)
Find: ATD value (this is the X-term)

$$X = 25.5 \quad 1 - \frac{Y^2}{(53)^2}$$

$$X = 25.5 \quad 1 - \frac{(40)^2}{(53)^2} = 16.73 \text{ miles}$$

i.e., for TPD at 40 miles, if the ATD exceeds 16.73 miles, the primary area width must be expanded to ± 4 miles.

8 NM ZONE: Given: ATD = 30 miles
Find: TPD Maximum for ± 4 miles width

$$Y = 102 \quad 1 - \frac{X^2}{(51)^2}$$

$$Y = 102 \quad 1 - \frac{(30)^2}{(51)^2} = 82.49 \text{ miles}$$

i.e., for ATD at 30 miles, the TPD must not exceed 82.49 miles and still allow ± 4 miles width.

APPLICATION: The formulas can tell you whether the specific point is inside or outside either zone area. For instance:

Given: ATD = 40 miles, and TPD = 65 miles.
Determine if the location is within the 8 NM ZONE.

The basic formula for the 8 NM ZONE is an equation made equal to 1. By substituting the specific values (ATD = 40, and TPD = 65), the point will be determined to be OUTSIDE the zone if the resultant is > 1, and INSIDE the zone if the resultant is < or = to 1.

$$\frac{X^2}{(51)^2} + \frac{Y^2}{(102)^2} = 1$$

by substitution:

$$\frac{(40)^2}{(51)^2} + \frac{(65)^2}{(102)^2} = 0.615 + 0.406 = 1.021$$

Since this is > 1, the point lies OUTSIDE the 8 NM ZONE.

For distances beyond 102 miles of the TPD, the route width expands an additional 0.25 miles each side of the route centerline for each 10 miles the TPD is beyond 102 miles.

Example: 112-102 = 10 NM beyond TPD 102.

a. (10 NM/10 NM) x .25 NM (rate per 10 NM) = 0.25 increase.

b. 0.25 NM + 4 NM = 4.25 NM each side centerline.

c. 4.25 x 2 = 8.5 NM (total width) at the 112 TPD.

h. Positive Course Guidance. All RNAV segments shall be based on positive course guidance, except that a missed approach segment without positive course guidance may be developed when considered to provide operational advantages and can be allowed within the obstacle environment.

1503. IDENTIFICATION OF RNAV INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURES (IAP). Instrument approach procedures based on RNAV are identified by a prefix describing the navigational system followed by the term RNAV and runway number/letter as appropriate; i.e., LORAN RNAV RWY 20, VOR/DME RNAV RWY 20, GPS RNAV RWY 20, RIIO-RIIO RNAV RWY 20, MULTI-SENSOR RNAV RWY 20, or LORAN RNAV-A.

1504. REFERENCE FACILITIES. Reference facilities shall have collocated VOR and DME components. For terminal procedures, components within 100 feet of each other are defined as collocated. For en route procedures, components within 2,000 feet of each other are defined as collocated.

1505. WAYPOINTS. RNAV waypoints are used for navigation reference and for air traffic control operational fixes, similar to VOR/DME ground stations, and intersections used in the conventional VOR structures.

a. Establishment. Waypoints shall be established along RNAV routes at the following points:

(1) At end points;

(2) At points where the route changes course;

(3) At holding fixes; and,

(4) At other points of operational benefit, such as route junction points which require clarity.

(5) For VOR/DME WP's, one WP must be associated with each reference facility used for en route navigation requirements. If a segment length exceeds 80 miles and no turning requirement exists along the route, establish a WP at the TP.

b. WP. WP placement is limited by the type of RNAV system as follows:

(1) No VOR/DME WP's or route segments shall be established outside of the service volume of the reference facility and shall be limited to the values contained in tables 15-1 and 15-2.

(2) No non-VOR/DME WP's or route segments shall be established outside of the area in which the particular system signal has been approved for IFR operation.

(3) Self-contained systems such as INS and Doppler do not have limitations on WP placement.

(4) Fix Displacement Tolerances. Tables 15-1 and 15-2 show fix displacement tolerances for VOR/DME systems. Table 15-3 shows fix displacement tolerances for non-VOR/DME systems. When the fix is an ATD fix, the alongtrack fix and crosstrack displacement tolerances are considered to be the same as a WP located at that fix.

c. **Defined WP Requirements.**

(1) VOR/DME WP's. Each WP shall be defined by:

(a) A VOR radial - developed to the nearest hundredth of a degree;

(b) DME distance - developed to the nearest hundredth of a mile; and

(c) Latitude/longitude - in degrees, minutes, and seconds to the nearest hundredth.

(2) Non-VOR/DME WP's. Each WP shall be defined by latitude and longitude in degrees, minutes, and seconds developed to the nearest hundredth. Rho-Rho WP's shall also be developed to the nearest hundredth of a mile.

(3) Station elevation of the reference facility shall be defined and rounded to the nearest 20-foot increment.

1506. RWY WP AND APT WP. Straight-in procedures shall incorporate a WP at the runway threshold. Circling procedures shall incorporate an APT WP at or abeam the first usable landing surface. See figure 15-3. These WP's are used to establish the length and width of the final approach area.

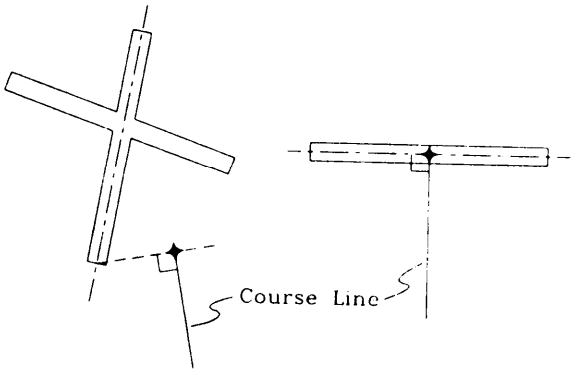


Figure 15-3. LOCATION OF AIRPORT WP. Paragraph 1506.

1507. HOLDING. Chapter 2, section 9, applies, except for paragraph 292d. When holding is at an RNAV fix, the selected pattern shall be large enough to contain the entire area of the fix displacement tolerance within the primary area of the holding pattern.

a. **VOR/DME Pattern Size Selection.** For VOR/DME, the distance from the WP to the reference facility shall be applied as the "fix-to-NAVAID distance" in FAA Order 7130.3, Holding Pattern Criteria, figure 3, pattern-template selection.

b. **Non-VOR/DME Pattern Size Selection.** For non-VOR/DME, use the 15-29.9 NM distance column for terminal holding procedure and 30 NM or over column for en route holding, FAA Order 7130.3.

1508-1509. RESERVED.

SECTION 1. EN ROUTE CRITERIA.

1510. EN ROUTE OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREAS. En route obstacle clearance areas are identified as primary and secondary. These designations apply to straight and turning segment obstacle clearance areas. The required angle of turn connecting en route segments to other en route, feeder, or initial approach segments, shall not exceed 120°. Where the turn exceeds 15°, expanded turning area construction methods in paragraph 1510c apply.

a. Primary Area. The primary obstacle clearance area is described as follows:

(1) VOR/DME Basic Area. The area is 4 miles each side of the route centerline, when the TPD is 102 miles or less and the TPD/ATD values do not exceed the limits of the 8 NM zone. The route width increases at an angle of 3.25° as the ATD increases for that portion of the area where the route centerline lies outside the 8 NM zone. See figure 15-4. When the TPD exceeds the 102-mile limit, the minimum width at the TPD expands greater than ± 4 miles at a rate of 0.25 miles on each side of the route for each 10 miles the TPD is beyond 102 miles. See figures 15-2, 15-5, and table 15-1. When the widths of adjoining route segments are unequal for reasons other than transition of zone boundaries, the following apply:

(a) If the TP of the narrower segment is on the route centerline, the width of the narrower segment includes that additional airspace within the lateral extremity of the wider segment, where the route segments join, thence toward the TP of the narrower route segment until intersecting the boundary of the narrower segment. See figure 15-6.

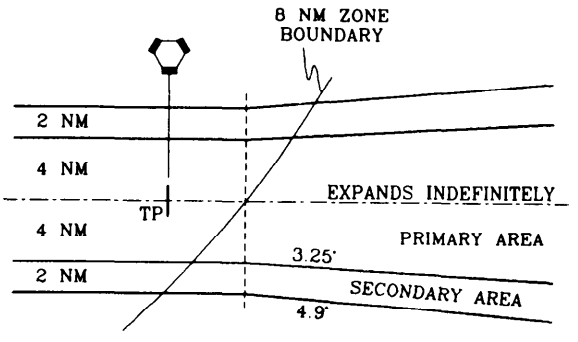


Figure 15-4. VOR/DME
BASIC AREA
Paragraphs 1510a(1), 1510b(1), and 1512b(1)(a).

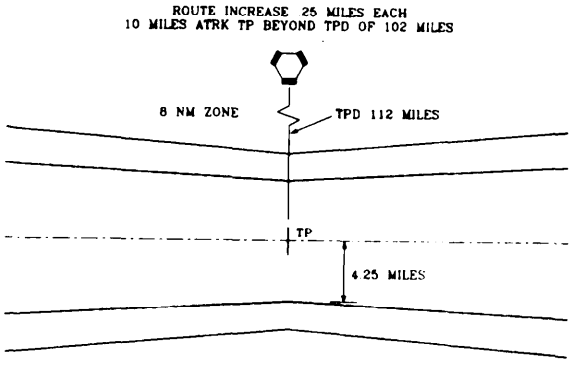


Figure 15-5. VOR/DME
BASIC AREA.
Paragraphs 1510a(1) and b(1).

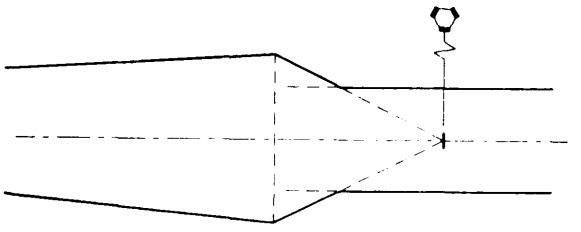


Figure 15-6.
UNEQUAL JOINING ROUTE SEGMENTS.
Paragraph 1510a(1)(a).

(b) If the TP of the narrower segment is on the route centerline extended, the width of the narrower segment includes that additional airspace within lines from the lateral extremity of the wider segment where the route segments join, thence toward the TP until reaching the point where the narrower segment terminates, changes direction, or until intersecting the boundary of the narrower segment. See figure 15-7.

(2) Non-VOR/DME Basic Area. The area is 4 miles each side of the route centerline at all points. Non-VOR/DME primary boundary lines do not splay.

(3) Termination Point. An RNAV route termination point shall be at a WP. The primary area extends beyond the route termination point. The boundary of the area is defined by an arc which connects the two primary boundary lines. The center of the arc is located at the most distant point on the edge of the WP displacement area on the route centerline. See figure 15-8.

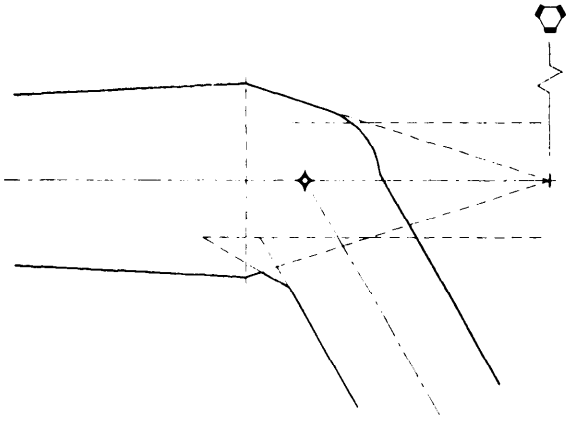


Figure 15-7. UNEQUAL JOINING ROUTE SEGMENTS WITH A TURN. Paragraph 1510a(1)(b).

b. Secondary Areas.

(1) VOR/DME Basic Area. The VOR/DME secondary obstacle clearance area extends 2 miles on each side of the primary area and splays 4.9° where the primary splays at 3.25°. See figure 15-4.

(2) Non-VOR/DME Basic Area. The non-VOR/DME secondary obstacle clearance areas are a constant 2-mile lateral extension on each side of the primary area.

(3) Termination Point. The secondary obstacle clearance area extends beyond the arc which defines the termination point primary area by an amount equal to the width of the secondary area at the latest point the waypoint can be received. See figure 15-8.

c. Construction of Expanded Turning Areas. Obstacle clearance areas shall be expanded to accommodate turns of more than 15°. The primary and secondary obstacle clearance turning areas are expanded by outside and inside areas. See figure 15-9. The inside expansion area is constructed to accommodate a turn anticipation area. Outside expansion area is provided to accommodate overshoot at high speeds and excessive wind conditions. No portion of the primary area at the minimum segment altitude may be in the cone of ambiguity for VOR/DME RNAV routes.

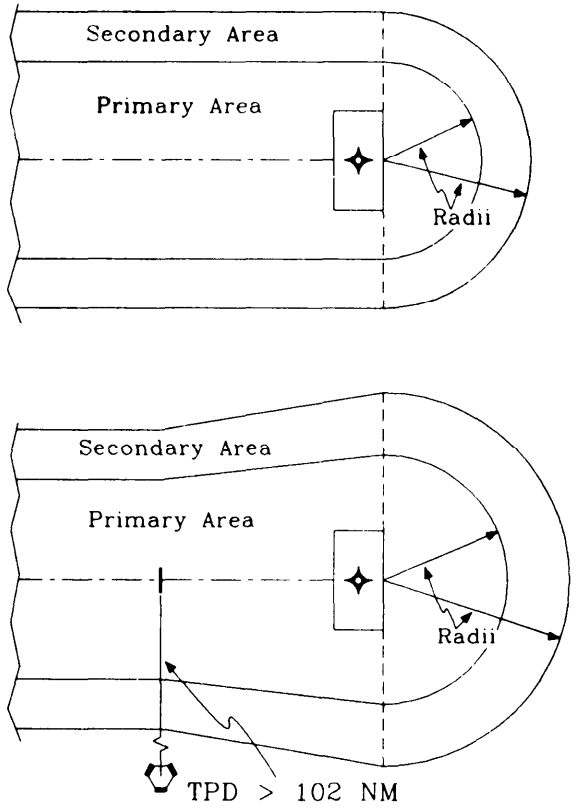


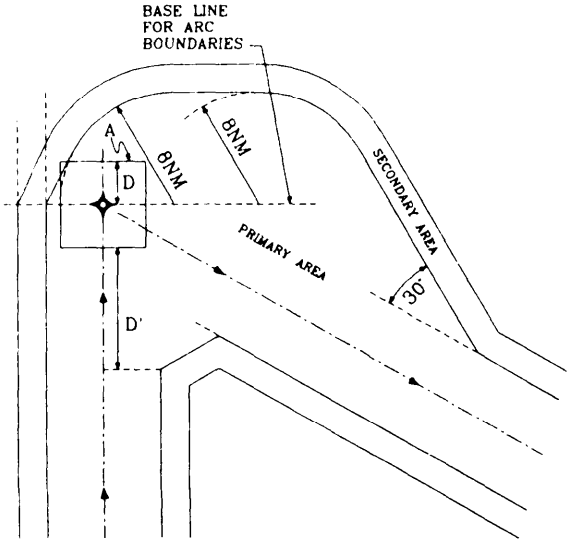
Figure 15-8. TERMINATION POINTS. Paragraphs 1510a(3) and 1510b(3).

(1) Outside Expansion Area. Determine the expanded area at the outside of the turn as follows:

(a) Construct a line perpendicular to the route centerline 3 miles prior to the latest point the fix can be received or to a line perpendicular to the route centerline at the plotted position of the fix, whichever occurs last. For altitudes 10,000 feet or greater, construct a line perpendicular to the plotted position of the fix. This perpendicular line is a base line for constructing arc boundaries.

(b) From a point on the base line, strike an 8-mile arc from the outer line of the fix displacement area on the outside of the turn to a tangent line to a second 8-mile arc. The second arc

is struck from a point on the base line inside the inner line of the fix displacement area to a 30° tangent line to the primary boundary line. From a point where an extension of the base line intersects the primary area outer boundary line, connect the 8-mile arc with a line tangent to the arc.



D – 3NM FROM LINE A; HOWEVER, BASELINE IS NOT PRIOR TO PLOTTED POSITION OF FIX.
D' – IAW PARAGRAPHS 1510c(2)(b) 1, 2, AND 3

Figure 15-9. EXPANDED TURNING AREAS. Paragraph 1510c.

(c) Strike arcs from the center points used for the primary area expansion and provide a parallel expansion of 2 miles of the secondary area at the turn.

(d) Connect the extremities with a straight-line tangent to the two associated arcs.

(e) Draw the remaining secondary area boundary 2 miles outside the boundary of the primary area.

(f) If the width of the primary area at the turn point is greater than 8 miles, the expanded area is constructed in the same manner, as outlined in paragraph 1510c(1), using the primary area width at the point where the route changes course as the radius of the arc in place of 8 NM and constructing the secondary area of constant width equal to the width of the secondary area at the turn point.

(2) Inside Expansion Area. Determine the expanded area at the inside of the turn as follows:

(a) Determine the fix area by application of the ATRK and XTRK fix displacement tolerances.

(b) Prior to the earliest point the WP (oriented along the course leading to the fix) can be received, locate a point on the primary area boundary at one of the following distances:

1 Three miles below 10,000 feet MSL; three and one-half miles when the turn exceeds 112°.

2 Seven miles for 10,000 feet MSL up to but not including FL 180.

3 Twelve miles for FL 180 and above.

(c) From this point, splay the primary area by an angle equal to one-half of the course change.

(d) Draw the secondary area boundary 2 miles outside the boundary of the primary area.

d. TPD/WP Limitation. WP's for the Jet/Victor Airway structure shall be limited to the 8 NM zone, a TPD of 70 miles or less, and an ATD fix from the tangent point of 40 miles or less. WP's for random airway structure shall be limited to a TPD of 120 miles or less and an ATD fix from the tangent point of 50 miles.

e. Joining RNAV with Non-RNAV Route Segments.

(1) If the RNAV and non-RNAV segments have the same width at the point of transition, the segments are joined at that location and RNAV criteria are continued in the direction of the RNAV segment.

(2) If the RNAV segment is narrower at the location of the transition, the segments shall be joined according to paragraph 1512b(1)(b).

(3) If the RNAV segment is wider at the location of the transition, the boundaries shall taper from the transition location toward the non-

RNAV segment at an angle of 30° until joining the boundaries at the RNAV segments. If the location of transition includes a turn, the width of the RNAV segment is maintained and the turn area constructed according to this chapter. After the completion of the turn area, the boundaries shall taper at an angle of 30° until passing the non-RNAV boundaries.

1511. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Paragraphs 1720 and 1721 apply, except that the width of the VOR/DME secondary area is 2 miles at the point of splay initiation and the value 236 feet for each additional mile in paragraph 1721 is changed to 176 feet/NM. Non-VOR/DME systems do not splay. Obstacles in the secondary area are measured perpendicular to the course centerline, except for the expanded turn areas. Obstacles in these areas are measured perpendicular to the primary area boundary, or its tangent, to the obstacle.

1512. FEEDER ROUTES. When the initial approach WP is not part of the en route structure, it may be necessary to designate feeder routes from the en route structure to another feeder WP or the IAWP.

a. The required angle of turn for the feeder-to-feeder and feeder-to-initial segment connections shall not exceed 120°. Where the angle exceeds 15°, turning area criteria in section 2 apply. En route vertical and lateral airway obstacle clearance criteria shall apply to feeder routes. The minimum altitudes established for feeder routes shall not be less than the altitude established at the IAWP. WP's for feeder routes shall be limited to a TPD of 120 miles or less and an ATD fix from the tangent point of 50 miles or less.

b. Obstacle Clearance Areas. Obstacle clearance areas are identified as primary and secondary. These designations apply to straight segment and turning segment obstacle clearance areas.

(1) Primary Area. The primary obstacle clearance area is derived from figure 15-2 and the associated formulas. It is described as follows:

(a) VOR/DME Basic Area. The area is 4 miles each side of the route centerline when the TPD is 102 miles or less and the TPD/ATD values do not exceed the limits of the 8 NM zone. The route width increases at an angle of 3.25° as the ATD increases for that portion of the area where the route centerline lies outside the 8 NM zone. See figure 15-4. When the TPD exceeds the 102-mile limit, the minimum width at the TP increases at a rate of 0.25 miles on each side of the route centerline for each 10 miles the TPD is beyond 102 miles. Methodology for joining route segments of differing widths is contained in paragraph 1510a(1). See table 15-2.

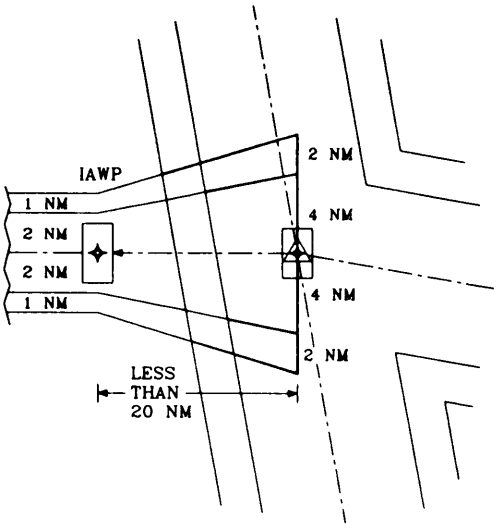
(b) Non-VOR/DME Basic Area. The area is 4 miles each side of the course centerline at all points, except for the 20-mile portion of the course just prior to the IAWP where it tapers linearly from 4 miles to 2 miles each side of centerline. Where a WP or a fix is located less than 20 miles prior to the IAWP, the taper begins at that point. See figure 15-10.

(2) Secondary Areas.

(a) VOR/DME Basic Areas. Secondary obstacle clearance areas extend laterally 2 miles on each side of the primary area and splay 4.9° in the region where the primary area splays at 3.25°. See figure 15-11 and paragraph 1512b(1)(a).

(b) Non-VOR/DME Basic Area. Non-VOR/DME secondary areas are a constant 2-mile lateral extension on each side of the primary area, except where the basic area tapers as specified in paragraph 1512b(1)(b). Over this area, the secondary area tapers linearly from 2 miles each side of the primary to 1 mile each side of the primary area.

(3) Obstacle Clearance. Paragraph 232c applies.



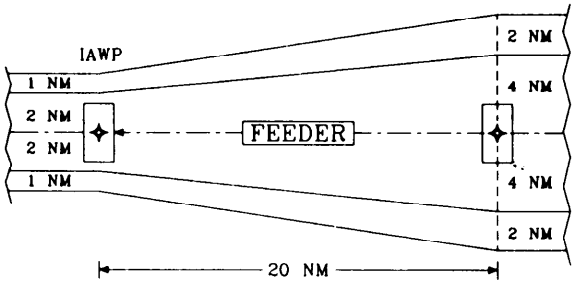


Figure 15-10. FEEDER ROUTES CONNECTING NON-VOR/DME BASIC AREAS. Paragraph 1512b(1)(b).

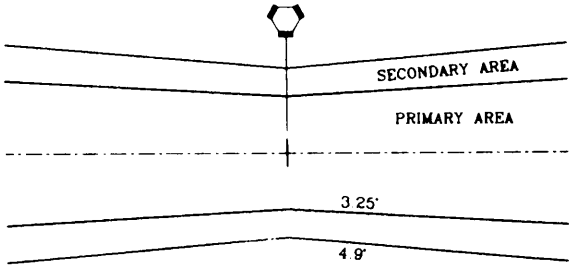


Figure 15-11. VOR/DME SECONDARY AREAS SPLAY 4.9°. Paragraph 1512b(2)(a)

1513-1519. RESERVED.

SECTION 2. TERMINAL CRITERIA.

1520. TERMINAL TURNING AREA EXPANSION. Obstacle clearance areas shall be expanded to accommodate turn anticipation. Outside expansion is not required for terminal procedures. Inside expansion applies to all turns of more than 15° within standard instrument approach procedures, except turns at the MAP. Paragraph 1529 satisfies early turn requirements for the MAP. Determine the expanded area at the inside of the turn as follows:

a. **Determine the ATRK Fix Displacement Tolerance.**

b. **Locate a point on the edge** of the primary area at a distance prior to the earliest point the WP can be received. The DTA (distance of turn anticipation) is measured parallel to the course leading to the fix and is determined by the turn anticipation formula:

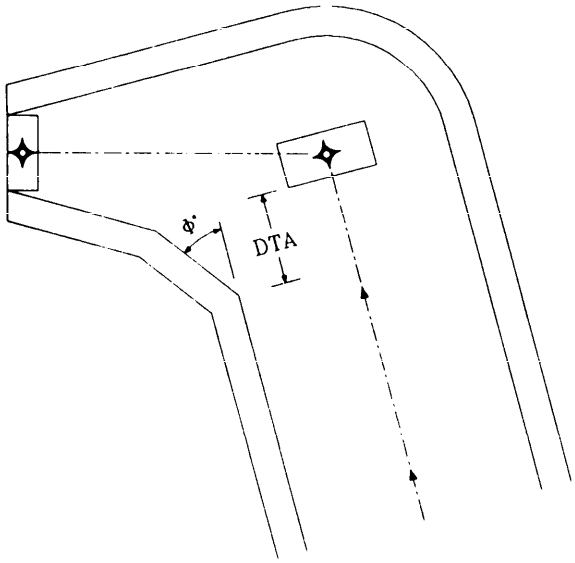
$$DTA = 2 \times \tan(\text{turn angle} \div 2)$$

c. **From this point,** splay the primary area by an angle equal to one-half of the course change. See figure 15-12.

d. **Secondary Area Boundary:**

(1) When the obstacle clearance area boundaries of the preceding and following segments of the WP are parallel with the course centerline, construct the secondary area boundary, parallel with the expanded turn anticipation primary area boundary, using the width of the preceding segment secondary area.

(2) When the obstacle clearance area boundaries of the preceding and/or following segments taper, construct the secondary area boundary by connecting the secondary area at points abeam the primary expansion area where it connects to the preceding/following segments of the primary area boundaries.



Φ' = 1/2 COURSE CHANGE
DTA = 2 NM x TAN(Φ')

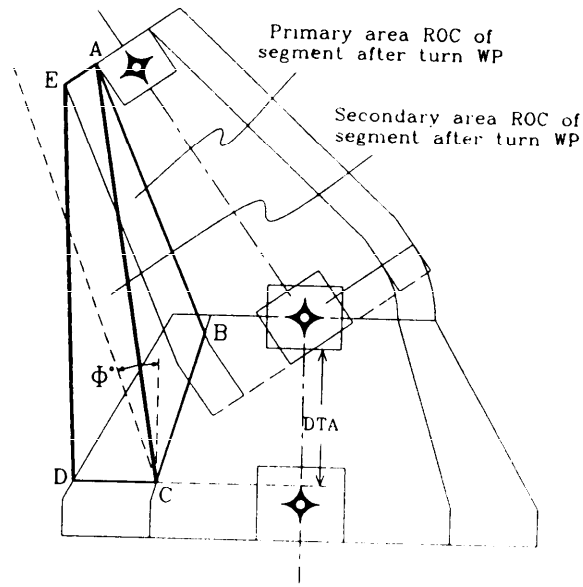
Figure 15-12. TURN ANTICIPATION SPLAY. Paragraph 1520.

e. When the boundary of the expanding turn area will not connect with the boundary of the primary area of the following segment, join the expanded area at the boundary abeam the plotted position of the next waypoint or at the latest reception point of the RWY WP or APT WP, as appropriate. See figure 15-13.

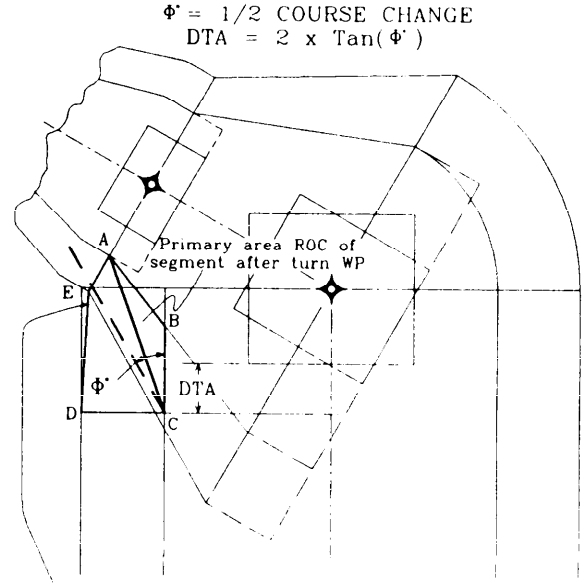
f. Obstacle Evaluation of the Expanded Area. Evaluate the primary and secondary expansion areas using the ROC for the segment following the turn waypoint. See figures 15-13 and 15-14.

1521. INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The initial approach segment begins at the IAWP and ends at the IWP. See figures 15-15, 15-16, and 15-17. For VOR/DME systems, the distance from the reference facility to the IAWP shall not exceed 53 miles, nor exceed the TPD or ATD values associated with the limits of the 8 NM zone. See figure 15-2.

a. Alignment. The angle of intercept between the initial and intermediate segment shall not exceed 120°.



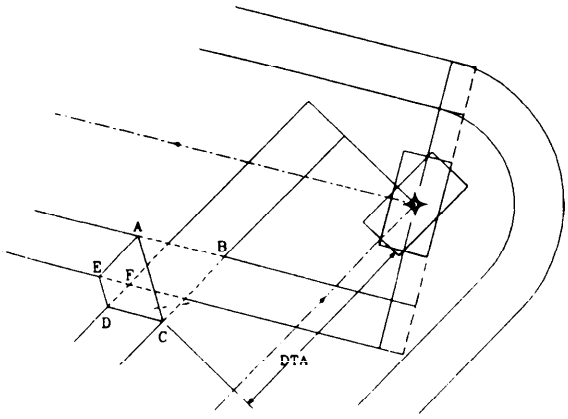
Φ' = 1/2 COURSE CHANGE
DTA = 2 x Tan(Φ')



NOTE: Secondary area boundary line for expanded area. Enclosed areas A, B, C are primary areas using ROC of segment following turn WP. Enclosed areas A, C, D, E are secondary areas using ROC of segment following turn WP. Obstacle slope in these areas are perpendicular to lines AC.

Figure 15-13. SHALLOW-ANGLED TURN ANTICIPATION ILLUSTRATIONS. TAPERING INTERMEDIATE AND CONSTANT WIDTH SEGMENT. ROC APPLICATIONS. Paragraphs 1520e and f.

b. Course Reversal. When the procedure requires a course reversal, a holding pattern shall be established in lieu of a procedure turn. Paragraph 1507 applies. If holding is established over the FAF, the FAF shall be a WP, and paragraph 234e(1) applies. The course alignment shall be within 15° of the final approach course. If holding is established over the IWP, paragraph 234e(2) applies. The course alignment shall be within 15° of the intermediate course. Where a feeder segment leads to the course reversal, the feeder segment shall terminate at the plotted position of the holding WP. See figure 15-15.



Enclosed area A, B, C is primary area ROC of segment following turn WP. Area A, C, D, E is secondary area ROC of segment following turn WP. Obstacle slope in this area is perpendicular to line A-C.

Figure 15-14. TURN ANTICIPATION AREAS. Paragraph 1520f.

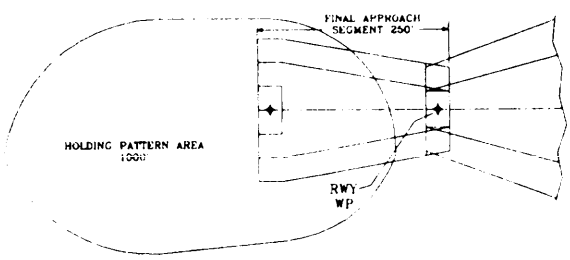


Figure 15-15. HOLDING PATTERN AND FINAL APPROACH, AND ASSOCIATED ROC. Paragraph 1521b.

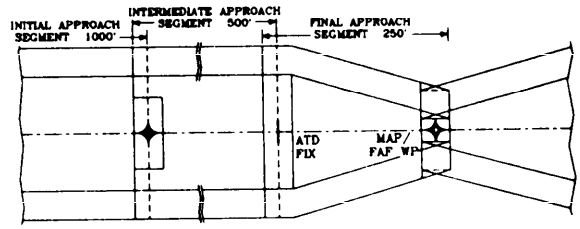


Figure 15-16. INITIAL, INTERMEDIATE, FINAL APPROACH, AND ASSOCIATED ROC. Paragraphs 1521, 1522, 1523.

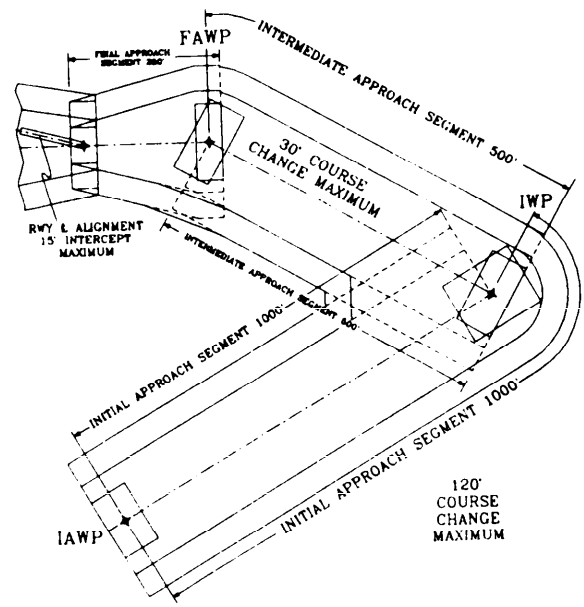


Figure 15-17. INITIAL, INTERMEDIATE, FINAL APPROACH, AND ASSOCIATED ROC. Paragraphs 1521, 1522, and 1523.

c. Area.

(1) Length. The initial approach segment has no standard length. It shall be sufficient to permit any altitude changes required by the procedure and shall not exceed 50 miles unless an operational requirement exists.

(2) Width.

(a) Primary area:

1 VOR/DME. See figure 15-18.

a In the 8 NM zone, the area is 4 NM on each side of the centerline.

b In the 4 NM zone, the area is 2 NM on each side of the centerline.

c A 30° splay connects the area boundaries, beginning where the route centerline crosses the 4 NM zone and splaying out as the ATD increases until reaching 4 NM each side of the centerline. In addition:

(1) If the splay cuts across an area of the WP fix displacement area, retain the width of the wider area and connect the wider area boundary with the narrower.

(2) If a short segment transits the 4 NM zone from the 8 NM zone and reenters the 8 NM zone, retain the 8 NM zone.

(3) If the initial approach and succeeding segments lie within the 4 NM zone, the 4 NM zone may be used throughout.

(4) Segments shall not be decreased to 2 NM widths and then increased back to 4 NM widths.

(5) The width of the primary area at the earliest point the IAWP can be received is equal to the width at the plotted position.

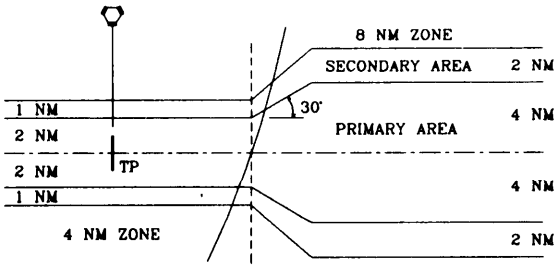


Figure 15-18. VOR/DME BASIC AREA. Paragraph 1521c(2)(a)1.

2 Non-VOR/DME - Two miles each side of centerline.

(b) Secondary area:

1 VOR/DME - The area is 1 mile each side of the primary area where the route centerline lies within the 4 NM zone. The area is 2 miles each side of the primary area where the route centerline lies within the 8 NM zone. The area boundaries are connected by straight lines abeam the same points where the primary area boundaries connect. The width of the secondary area at the earliest point the IAWP can be received is equal to the width at the plotted position.

2 Non-VOR/DME - One mile on each side of the primary area.

d. Obstacle Clearance. Paragraph 232c applies. The note in appendix 2, figure 123, 2 NM slant range, does not apply to non-VOR/DME.

e. Descent Gradient. Paragraphs 232d and 288a apply.

1522. INTERMEDIATE SEGMENT. The intermediate segment begins at the IWP and ends at the FAWP or ATD fix serving as the FAF. For VOR/DME systems, the distance from the reference facility to the IWP shall not exceed 53 miles nor exceed the TPD or ATD values associated with the limits of the 8 NM zone. See figure 15-2.

a. Alignment. The course to be flown in the intermediate segment should be the same as the final approach course. When this is not practical, the intermediate course shall not differ from the final approach course by more than 30° and an FAWP shall be established at the turn WP. See figure 15-17.

b. Area.

(1) Length. The intermediate segment shall not be less than 5 miles, nor more than 15 miles in length. If a turn is more than 90° at the IWP, table 3, chapter 2, applies.

(2) Width.

(a) Primary area:

1 VOR/DME - The width of the intermediate primary area shall equal the width of the initial primary area at the IWP. It shall either taper linearly to ± 2 miles at the FAWP or ATD fix or shall be a constant ± 2 miles, as appropriate. The width at the earliest point the IWP can be received shall equal the width at the plotted position.

2 Non-VOR/DME - Two miles on each side of centerline.

(b) Secondary area:

1 VOR/DME - The width of the intermediate secondary area shall be equal to the width of the initial secondary area at the IWP and shall either taper linearly to ± 1 mile at the FAWP or ATD fix or shall be a constant ± 1 mile, as appropriate. The width of the secondary area at the earliest point the IWP can be received shall equal the width at the plotted position.

2 Non-VOR/DME - One mile on each side of the primary area.

c. **Obstacle Clearance.** Paragraph 242c applies.

d. **Descent Gradient.** Paragraph 242d applies.

1523. FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT. The final approach segment begins at the FAWP or ATD fix and ends at the MAP. When the final approach course is a continuation of the intermediate course, an ATD fix should be used in lieu of a FAWP with additional ATD fixes established, if necessary, as stepdown fixes or the MAP. For VOR/DME systems, the FAWP/ATD fix shall be limited to a TPD of 30 miles or less and must be within the limits of the 4 NM zone shown in figure 15-2.

a. **Alignment.** The final approach course shall be aligned through the RWY or APT WP. For a straight-in approach, the alignment should be with the runway centerline. When the alignment exceeds 15°, straight-in minimums are not authorized. For a circling approach, the final approach course should be aligned to the center of the landing area, but may be aligned to any portion of the usable landing surface.

b. **Area.** The area considered for obstacle clearance starts at the earliest point the FAWP or ATD fix can be received, and for straight-in approaches, ends at the latest point of the RWY WP. For circling approaches, the area ends at the latest point of the APT WP.

(1) Length. The optimum length of the final approach segment, measured between plotted fix positions, is 5 miles. The maximum length is 10 miles. The minimum length shall provide adequate distance for an aircraft to make the required descent and to regain course alignment when a turn is required over the FAWP. Table 15-4 shall be used to determine the minimum length of the final approach segment. Fix displacement area overlap restrictions stated in paragraph 1502 apply.

(2) Width.

(a) The final approach primary area is centered on the final approach course. It is 2 miles wide on each side of the course at the earliest position the FAWP/ATD fix can be received. See figures 15-15 and 15-16. This width remains constant until the latest point the FAWP/ATD fix can be received. It then tapers to the width of the area of the XTRK fix displacement tolerance at the latest point the RWY WP or APT WP can be received. Fix displacement tolerance dimensions are shown in table 15-2 for VOR/DME systems and in table 15-3 for non-VOR/DME systems.

(b) A secondary area 1 mile wide is established on each side of the primary area. See figures 15-15 and 15-16.

c. **Obstacle Clearance.**

(1) Straight-In. The minimum required obstruction clearance (ROC) in the primary area is 250 feet. In the secondary area, the ROC of the primary area is provided at the inner edge, tapering uniformly to zero at the outer edge.

(2) Circling. A minimum of 300 feet of ROC shall be provided in the circling approach area. Paragraph 260b applies.

d. Descent Gradient. The optimum descent gradient is 300 feet-per-mile. Where a higher gradient is necessary, the maximum permissible is 400 feet-per-mile.

e. Using Fixes for Descent. Paragraphs 288a, b, c(3), c(4)(a), and 289 apply.

f. RNAV Descent Angle Information. RNAV procedures satisfying the criteria of this paragraph should be published with RNAV descent angles specified to the nearest .01°. The following constraints apply: an angle shall not be published unless the procedure is aligned within ± 0.5° of the runway centerline; there can be no obstacles penetrating the surface described in paragraph 1525f(2); an angle shall not be published for procedures with circling-only minimums; an angle shall not be published if the path would pass below the minimum descent altitude (MDA) of a segment formed using a stepdown fix.

(1) Straight-in. The RNAV descent angle shall be computed from the FAF altitude to a point 50 feet above runway threshold.

(2) Descent Angle Computation. An evaluation shall be conducted of an area the same as the precision final approach primary area, aligned with the runway centerline, using a surface at an angle of the computed RNAV descent angle for that runway, minus 1.5° commencing 200 feet outward from the runway threshold and overlying an area out to a point where the slope of the surface intercepts the altitude of the MDA minus (ROC plus adjustments). An RNAV descent angle shall not be published if this surface is penetrated by an obstacle. See figure 15-19.

Example calculations for an RNAV descent angle and the associated distance from the MDA intercept to the MAP are shown below.

(a) RNAV descent angle computation example:

Runway Elevation	1777'	FAF Altitude	3800'
Point Above RWY	+50'		-1827'
	1827'		1973'

1973 ÷ (6 x 6076.1)* = tan descent angle = 0.054119

Arctan (0.054119) = 3.098°

Published RNAV Descent Angle = 3.10°

* Represents FAF to runway waypoint distance in feet

(b) Calculation of the horizontal distance MDA intercept point to RWY WP example:

Runway Elevation	1777'	MDA Altitude	2040'
Point Above RWY	+50'		-1827'
	1827'		213'

213 ÷ tan 3.10° = 3,932.9' or 0.6 miles

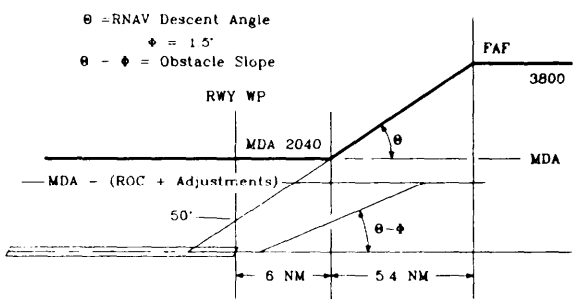


Figure 15-19. RNAV DESCENT ANGLE. Paragraph 1523f.

1524.-1529. RESERVED.

SECTION 3. MISSED APPROACH.

1530. GENERAL. For general criteria, refer to chapter 2, section 7.

1531. MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT. The missed approach segment begins at the MAP and ends at a point designated by the clearance limit. These criteria consider two types of missed approaches. They are identified as RNAV and non-RNAV missed approach procedures and defined as follows:

a. RNAV.

(1) Route. Positive course guidance provided by RNAV systems is required throughout the missed approach segment. The length of the segment is measured point-to-point between the respective (plotted position) waypoints throughout the missed approach procedure.

(a) A WP is required at the MAP and at the end of the missed approach procedure. A turn waypoint may be included in the missed approach.

(b) A straight, turning, or combination straight and turning missed approach procedure may be developed. Waypoints are required for each segment within the missed approach procedure.

(c) Turns shall not exceed 120°.

(d) A minimum leg length is required to allow the aircraft's stabilization on course immediately after the MAP. See table 15-6 for minimum distances required for each category of aircraft based on course changes.

(e) For the combination straight and turning missed approach, the straight segment shall equal or exceed the distance between the latest point the MAP can be received and the earliest point the turn WP can be received to accommodate the length of turn anticipation distance required. This segment shall be aligned within 15° of the extended final approach course.

(2) Direct. A direct missed approach may be developed to provide a method to allow the pilot to proceed to a waypoint that is not connected to the MAP by a specified course. Positive course guidance is not assumed during the entire missed approach procedure.

(a) An ATD fix may be specified as the MAP.

(b) A straight, turning, or combination straight and turning missed approach may be developed.

(c) The combination straight and turning missed approach procedure shall be a climb from the MAP to a specified altitude. The end of the straight section shall be established by an altitude, and this segment shall be aligned with the final approach course. The length of the straight section shall be determined by subtracting the lowest MDA of the procedure from the height of the turning altitude in the missed approach and multiplying by 40. The distance is measured from the latest point the MAP can be received.

(d) Turns may exceed angles of 120°.

b. Non-RNAV Missed Approach Procedures. Chapter 2, section 7, is applicable for non-RNAV missed approach criteria with the following exceptions: the connection for the missed approach area and the origination points of the 40:1 evaluation obstuction slope at the MAP, and the area for early turns begin at the earliest point the WP or ATD fix can be received. The area connects at the MAP as described in paragraphs 1532, 1533, 1534, and 1535. The tie-backs and evaluations are established and conducted as outlined in this chapter of the RNAV missed approach criteria.

1532. MISSED APPROACH POINT. The MAP shall be located on the final approach course and is normally located at the RWY WP or APT WP, as appropriate. It may be designated by an ATD fix defined relative to the distance from the RWY or APT WP. The MAP shall be no further from the FAF than the RWY or APT WP, as appropriate. The area of the MAP ATRK displacement tolerance may overlap the plotted position of the RWY or APT WP. The lateral dimensions for the area of the ATD fix are considered the same as the lateral dimensions of the primary area.

1533. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH. Straight missed approach criteria are applied when the missed approach course does not differ more than 15° from the final approach course.

a. Area.

(1) When the MAP is at the RWY WP or APT WP, the area starts at the earliest point the MAP can be received and has the same width as the area for the WP displacement tolerance at the RWY WP or APT WP, as appropriate. The secondary areas are 1 mile each side of the primary area at the earliest point the MAP can be received. See figure 15-20.

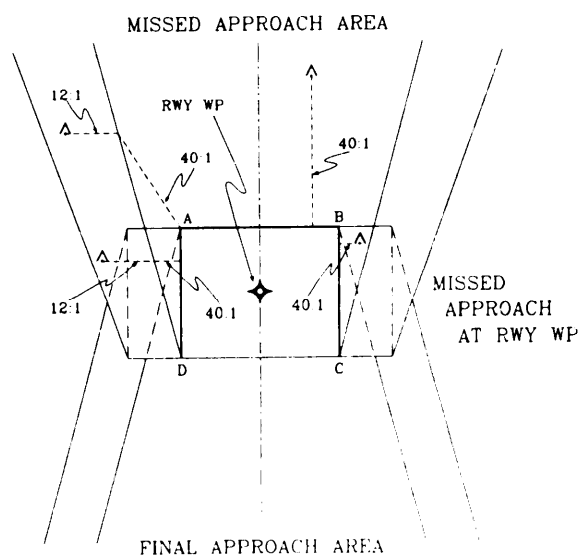


Figure 15-20. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AT THE RWY WP. Paragraph 1533a(1).

(2) When the MAP is at an ATD fix, the area starts at the earliest point the MAP can be received and has the same width as the final approach primary and secondary areas at that point. See figure 15-21.

(3) The area expands uniformly to a width of 6 miles each side of the course line at a point 15 flight-track miles from the plotted position of the MAP. When positive course guidance is provided, the secondary areas splay linearly from a width of 1 mile at the MAP to a width of 2 miles at the end of the 15-mile area. The splay of these areas begins at the earliest point the MAP can be received.

(4) When a turn of 15° or less causes the outside edge of the primary missed approach boundary to cross inside the lateral dimensions of the fix displacement area of the MAP, that boundary line is then constructed from the corner of the lateral dimension of the area abeam the latest point the MAP can be received. This point is identified as point A at the MAP when represented by a WP or an ATD fix is established as the MAP. See figures 15-22 and 15-23, respectively.

b. Obstacle Clearance. The 40:1 missed approach surface begins at the edge of the area of the WP displacement tolerance or the displacement area of the ATD fix of the MAP identified as the line D-A-B-C in figures 15-20 and 15-21. For the triangular area shaded in figures 15-22 and 15-23 resulting from a skewed course of 15° or less, the 12:1 slope is measured from point A. The obstacle slope is established by measuring the shortest distance from the line D-A-B-C to the obstacle. See figures 15-22 and 15-23. The height of the missed approach surface at its beginning slope is determined by subtracting the required final approach obstacle clearance and any minima adjustments from the MDA. In the secondary area, no obstacle may penetrate the 12:1 surface extending upward and outward from the 40:1 surface at the inner boundaries at a right angle to the missed approach course.

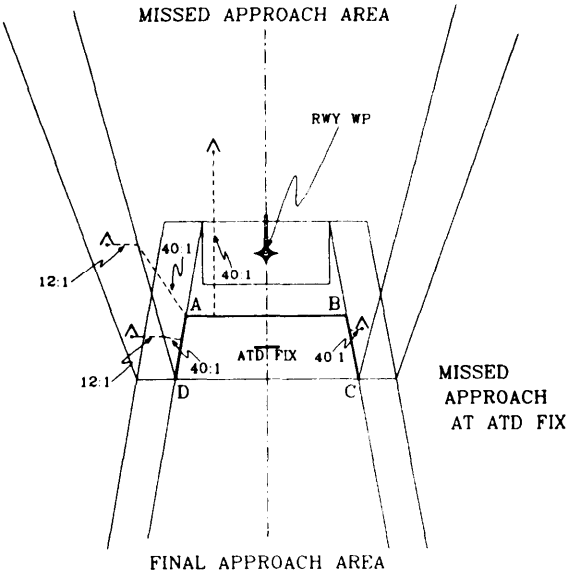


Figure 15-21. STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH AT AN ATD FIX. Paragraph 1533a(2).

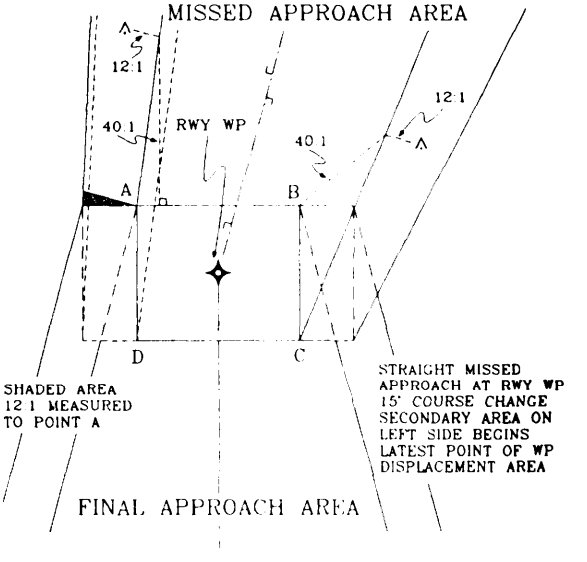


Figure 15-22. CONSTRUCTION OF STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH WHEN TURNS ≤ 15° CAUSE OUTSIDE BOUNDARY TO CROSS INSIDE MAP FIX DISPLACEMENT TOLERANCE AT RWY WP. Paragraph 1533a(4).

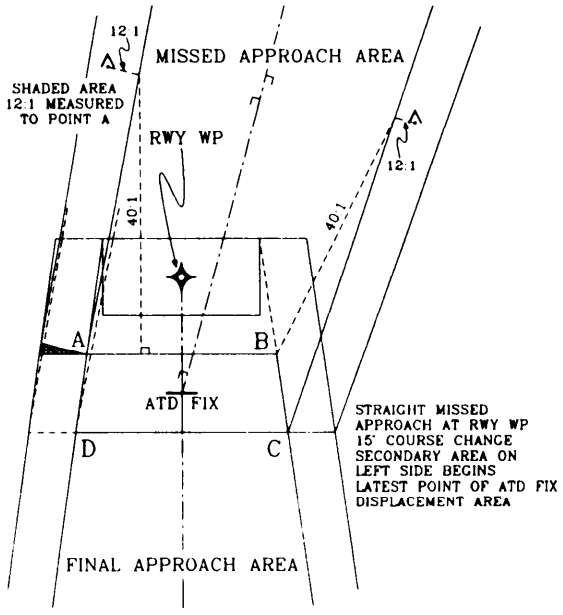


Figure 15-23. CONSTRUCTION OF STRAIGHT MISSED APPROACH WHEN TURNS ≤ 15° CAUSE OUTSIDE BOUNDARY TO CROSS INSIDE MAP FIX DISPLACEMENT TOLERANCE AT AN ATD FIX. Paragraph 1533a(4).

1534. TURNING MISSED APPROACH. Turning missed approach criteria apply whenever the missed approach course differs by more than 15° from the final approach course.

a. Area.

(1) Zone 1 begins at a point abeam the latest point the MAP can be received. See figure 15-24.

(2) The turning missed approach area should be constructed by the methods described in paragraph 275, except as follows:

(a) The radii for the outer boundary is constructed from a baseline at the latest point the MAP can be received.

(b) Where the width "d" of the final approach area at the latest point the MAP can be received exceeds the value of the radius of the outer boundary R in table 5, use "wide final approach area at the MAP" construction methodology. If the width "d" is less than or equal to R, use "narrow" methodology. See figure 15-24. Point C_1, for turns of 90° or less, connects to the WP or fix displacement area at point C, which is located at the earliest point the MAP can be received. See figures 15-25 and 15-27. Point C_1, for turns more than 90°, connects to the corner of the WP or fix displacement area at the nonturn side at point D at the earliest point the MAP can be received. See figures 15-26 and 15-28. Point C_1, for turns which expand the missed approach area boundary beyond line E-D-Z, connects to point E. See figure 15-29. Point C_1, for turns which expand the missed approach area boundary beyond line E-Z (parallel to the final approach course line), connects to point E_1, a TP of the obstacle boundary arc. See figure 15-30.

b. Obstacle Clearance. The 40:1 obstacle clearance surface begins at the edge of the WP or fix displacement area of the MAP. The height of the missed approach surface over an obstacle in zone 2 is determined by measuring a straight-line distance from the obstacle to the nearest point on the A-B-C line and computing the height based on the 40:1 ratio. See figure 15-26. The height of the missed approach surface in zone 3 is determined by measuring the distance from the obstacle to point C as shown in figure 15-26 and computing the height based on the 40:1 ratio. The height of the missed approach surface over point C for zone 3 computations is the same height as the MDA less adjustments specified in paragraphs 323a, b, and c.

1535. COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH.

a. Area.

(1) Section 1 is a portion of the normal straight missed approach area and is constructed as specified in paragraph 15-33. See figure 15-31. The end of section 1 is based on a turn at a WP, or a climb to an altitude prior to commencing a turn.

(2) RNAV Route Missed Approach Procedure. A turn WP is used to base the length of section 1 for a route RNAV missed approach procedure.

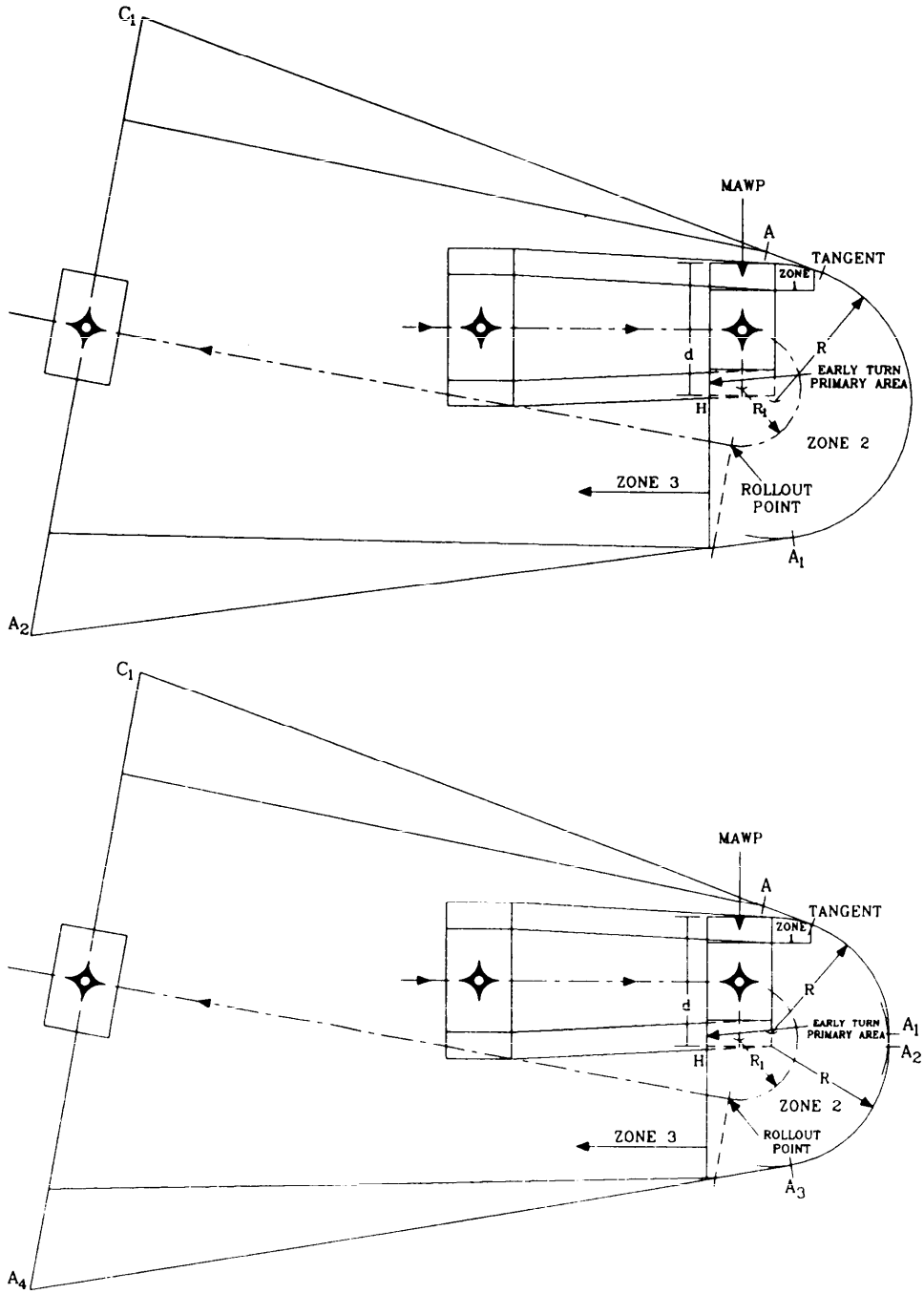


Figure 15-24. WIDE AND NARROW MISSED APPROACH METHODOLOGY.
Paragraph 1534a(2)(b).

(a) Secondary area reductions apply except where the turn exceeds 90°, when the reduction applies only on the nonturning side. See figure 15-32.

(b) For VOR/DME systems, the turn WP shall be limited to a TPD of 30 NM or less and to within the 4 NM zone.

(c) A turn anticipation area shall be constructed at the turn point.

(d) Construction.

1 Points F, T_1, T_2, and J represent the end of section 1. For turns of 90° or less, point C_1 connects to point J. See figure 15-31. For turns of more than 90°, point C_1 of section 3 connects to point T_2. See figure 15-32.

2 The radius for the obstruction boundary is measured from a base line at the latest point the turn WP can be received.

3 The outside primary and secondary area boundaries of the turn connect abeam the plotted position of the turn WP. See figures 15-31 and 15-32.

(3) RNAV Direct Procedure. For an RNAV direct missed approach, the end of section 1 is based on a climb to altitude, and secondary area reductions are not applied.

(a) The end of section 1 is established as described in paragraph 1531a(2)(c). Positive course guidance is not assumed, and secondary area obstruction clearance may not be applied. The end of section 1 is represented by line H-T_3. See figure 15-33.

(b) Construction.

1 A base line extension of line G-D-C separates sections 2 and 3. When point C_1 is established prior to the base line, C_1 connects to point C. See figure 15-33.

2 When C_1 is established beyond the base line, but inside line G-Z, C_1 connects to point G. G-Z is established parallel to the final approach course line. See figure 15-30.

3 When point C_1 is established beyond an area of line G-Z, C_1 connects to point H. See figure 15-35.

4 When point C_1 is established beyond an area of line H-Z, C_1 connects to point K, a tangent point on the boundary arc. H-Z is established paralled to the final approach course line. See figure 15-36.

b. Obstruction Clearance.

(1) RNAV route missed approach of turns 90° or less.

(a) Obstacles in section 2 are evaluated based on the shortest distance in the primary area from the obstacle to any point on line T_2-T_3. See figure 15-31.

(b) Obstacles in section 2b are evaluated based on the shortest distance in the primary area from the obstacle to point T_3 through point J. See figure 15-31.

(2) RNAV Route Missed Approach of Turns More than 90°. Obstacles in sections 2 and 3 are evaluated based on the shortest distance in the primary area from the obstacle to any point on line T_2-T_3. See figure 15-32.

(3) RNAV Direct Procedure. Obstacles in section 2 are evaluated based on the shortest distance from the obstacle to any point on line G-H-T_3-X. Obstacles in section 3 are evaluated based on shortest distance from the obstacle to point X. See figure 15-36.

(4) The height of the missed approach surface over an obstacle in section 2 is determined by measuring the shortest distance from the obstacle to the nearest point on the T_2-T_3 line for RNAV routes missed approach procedures and to the nearest point on the G-H-T_3-X line for RNAV direct missed approach procedures. Compute the height of the surface by using the 40:1 ratio from the height of the missed approach obstacle surface at the end of section 1. The height of the obstacle surface at the end of section 1 is determined by computing the 40:1 obstacle surface slope beginning at the height of the missed approach surface measured from the latest point of the MAP. See figures 15-32 and 15-36.

(5) The height of the missed approach surface over line T_2-T_3 for section 3 computations is the height of the MDA less adjustments in paragraphs 323a, b, and c, plus a 40:1 rise in section 1. See figure 15-32.

(6) The height of the missed approach surface over point X for section 3 computations is the height of MDA less adjustments in paragraphs 323a, b, and c, plus a 40:1 rise in section 1 as measured from line A-B to end of section 1. See figure 15-36.

1536. CLEARANCE LIMIT. The missed approach procedure shall specify an appropriate fix as a clearance limit. The fix shall be suitable for holding. For VOR/DME systems, the clearance limit WP's shall meet terminal fix displacement area criteria from table 15-1. For non-VOR/DME systems, clearance limit WP's shall meet en route fix displacement tolerance criteria from table 15-3.

1537.-1539. RESERVED.

SECTION 4. APPROACH MINIMUMS

1540. APPROACH MINIMUMS. Chapter 3, section 3, applies except that table 6A criteria relating minimum visibility to a distance from the station shall be applied as a variation of crosstrack fix displacement tolerance of the plotted position of the MAP shown in table 15-5. Crosstrack values in table 15-2 shall be applied for VOR/DME. A crosstrack value of 0.6 NM shall be applied for non-VOR/DME.

1541.-1599. RESERVED.

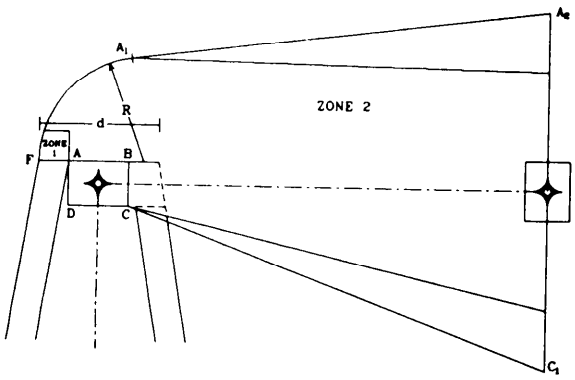


Figure 15-25 RNAV. TURNING MISSED APPROACH, 90° OR LESS. Paragraph 1534a(2)(b).

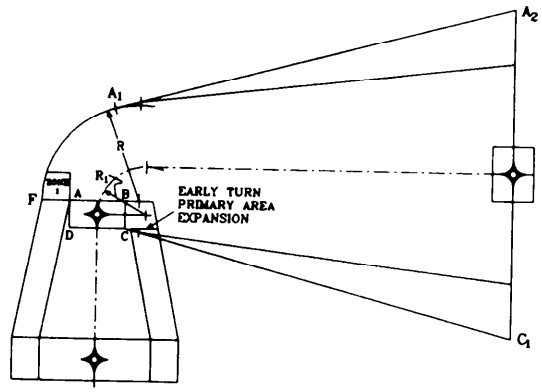


Figure 15-27. DIRECT TURNING MISSED APPROACH, ≤ 90° TIE-BACK POINT C_1 TO POINT C. Paragraph 1534a(2)(b).

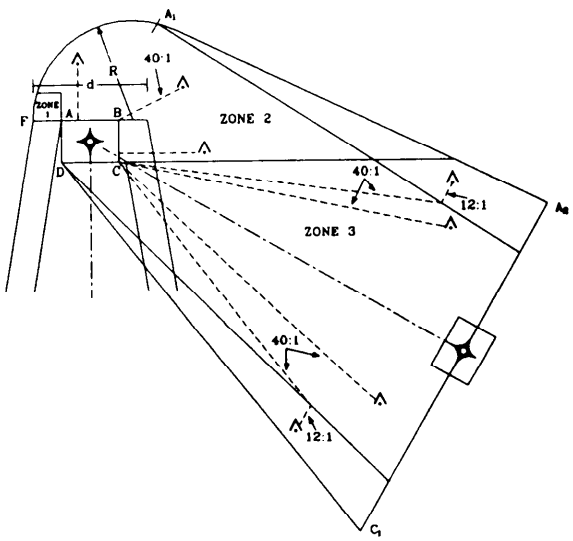


Figure 15-26. RNAV TURNING MISSED APPROACH, MORE THAN 90° UP TO 120°. Paragraph 1534a(2)(b).

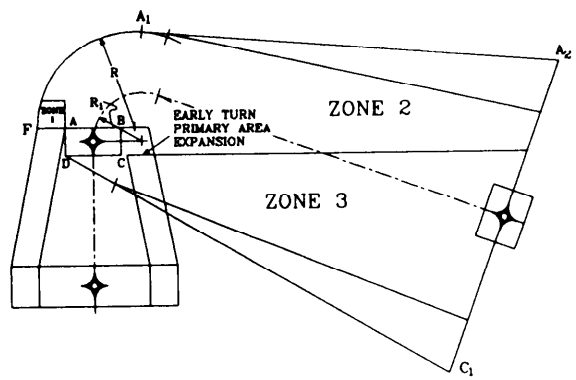
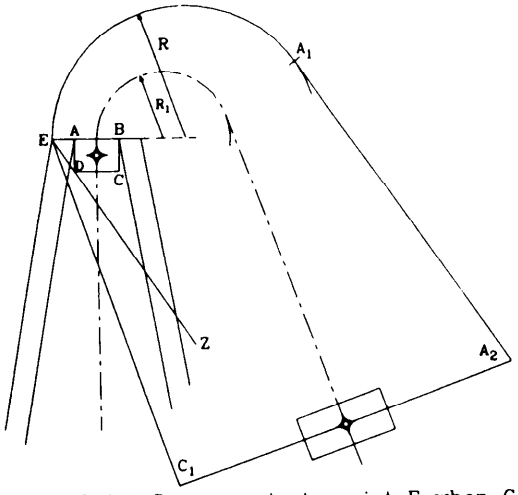


Figure 15-28. DIRECT TURNING MISSED APPROACH, > 90° TIE-BACK POINT C_1 TO POINT D. Paragraph 1534a(2)(b).



NOTE: Point C_1 connects to point E when C_1-E is outside of line E-Z. E-Z is established by drawing an extended line through D and E.

Figure 15-29. DIRECT TURNING MISSED APPROACH, > 90°. Paragraph 1534a(2)(b).

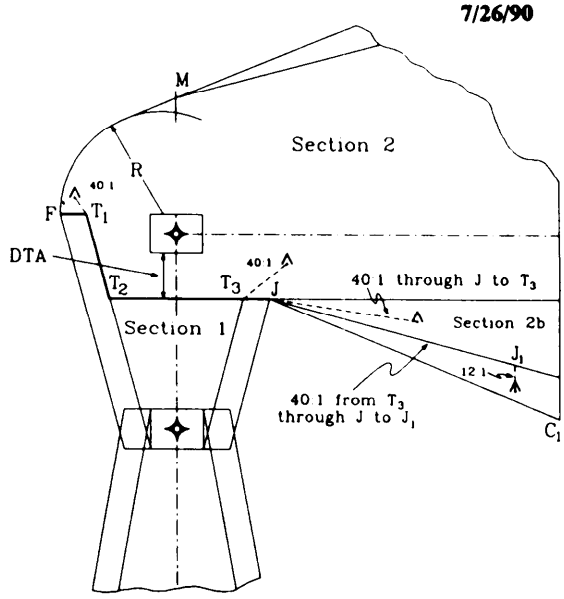
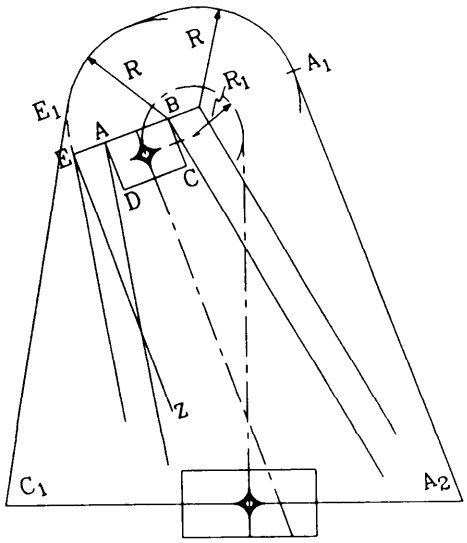


Figure 15-31. RNAV COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH 90° TURN OR LESS. Paragraphs 1535a(2) and 1535b(1)(b).



NOTE: Point C_1 connects to E_1 tangent to arc when line C_1-E_1 is outside of line E-Z. E-Z is established parallel to final approach course line.

Figure 15-30. DIRECT TURNING MISSED APPROACH > 180°. Paragraph 1534a(2)(b).

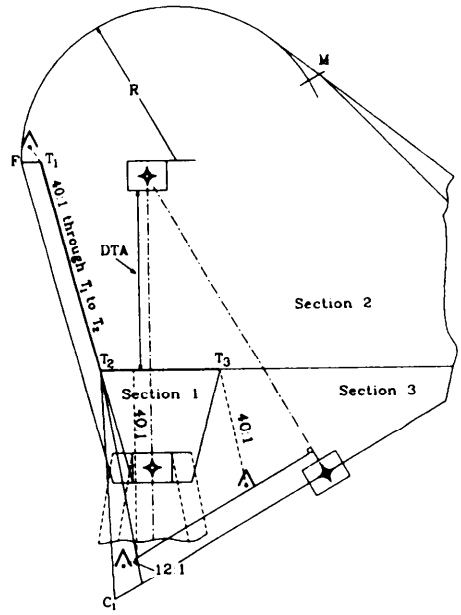


Figure 15-32. RNAV COMBINATION STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH. MORE THAN 90° UP TO 120°. Paragraph 1535a(2).

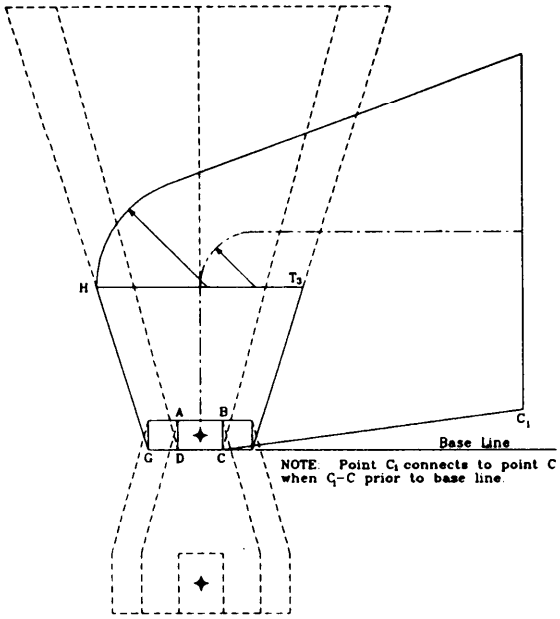


Figure 15-33. CLIMB TO ALTITUDE, STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED, C_1 PRIOR TO BASE LINE.

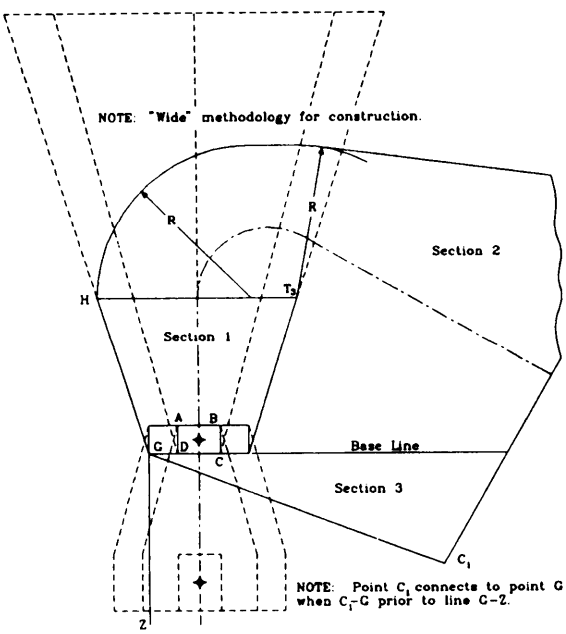


Figure 15-34. CLIMB TO ALTITUDE, STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH > 90°. Paragraph 1535a(3).

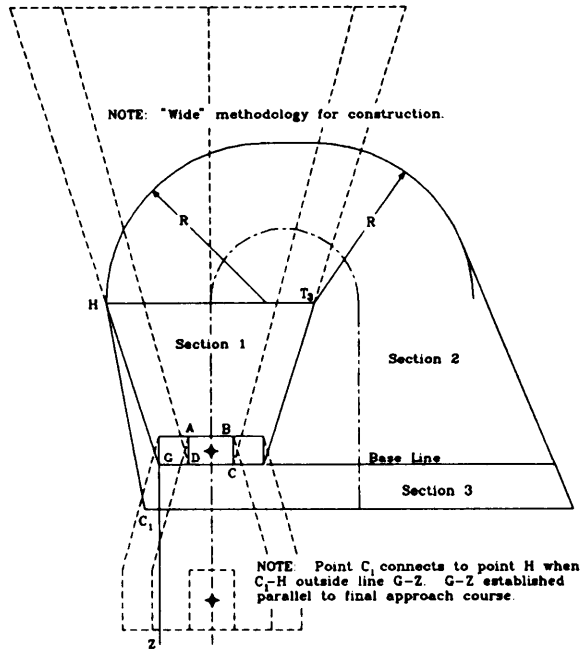


Figure 15-35. CLIMB TO ALTITUDE, STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH > 90°. Paragraph 1535a(3).

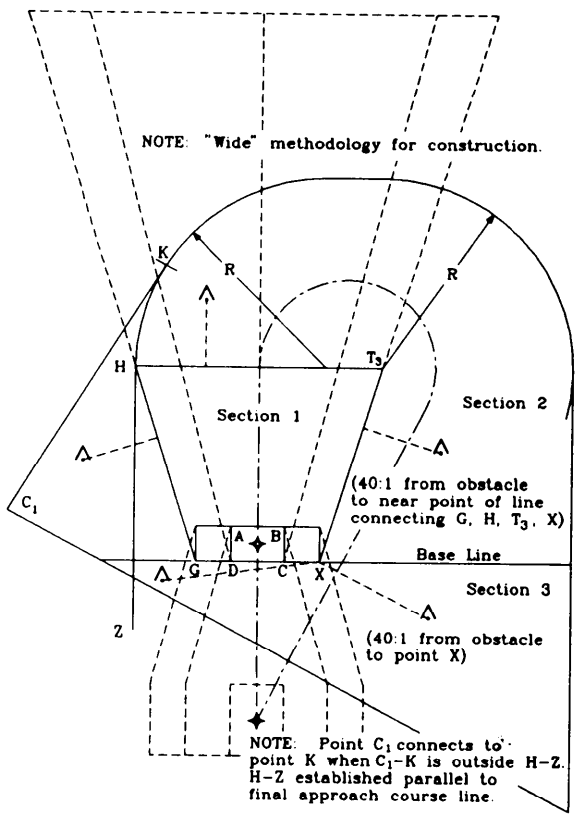


Figure 15-36. CLIMB TO ALTITUDE, STRAIGHT AND TURNING MISSED APPROACH > 180°. Paragraph 1535a(3).

Table 15-1
VOR/DME EN ROUTE AND TERMINAL FIX DISPLACEMENT TOLERANCE

FIX DISTANCE ALONGTRACK FROM TANGENT POINT

DISTANCE FROM TANGENT POINT TO VOR/DME

		0	10	20	30	40	50	51
0	XTRK		1.3	1.7	2.2	2.8	3.4	3.5
	ATRK		0.6	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	0.9
10	XTRK	1.2	1.3	1.7	2.2	2.8	3.4	
	ATRK	0.8	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.1	
20	XTRK	1.2	1.4	1.8	2.3	2.8		
	ATRK	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.4		
30	XTRK	1.2	1.4	1.8	2.3	2.9		
	ATRK	1.8	1.8	1.9	1.9	2.0		
40	XTRK	1.3	1.5	1.8	2.3			
	ATRK	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.4			
50	XTRK	1.3	1.5					
	ATRK	2.9	3.0					
53	XTRK	1.3						
	ATRK	3.1						

Terminal

		0	10	20	30	40	50
0	XTRK		1.3	1.7	2.2	2.8	3.4
	ATRK		0.6	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9
10	XTRK	1.2	1.3	1.7	2.2	2.8	3.4
	ATRK	0.8	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.1
20	XTRK	1.2	1.4	1.8	2.3	2.8	3.4
	ATRK	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.4	1.5
30	XTRK	1.2	1.4	1.8	2.3	2.9	3.5
	ATRK	1.8	1.8	1.9	1.9	2.0	2.0
40	XTRK	1.3	1.5	1.8	2.3	2.9	3.5
	ATRK	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.5	2.5
50	XTRK	1.3	1.5	1.9	2.4	2.9	3.5
	ATRK	2.9	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.1
60	XTRK	1.4	1.6	1.9	2.4	3.0	3.6
	ATRK	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.6	3.6	3.6
70	XTRK	1.4	1.6	2.0	2.5	3.0	3.6
	ATRK	4.1	4.1	4.1	4.1	4.2	4.2

J/V En Route

80	XTRK	1.5	1.7	2.1	2.5	3.1	3.6
	ATRK	4.6	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.7	4.8
90	XTRK	1.6	1.8	2.1	2.6	3.1	3.7
	ATRK	5.2	5.2	5.3	5.3	5.3	5.3
100	XTRK	1.7	1.8	2.2	2.6	3.2	3.7
	ATRK	5.8	5.8	5.8	5.9	5.9	5.9
110	XTRK	1.7	1.9	2.2	2.7	3.2	3.8
	ATRK	6.4	6.4	6.4	6.4	6.5	6.5
120	XTRK	1.8	2.0	2.3	2.8	3.3	3.8
	ATRK	6.9	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.1

Random En Route

Table may be interpolated -- or use next higher value.
XTRK/ATRK values are ±.

Table application per segment

Segment	Table 15-1 J/V En Route	Random En Route	Terminal
En Route	X		
Feeder		X	
Feeder S/D		X	
IAWP			X
Initial S/D			X
IWP			X
Intermediate S/D			X
MA/Holding			X

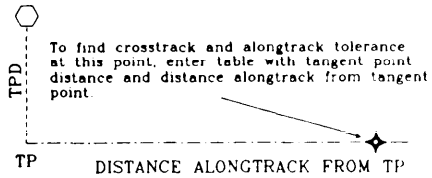


Table 15-2
FINAL/MISSED AREA FIX DISPLACEMENT TOLERANCE

FIX DISTANCE ALONGTRACK FROM TANGENT POINT

TANGENT POINT DISTANCE (TPD) FINAL/MISSED		0	1	2	3	4	5	10	15	20	25	30
0	XTRK		0.7	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK		0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7
1	XTRK	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.7
2	XTRK	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.7
3	XTRK	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.7
4	XTRK	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.8
5	XTRK	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8
10	XTRK	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.9	0.9	0.9
15	XTRK	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.2	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.2
20	XTRK	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.3	1.5	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.4
25	XTRK	0.8	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	1.1	1.3	1.6	1.8	2.1
	ATRK	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.6
30	XTRK	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	1.1	1.3	1.6	1.9	2.1
	ATRK	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.8	1.9	1.9	1.9

INTERPOLATE TO THE NEAREST 0.1 MILE
XTRK/ATRK values are ±

Table application per segment

Segment	Table 15-2
En Route	
Feeder	
Feeder S/D	
IAWP	
Initial S/D	
IWP	
Intermediate S/D	
FAWP/ATD Fix	X
Final S/D	X
MAWP/ATD Fix	x
RWY WP/APT WP	X
MA Turn Point	X
MA/Holding	

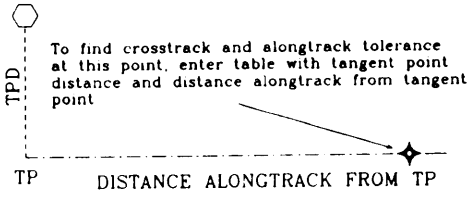


Table 15-3
NON-VOR/DME FIX DISPLACEMENT TOLERANCE

	EN ROUTE	TERMINAL	APPROACH
XTRK	3.0	2.0	0.6
ATRK	2.8	1.7	0.3

XTRK/ATRK values are ±

Table application per segment

Segment:	En Route	TABLE 15-3 Terminal	Approach
En Route	X		
Feeder	X		
Feeder S/D	X		
IAWP		X	
Initial S/D		X	
IWP		X	
Intermediate S/D		X	
FAWP/ATD Fix			X
Final S/D			X
MAWP/ATD Fix			X
RWY WP/APT WP			X
MA Turn Point			X
MA Holding	X		

Table 15-4
MINIMUM LENGTH OF FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT (NM)

APPROACH CATEGORY	MAGNITUDE OF TURN OVER THE FINAL APPROACH WAYPOINT (FAWP)		
	0°-5°	>5°-10°	>10°-30°
A	1.8	1.8	2.0
B	1.8	2.0	2.5
C	2.0	2.5	3.0
D	2.5	3.0	3.5
E	3.0	3.5	4.0

Table 15-5
EFFECT OF CROSSTRACK TOLERANCE ON VISIBILITY MINIMUMS

CATEGORY	CROSSTRACK TOLERANCE (NM) 0.6 - 0.8	>0.8 - 1.0	>1.0 - 1.2	>1.2 - 1.6	>1.6
A	1	1	1	1	1
B	1	1	1	1.25	1.25
C	1	1	1.25	1.5	1.5
D	1	1.25	1.5	1.75	2
E	1	1.25	1.5	1.75	2

Table 15-6. MINIMUM LEG LENGTH FROM MAP TO NEXT WP USING RNAV MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE. *

CAT	Course Change at MAP >15° ≤30°	≤45°	≤60°	≤90°	≤120°
	Minimum Leg Length, NM, between MAP and next WP				
A	3.0	4.0	5.0	5.9	6.9
B	3.0	4.0	5.2	6.2	7.2
C	3.0	4.2	5.5	6.5	7.6
D	3.0	4.5	6.0	7.3	8.5
E	3.0	5.5	7.8	9.5	11.3

CHAPTER 17. ENROUTE CRITERIA

1700.-1709. RESERVED.

Section 1. VHF Obstacle Clearance Areas

1710. ENROUTE OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREAS. Obstacle clearance areas for enroute planning are identified as "primary," "secondary," and "turning" areas.

1711. PRIMARY AREAS.

a. Basic Area. The primary enroute obstacle clearance area extends from each radio facility on an airway or route to the next facility. It has a width of 8 NM; 4 NM on each side of the centerline of the airway or route. See Figure 17-1.

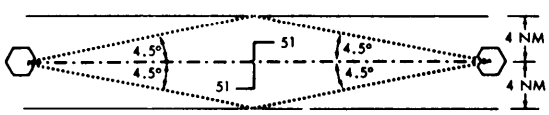


Figure 17-1. PRIMARY OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREA. Par 1711.a.

b. System Accuracy. System accuracy lines are drawn at a 4.5 degree angle on each side of the course or route. See Figure 17-1. The apexes of the 4.5 degree angles are at the facility. These system accuracy lines will intersect the boundaries of the primary area at a point 50.8 NM from the facility. (Normally 51 NM is used.) If the distance from the facility to the changeover point (COP) is more than 51 NM, the outer boundary of the primary area extends beyond the 4 NM width along the 4.5 degree line. See Figure 17-2. These examples apply when the COP is at midpoint. Paragraph 1716 covers the effect of offset COP or dogleg segments.

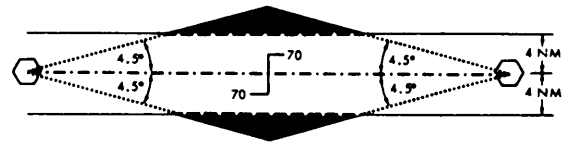


Figure 17-2. PRIMARY OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREA. Application of System Accuracy. Par 1711.b.

c. Termination Point. When the airway or route terminates at a navigational facility or other radio fix, the primary area extends beyond that termination point. The boundary of the area may be defined by an arc which connects the two boundary lines. The center of the arc is, in the case of a facility termination point, located at the geographic location of the facility. In the case of a termination at a radial or DME fix, the boundary is formed by an arc with its center located at the * most distant point of the fix displacement area on * course line. Figure 17-8 and its inset show the construction of the area at the termination point.

1712. SECONDARY AREAS.

a. Basic Area. The secondary obstacle clearance area extends along a line drawn 2 NM on each side of the primary area. See Figure 17-3.

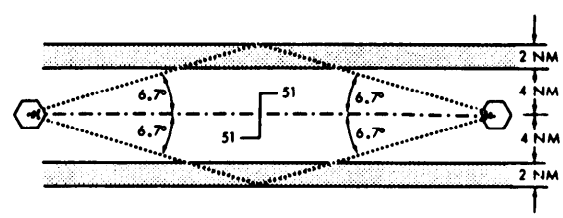


Figure 17-3. SECONDARY OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREAS. Par 1712.a.

b. System Accuracy. Secondary area system accuracy lines are drawn at a 6.7 degree angle on

each side of the course or route. See Figure 17-3. The apexes are at the facility. These system accuracy lines will intersect the outer boundaries of the secondary areas at the same point as primary lines, 51 NM from the facility. If the distance from the facility to the COP is more than 51 NM, the secondary area extends along the 6.7 degree line. See Figure 17-4. See paragraph 1716.c. and d. for offset COP or dogleg airway.

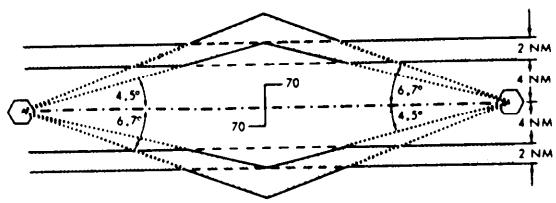


Figure 17-4. SECONDARY OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREAS. Application of System Accuracy Lines. Par 1712.b.

c. Termination Point. Where the airway or route terminates at a facility or radio fix the boundaries are connected by an arc in the same way as those in the primary area. Figure 17-8 and its inset shows termination point secondary areas.

1713. TURNING AREA.

a. Definition. The enroute turning area may be defined as an area which may extend the primary and secondary obstacle clearance areas when a change of course is necessary. The dimensions of the primary and secondary areas will provide adequate protection where the aircraft is tracking along a specific radial, but when the pilot executes a turn, the aircraft may go beyond the boundaries of the protected airspace. The turning area criteria supplements the airway and route segment criteria to protect the aircraft in the turn.

b. Requirement for Turning Area Criteria. Because of the limitation on aircraft indicated airspeeds below 10,000 feet MSL (FAR 91.70), some conditions do not require the application of turning area airspace criteria.

(1) The graph in Figure 17-5 may be used to determine if the turning area should be plotted for airways/routes below 10,000 feet MSL. If the point of intersection on the graph of the "amount of turn at intersection" versus "VOR facility to intersection distance" falls outside the hatched area of the graph, the turning area criteria need not be applied.

(2) If the "amount of turn" versus "facility distance" values fall within the hatched area or outside the periphery of the graph, then the turning area criteria must be applied as described in paragraph 1714.

c. Track. The flight track resulting from a combination of turn delay, inertia, turning rate, and wind effect is represented by a parabolic curve. For ease of application, a radius arc has been developed which can be applied to any scale chart.

d. Curve Radii. A 250 knot IAS, which is the maximum allowed below 10,000 feet MSL, results in radii of 2 NM for the primary area and 4 NM for the secondary area up to that altitude. For altitudes above 10,000 feet MSL up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL the primary area radius is 6 NM and the secondary area radius is 8 NM. Above 18,000 feet MSL the radii are 11 NM for primary and 13 NM for secondary.

e. System Accuracy. In drawing turning areas it will be necessary to consider system accuracy factors by applying them to the most adverse displacement of the radio fix or airway/route boundaries at which the turn is made. The 4.5 and 6.7 degree factors apply to the VOR radial being flown, but since no pilot or aircraft factors exist in the measurement of an intersecting radial, a navigation facility factor of plus-or-minus 3.6 degrees is used. See Figure 17-6.

NOTE: If a radio fix is formed by intersecting signals from two LF, or one LF and VOR facility, the obstacle clearance areas are based upon accuracy factors of 5.0 (primary) and 7.5 (secondary) degrees each side of the course or route centerlines of the LF facilities. If the VOR radial is the intersecting signal, the 3.6 degree value stated in 1713.e. above applies.

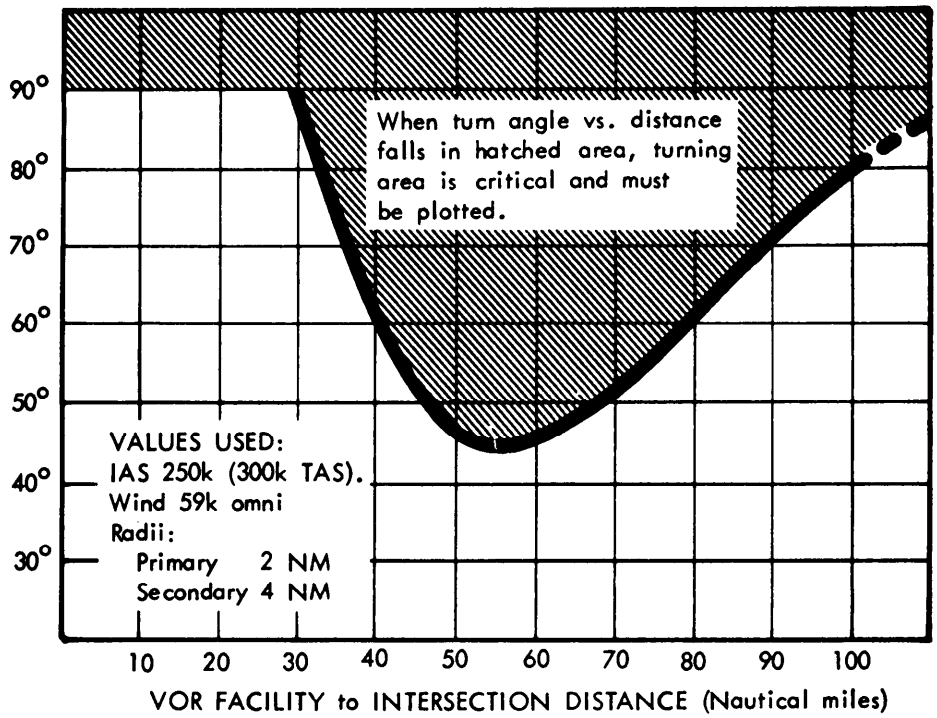


Figure 17-5. TURN ANGLE VS. DISTANCE. Par 1713.b.(1) and (2).

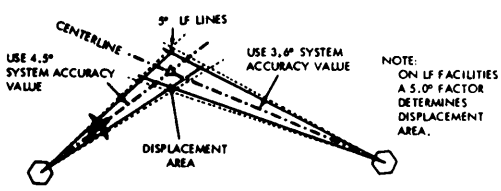


Figure 17-6. FIX DISPLACEMENT. Par 1713.e.

1714. APPLICATION OF TURNING AREA CRITERIA.

a. Techniques. Figures 17-8, 17-9, and 17-10 illustrate the application of the criteria. They also show areas which may be deleted from considerations when obstacle clearance is the deciding factor for establishing minimum enroute altitudes (MEAs) on airways or route segments.

b. Computations. Computations due to obstacles actually located in the turning areas will probably be indicated only in a minority of cases. These methods do, however, add to the flexibility of procedures specialists in resolving specific obstacle clearance problems without resorting to the use of waivers.

c. Minimum Turning Altitude (MTA). Where the application of the turn criteria obviates the use of an MEA with a cardinal altitude, the use of an MTA for a special direction of flight may be authorized. Where this is employed an appropriate notation shall be included on the
* FAA Form 8260-2, Radio Fix and Holding Data Record, for the turning fix. *

1715. TURN AREA TEMPLATE. A turn area template has been designed for use on charts scaled at 1:500,000. See Figure 17-7. It is identified as "TA-1."

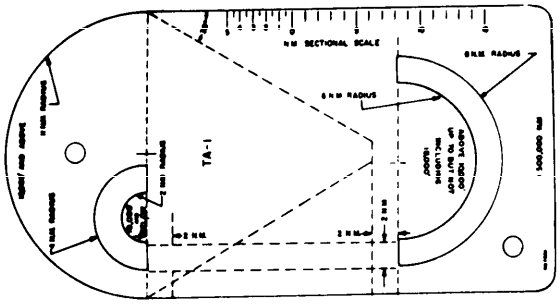


Figure 17-7. TURNING AREA TEMPLATE. Par 1715.

a. Use of Template-Intersection Fix.

(1) **Primary Area.** At an intersection fix the primary obstacle clearance area arc indexes are placed at the most adverse points of the fix displacement area as determined by the outer intersections of the enroute radial 4.5 degree lines (VOR) and the cross-radial 3.6 degree lines (VOR). See Figures 17-8 and 17-9. If LF signals are used the 5.0 degree system accuracy lines apply. The parallel dashed lines on the turn area template are aligned with the appropriate system accuracy lines and the curves are drawn.

(2) **Secondary Area "Outside" Curve.** The outside curve of the secondary turning area is the curve farthest from the navigation facility which provides the intersecting radial. This curve is indexed to the distance from the fix to the enroute facility as follows:

(a) Where the fix is less than 51 NM from the enroute facility, the secondary arc is started at a point 2 NM outside the primary index with the parallel dashed lines of the template aligned on the 4.5 degree line. See Figure 17-8.

(b) Where the fix is farther than 51 NM from the enroute station, the arc is started at the point of intersection of the 3.6 and 6.7 degree lines with the parallel dashed lines of the template aligned on the 6.7 degree line. See Figure 17-9.

(3) **Secondary Area "Inside" Curve.** The inside curve is the turning area arc which is nearest the navigation facility which provides the intersecting radial. This arc is begun 2 NM beyond the primary index and on the 3.6 degree line. The parallel dashed lines on the turning area template are aligned with the 4.5 degree line from the enroute station.

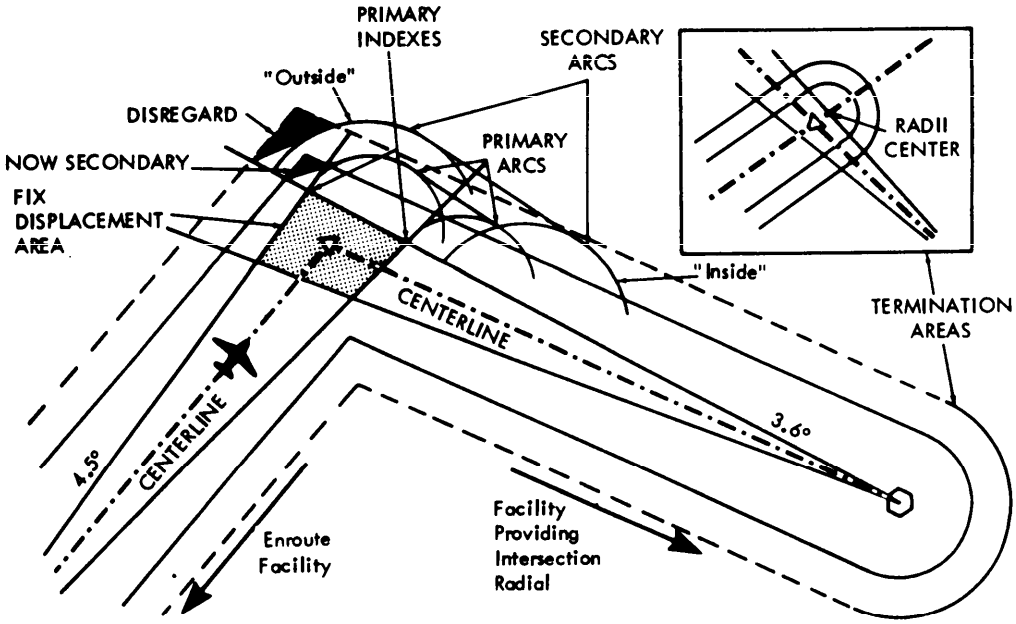


Figure 17-8. TURNING AREA, INTERSECTION FIX. (Facility Distance Less than 51 NM). Par 1715.a. and b.

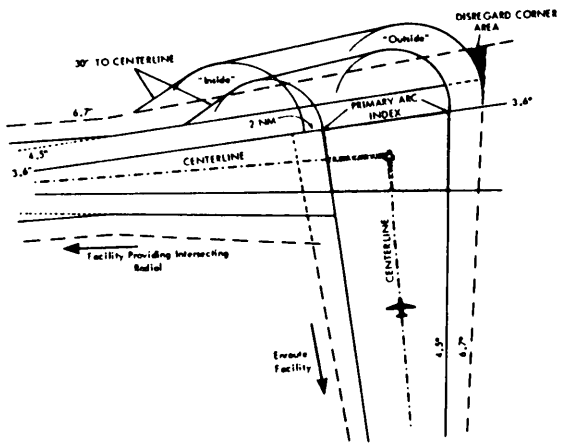


Figure 17-9. TURNING AREA, INTERSECTION FIX. (Facility Distance Beyond 51 NM). Par 1715.a. and b.

(a) Where the fix is less than 51 NM from the enroute facility and the magnitude of the turn is less than 30 degrees, the "inside" curves do not affect the size of the secondary area.

(b) Where the distance from the enroute facility to the fix is more than 51 NM but the magnitude of the turn is less than 45 degrees, the "inside" curves do not increase the size of the secondary area.

(c) Where the magnitude of the turn is greater than those stipulated in (a) and (b) above, the "inside" curves will affect the size of the secondary area.

(d) Whether the secondary area curves affect the size of the secondary obstacle clearance area or not, they must be drawn to provide reference points for the tangential lines described in (4) below.

(4) **Connecting Lines.** Tangential straight lines are now drawn connecting the two primary arcs and the two secondary arcs. The outer limits of both curves are symmetrically connected to the respective primary and secondary area boundaries in the direction of flight by lines drawn at a 30 degree angle to the airway or route centerline. See Figures 17-8 and 17-9.

b. Use of Template When Fix Overheads a Facility. See Figure 17-10. The geographical position of the fix is considered to be displaced laterally and longitudinally by 2 NM at all altitudes.

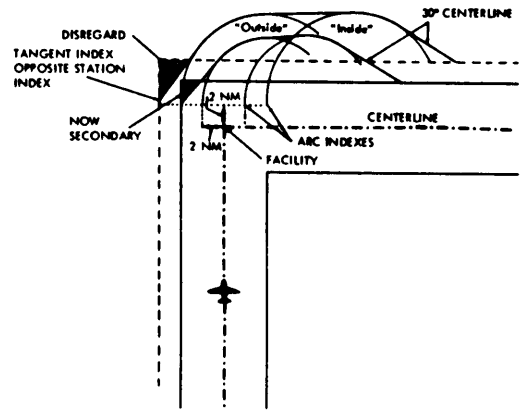


Figure 17-10. TURNING AREA – OVERHEAD THE FACILITY Par 1715b.

(1) **Primary Arcs.** The primary arcs are indexed at points 2 NM beyond the station and 2 NM on each side of the station. The parallel dotted lines on the template are aligned with the airway or route boundaries and the curves drawn.

(2) **Secondary Arcs.** The secondary arcs are indexed 2 NM outside the primary points, and on a line with them. The parallel dotted lines on the template are aligned with the airway or route boundaries, and the curves drawn.

(3) **Connection Lines.** Tangential straight lines are now drawn connecting the two primary and the two secondary arcs. The outer limits of both curves are connected to the primary and secondary area boundaries by intercept lines which are drawn 30 degrees to the airway or route centerline. The 30 degree lines on the template may be used to draw these intercept lines.

c. Deletion Areas. Irregular areas remain on the outer corners of the turn areas. See Figures 17-8, 17-9, and 17-10. These are the areas identified in paragraph 1714 which may be deleted from consideration when obstacle clearance is the deciding factor for determination of MEA on an airway or route segment.

(1) Where the "outside" secondary area curve is started within the airway or route secondary area boundary (see Figure 17-8), the area is blended by drawing a line from the point where the 3.6 degree (5.0 with LF facility) line meets the line which forms the enroute secondary boundary tangent to the "outside" secondary arc. Another line is drawn from the point where the same 3.6 (or 5.0) degree line meets the line which forms the primary boundary, tangent to the matching primary arc. These two lines now enclose the secondary area at the turn. The corner which was formerly part of the secondary area may be disregarded; the part which was formerly part of the primary area may now be considered secondary area. These areas are shaded in Figure 17-8.

(2) Where the secondary curve is indexed on the secondary area boundary formed by the 6.7 degree lines, the arc itself cuts the corner and prescribes the deleted area. See Figure 17-9. This condition occurs when the radio fix is over 51 NM from the enroute navigation facility.

(3) When overheading the facility, the secondary area corner deletion area is established by drawing a line from a point opposite the station index at the secondary area boundary, tangent to the secondary "outside" curve. See Figure 17-10. A similar line is drawn from a point opposite the station index at the primary area boundary, tangent to the primary turning arc. The corner formerly part of the primary area now becomes secondary area. The deletion areas are shown in Figure 17-10 by shading.

1716. CHANGEOVER POINTS (COP). Points have been defined between navigation facilities along airway/route segments which are called "changeover points (COP)." These points indicate that the pilot using the airway/route should "change over" his navigation equipment to receive course guidance from the facility ahead of the aircraft instead of the one behind. These COP divide a segment and assure continuous reception of navigation signals at the prescribed minimum enroute IFR altitude (MEA). They also assure that aircraft operating within the same portion of an airway or route segment will not be using azimuth signals from two different navigation facilities. Where signal coverage from two facilities overlaps at the MEA, the COP will normally be designated at the midpoint. Where radio frequency interference or other navigation signal problems exist, the COP will be at the optimum location, taking into consideration the signal strength, alignment error, or any other known condition which affects reception. The effect of COP on the primary and secondary obstacle clearance areas is as follows:

a. Short Segments. If the airway or route segment is less than 102 NM long and the COP is placed at the midpoint, the obstacle clearance areas are not affected. See Figure 17-11.

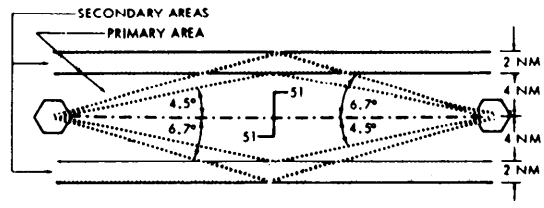


Figure 17-11. COP EFFECT. Short Airway or Route Segment. Par 1716.a.

b. Long Segments. If the distance between two facilities is over 102 NM and the COP is placed at the midpoint, the system accuracy lines extend beyond the minimum widths of 8 and 12 NM, and a flare results at the COP. See Figure 17-12.

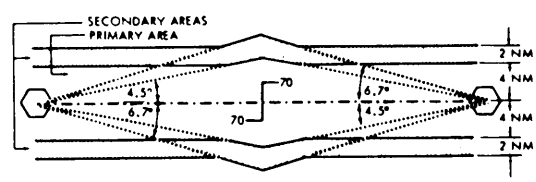


Figure 17-12. COP EFFECT. Long Airway or Route Segment. Par 1716.b.

c. Offset COP. If the changeover point is offset due to facility performance problems, the system accuracy lines must be carried from the farthest facility to a position abeam the changeover point, and these lines on each side of the airway or route segment at the COP are joined by lines drawn directly from the nearer facility. In this case the angles of the lines drawn from the nearer facility have no specific angle. See Figure 17-13.

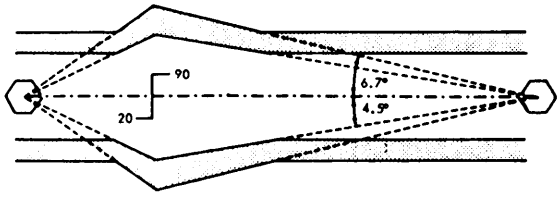


Figure 17-13. OFFSET COP. Par 1716.c.

d. Dogleg Segment. A dogleg airway or route segment may be treated in a manner similar to that given offset COPs. The system accuracy lines will be drawn to meet at a line drawn as the bisector of the dogleg "bend" angle and the boundaries of the primary and secondary areas extended as required. See Figure 17-14.

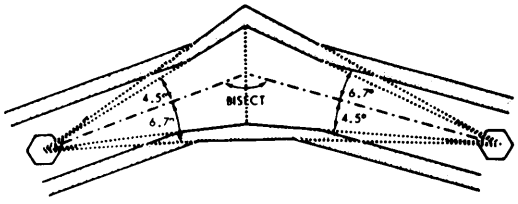


Figure 17-14. DOGLEG SEGMENT. Par 1716.d.

1717. COURSE CHANGE EFFECT. The complexity of defining the obstacle clearance areas is increased when the airway or route becomes more complex. Figure 17-15 shows the method of defining the primary area when a radio fix and a COP are involved. Note that the system accuracy lines are drawn from the farthest facility

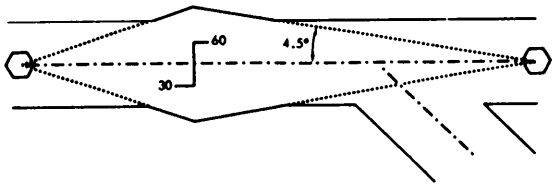
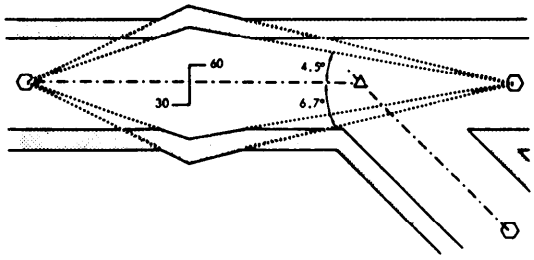


Figure 17-15. COURSE CHANGE EFFECT. Par 1717.

first, and govern the width of the airway or route at the COP. The application of secondary area criteria results in a segment similar to that depicted in Figure 17-16.



* Figure 17-16. APPLICATION OF SECONDARY AREAS Par 1717 *

1718. MINIMUM ENROUTE INSTRUMENT ALTITUDES (MEA). An MEA will be established for each segment of an airway/route from radio fix to radio fix. The MEA will be established based upon obstacle clearance over the terrain or over manmade objects, adequacy of navigation facility performance, and communications requirements. Segments are designated West to East and South to North. Altitudes will be established to the nearest 100 foot increment; i.e., 2049 feet becomes 2000, and 2050 feet becomes 2100.

NOTE: Care must be taken to insure that all MEAs based upon flight inspection information have been corrected to and reported as true altitudes above mean sea level (MSL).

1719. PROTECTED ENROUTE AREAS. As previously established, the enroute areas which must be considered for obstacle clearance protection are identified as primary, secondary, and turn areas. The overall consideration of these areas is necessary when determining obstacle clearances.

Section 2. VHF Obstacle Clearance

1720. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE, PRIMARY AREA.

a. Nonmountainous Areas. The minimum obstacle clearance over areas NOT designated as mountainous under FAR 95 will be 1000 feet over the highest obstacle.

b. Mountainous Areas. Owing to the action of Bernoulli Effect and of atmospheric eddies, vortices, waves, and other phenomena which occur in conjunction with the disturbed airflow attending the passage of strong winds over mountains, pressure deficiencies manifested as very steep horizontal pressure gradients develop over such regions. Since downdrafts and turbulence are prevalent under these conditions, the hazards to air navigation are multiplied. Except as set forth in (1) and (2) below, the minimum obstacle clearance over terrain and manmade obstacles, within areas designated in FAR 95 as "mountainous" will be 2000 feet.

(1) Obstacle clearance may be reduced to not less than 1500 feet above terrain in the designated mountainous areas of the Eastern United States, Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and the land areas of the State of Hawaii; and may be reduced to not less than 1700 feet above terrain in the designated mountainous areas of the Western United States and the State of Alaska. Consideration must be given to the following points before any altitudes providing less than 2000 feet of terrain clearance are authorized.

(a) Areas characterized by precipitous terrain.

(b) Weather phenomena peculiar to the area.

(c) Phenomena conducive to marked pressure differentials.

(d) Type of and distance between navigation facilities.

(e) Availability of weather services throughout the area.

(f) Availability and reliability of altimeter resetting points along airways/routes in the area.

(2) Altitudes providing at least 1000 feet of obstacle clearance over towers and/or other manmade obstacles may be authorized within designated mountainous areas provided such obstacles are NOT located on precipitous terrain where Bernoulli Effect is known or suspected to exist.

NOTE: When approving MEAs with less than 2000 feet of obstacle clearance in designated mountainous areas, a record of such approval will be maintained by the Flight Inspection Field Office.

1721. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE, SECONDARY AREAS. In all areas, mountainous and nonmountainous, obstacles which are located in the secondary areas will be considered as obstacles to air navigation when they extend above the secondary obstacle clearance plane. This plane begins at a point 500 feet above the obstacles upon which the primary obstacle clearance area MOCA is based, and slants upward at an angle which will cause it to intersect the outer edge of the secondary area at a point 500 feet higher. See Figure 17-17. Where an obstacle extends above this plane, the normal MOCA shall be increased by adding to the MSL height of the highest penetrating obstacle in the secondary area the required clearance (C), computed with the following formula:

$$\frac{D^1}{D^2} = \frac{500}{C} \text{ or } C = \frac{500 \times D^2}{D^1}$$

D^1 is the total width of the secondary area.

D^2 is the distance from the obstacle to the OUTER edge of the secondary area.

NOTE: Add an extra 1000 feet in mountainous areas except where MEAs in enroute airspace

☆ U.S. Government Printing Office: 1987—181-763/40253

areas are reduced under the provisions of paragraph 1720. In these cases, where the primary area MOCA has been reduced to 1700 feet, add 700 feet to the secondary obstacle clearance, and where the primary area MOCA has been reduced to 1500 feet, add 500 feet to the secondary area clearance value.

D^1 has a total width of 2 NM, or 12,152 feet out to a distance of 51 NM from the enroute facility, and then increases at a rate of 236 feet for each additional NM.

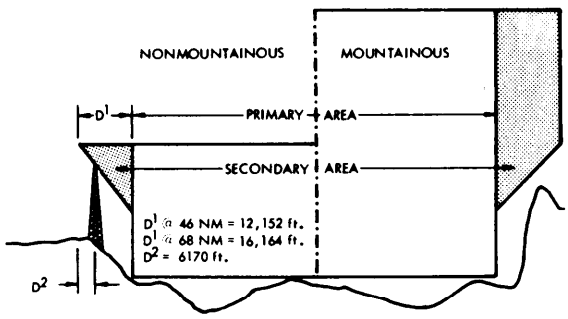


Figure 17-17. CROSS SECTION, SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCES. Par 1721.

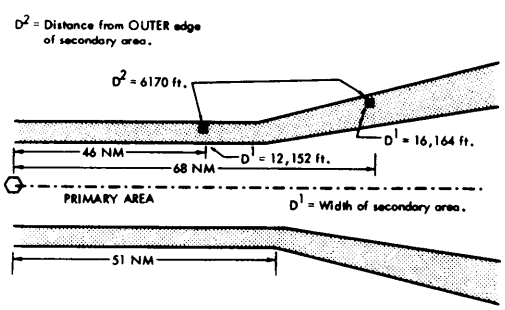


Figure 17-18. PLAN VIEW, SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCES. Par 1721.

Example: An obstacle which reaches 1875 feet MSL is found in the secondary area 6170 feet inside the outer secondary area boundary and 46 NM from the facility. See Figures 17-17 and 17-18.

D^1 is 12,152 feet.
D^2 is 6170 feet.

$$\frac{500 \times 6170}{12{,}152} = 253.8 \text{ (254 feet)}$$

Obstacle height (1875) + 254 = 2129.
MOCA is 2100 feet.

1722. OBSTACLE CLEARANCE GRAPH. Figure 17-19 is a secondary area obstacle clearance graph, designed to allow the determination of clearance requirements without using the formula. The left axis shows the required obstacle clearance; the lower axis shows the distance from the outer edge of the secondary area to the obstacle. The slant lines are facility distance references.

Facility distances which fall between the charted values may be found by interpolation along the vertical distance lines.

a. Application. To use the secondary area obstacle clearance chart, enter with the value representing the distance from the outer edge of the secondary area to the obstacle. In the problems above this distance was 6170 feet. Proceed up to the "51 NM or less" line and read the clearance requirement from the left axis. The chart reads 254 feet, the same as was found using the formula. To solve the second problem, reenter the chart at 6170 feet and move vertically to find 68 NM between the 60 and 70 NM facility distance slant lines. The clearance requirement shown to the left is 191 feet, the same as found using the formula.

b. Finding the MOCA. The required clearance, found by using the graph, is now added to the MSL height of the obstacle to get the MOCA:

(1) 46 NM from facility:
254 + 1875 = 2129 (2100 MSL).

(2) 68 NM from facility:
191 + 1875 = 2066 (2100 MSL).

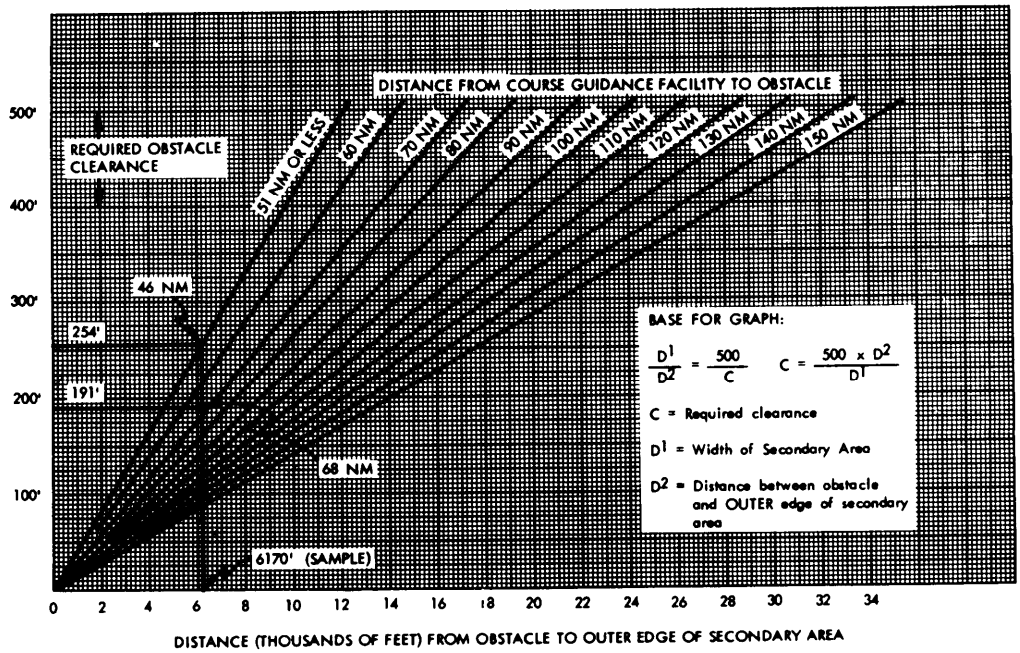


Figure 17-19. SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Par 1722.

1723.-1729. RESERVED.

Section 3. Altitudes

1730. MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDES (MCA). It is necessary to establish MCAs in all cases where obstacles intervene to prevent a pilot from maintaining obstacle clearance during a normal climb to a higher MEA after the aircraft passes a point beyond which the higher MEA applies. The same vertical obstacle clearance requirement for the primary and secondary areas must be considered in the determination of the MCA. See paragraph 1718. The standard for determining the MCA shall be based upon the following climb rates, and is computed from the flight altitude:

SL through 5000 feet	150 ft/NM
5000 through 10,000 feet	120 ft/NM
10,000 feet and over	100 ft/NM

a. To determine the MCA, the distance from the obstacle to the radio fix shall be computed from the point where the centerline of the en route course in the direction of flight intersects the farthest displacement from the fix. See Figures 17-20 and 17-21.

*

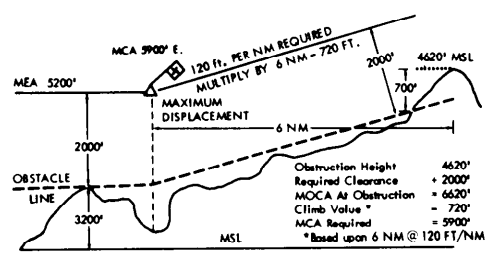


Figure 17-20. MCA DETERMINATION POINT. Par 1730.

*

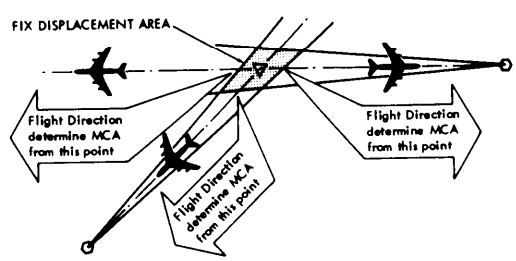


Figure 17-21. DETERMINATION OF MCA. Par 1730.

b. When a change of altitudes is involved with a course change, course guidance must be provided if the change of altitude is more than 1500 feet and/or if the course change is more than 45 degrees.

EXCEPTION: Course changes of up to 90 degrees may be approved without course guidance provided that no obstacles penetrate the established MEA requirement of the previous airway/route segment within 15 NM of the boundaries of the system accuracy displacement area of the fix. See Figure 17-22 and paragraph 1740.b.(2).

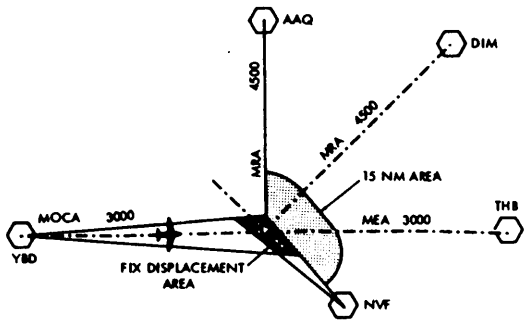


Figure 17-22. MEA WITH NAVIGATION GAP AT TURNING POINT. Par 1740.b.(2).

1731. ENROUTE MINIMUM HOLDING ALTITUDES. Criteria for holding pattern airspace are contained in FAA Handbook 7130.3 and provide for separation of aircraft from aircraft. The criteria contained herein deal with the clearance of holding aircraft from obstacles.

a. Area. The primary obstacle clearance area for holding shall be based on the appropriate holding pattern airspace area specified in FAA Handbook 7130.3, Holding Pattern Criteria. No reduction in the pattern sizes for "on-entry" procedures is permitted. In addition, when holding is at an intersection fix, the selected pattern shall also be large enough to contain at least 3 corners of the fix displacement area. See paragraphs 284, 285, and Figure 37. A secondary area 2 miles wide surrounds the perimeter of the primary area.

b. Obstacle Clearance. The minimum obstacle clearance of the route shall be provided throughout the primary area. In the secondary area 500 feet of obstacle clearance shall be provided at the INNER edge, tapering to zero feet at the outer edge. For computation of obstacle clearance in the secondary area, see Appendix 2, paragraph 5 for use of Figure 123. Allowance for precipitous terrain should be considered as stated in paragraph 323.a. The altitudes selected by application of the obstacle clearance specified in this paragraph may be rounded to the nearest 100 feet.

c. Communications. The communications on appropriate ATC frequencies (as determined by ATS) shall be required throughout the entire holding pattern area from the MHA up to and including the maximum holding altitude. If the communications are not satisfactory at the minimum holding obstacle clearance altitude, the MHA shall be authorized at an altitude where the communications are satisfactory. For communications to be satisfactory, they must meet the standards as set forth in FAA Handbook OA P 8200.1, The U.S. Standard Flight Inspection Manual.

d. Holding Patterns On/Adjacent to ILS Courses. Holding patterns on or adjacent to ILS courses shall comply with FAA Handbook 7130.3, Holding Pattern Criteria, paragraph 54.

e. High Altitude. All holding patterns in the high altitude structure shall be coordinated with the Flight Standards National Field Office prior to being approved.

1732.-1739. RESERVED.

Section 4. Navigational Gaps

1740. NAVIGATIONAL GAP CRITERIA. Where a gap in course guidance exists, an airway or route segment may be approved in accordance with the criteria set forth in 1740.c., provided:

a. Restrictions.

(1) The gap may not exceed a distance which varies directly with altitude from zero NM at sea level to 65 NM at 45,000 feet MSL, and;

(2) Not more than one gap may exist in the airspace structure for the airway/route segment, and;

(3) A gap may not occur at any airway or route turning point, except when the provisions of paragraph 1740.b.(2) are applied, and;

(4) A notation must be included on FAA Form 8260-16 which specifies the area within which a gap exists where the MEA has been established with a gap in navigational signal coverage. The gap area will be identified by distances from the navigation facilities.

b. Authorizations. MEAs with gaps shall be authorized only where a specific operational requirement exists. Where gaps exceed the distance in 1740.a.(1), or are in conflict with the limitations in 1740.a.(2) or (3), the MEA must be increased as follows:

(1) For straight segments:

(a) To an altitude which will meet the distance requirement of 1740.a.(1), or;

(b) When in conflict with 1740.a.(1) or (2) to an altitude where there is continuous course guidance available.

(2) For turning segments. Turns to intercept radials with higher MEAs may be allowed provided:

(a) The increase in MEA does not exceed 1500 feet, and;

(b) The turn does not exceed 90 degrees, and;

(c) No obstacles penetrate the MEA of the course being flown within 15 NM of the fix displacement area. See Figure 17-22.

(3) When in conflict with 1740.b.(1) or (2) to an altitude where there is continuous course guidance available.

c. Use of Steps. Where large gaps exist which require the establishment of altitudes which obviate the effective use of airspace, consideration may be given to the establishment of MEA

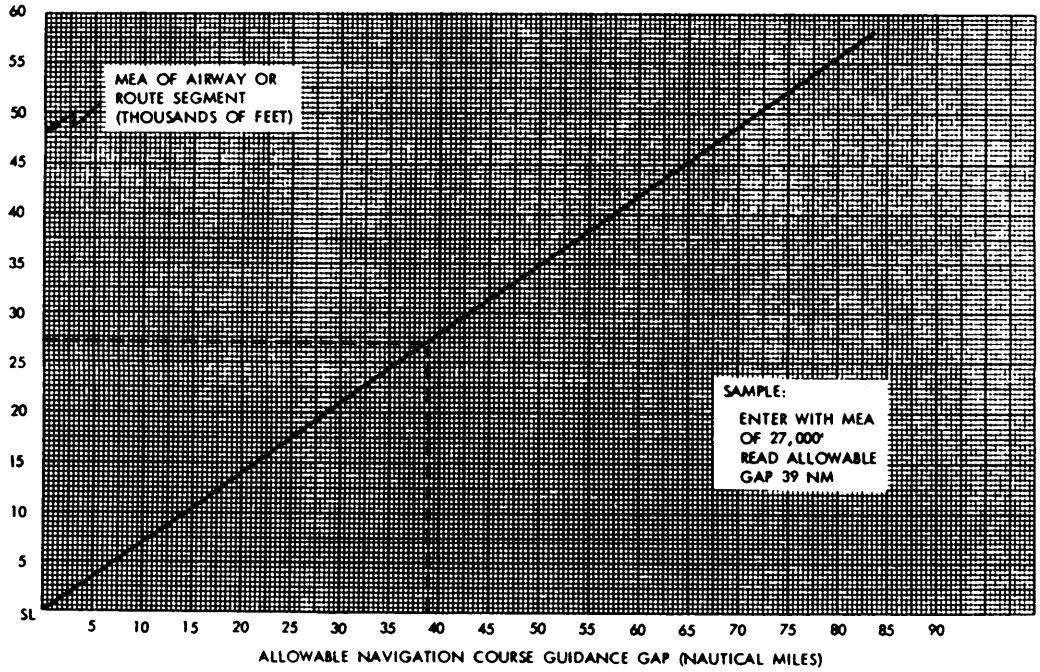


Figure 17-23. NAVIGATION COURSE GUIDANCE GAPS. Par 1740.

"steps." These steps may be established at increments of not less than 2000 feet below 18,000 feet MSL, or not less than 4000 feet at 18,000 feet MSL and above, provided that a total gap does not exist for the segment within the airspace structure. MEA steps shall be limited to one step between any two facilities to eliminate continuous or repeated changes of altitude in problem areas. MEA changes shall be identified by designated radio fixes.

d. Gaps. Allowable navigational gaps may be determined by reference to the graph in Figure 17-23.

Example: The problem drawn on the chart shows the method used to determine the allowable gap on a route segment with a proposed MEA of 27,000 feet. Enter the graph at the left edge with the MEA of 27,000 feet. Move to the right to the interception of the diagonal line. Move to the bottom of the graph to read the allowable gap. In the problem drawn, a 39 NM gap is allowable.

1741.-1749. RESERVED.

Section 5. Low Frequency Airways or Routes

1750. LF AIRWAYS OR ROUTES.

a. Usage. LF navigation facilities may be used to establish enroute airway/route segments. Then use will be limited to those instances where an operational requirement exists.

b. Obstacle Clearance Areas. See Figures 17-24 and 17-25.

(1) The primary obstacle clearance area boundaries of LF segments are lines drawn 4.34 NM (5 statute miles) on each side of and parallel to the segment centerline. These boundaries will be affected by obstacle clearance area factors shown in c. below.

(2) The LF secondary obstacle clearance areas extend laterally for an additional 4.34 NM on each side of the primary area. The boundaries of the secondary areas are also affected by the obstacle clearance area factors shown in c. below.

c. Obstacle Clearance Area Factors. See Figures 17-24 and 17-25.

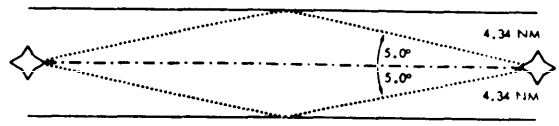


Figure 17-24. LF SEGMENT PRIMARY OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREA. Par 1750.b.

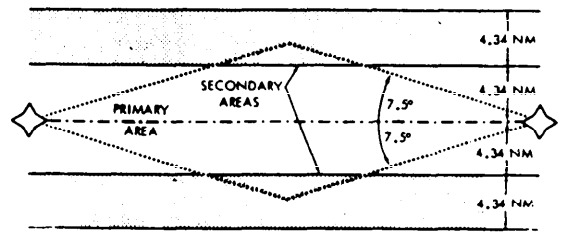


Figure 17-25. LF SEGMENT SECONDARY OBSTACLE CLEARANCE AREA. Par 1750.b.

(1) The primary area of LF segments is expanded in the same way as for VHF airways/routes. Lines are drawn at 5 degrees off the course centerline from each facility. These lines meet at the midpoint of the segment. Penetration of the 4.34 NM boundary occurs 49.66 (50) NM from the facility.

(2) The secondary areas are expanded in the same manner as the secondary areas for VHF airways/routes. Lines are drawn 7.5 degrees on each side of the segment centerline. These 7.5 degree lines will intersect the original 8.68 NM secondary area boundaries at 65.93 (66) NM from the facility.

d. Obstacle Clearance.

(1) Obstacle clearance in the primary area of LF airways or routes is the same as that required for VOR airways/routes. The areas over which the clearances apply are different, as shown in paragraph 1750.c.

(2) Secondary area obstacle clearance requirements for LF segments are based upon distance from the facility and location of the obstacle relative to the inside boundary of the secondary area.

(a) Within 25 NM of the facility the obstacle clearance is based upon a 50:1 plane drawn from the primary area boundary 500 feet above the obstacle which dictates its MOCA and extending to the edge of the secondary area. When obstacles penetrate this 50:1 plane, the MOCA for the segment will be increased above that dictated for the primary area obstacle as follows:

Distance from Primary Boundary	Add to Height of Obstacle
0 - 1 statute miles	500 feet
1 - 2 statute miles	400 feet
2 - 3 statute miles	300 feet
3 - 4 statute miles	200 feet
4 - 5 statute miles	100 feet

NOTE: See Figure 17-26 for cross section view. Also see (c) below.

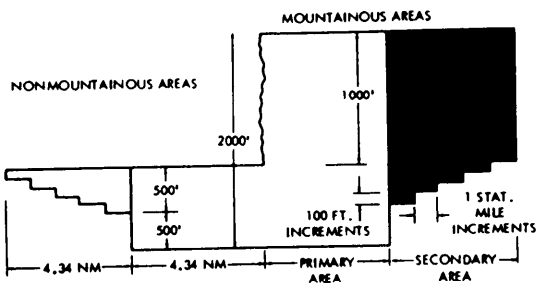


Figure 17-26. LF SEGMENT OBSTACLE CLEARANCE WITHIN 25 NM OF ENROUTE FACILITY. Par 1750.d.

(b) Beyond the 25 NM distance from the facility, the secondary obstacle clearance plane is flat. This plane is drawn from the primary area boundary 500 feet above the obstacle which dictates its MOCA and extending to the edge of the secondary area. If an obstacle penetrates this surface the MOCA for the segment will be increased so as to provide 500 feet of clearance over the obstacle. See Figure 17-27. Also see (c) below.

(c) Obstacle clearance values shown in (a) and (b) above are correct for nonmountainous areas only. For areas designated as mountainous add 1000 feet.

1751.-1759. RESERVED.

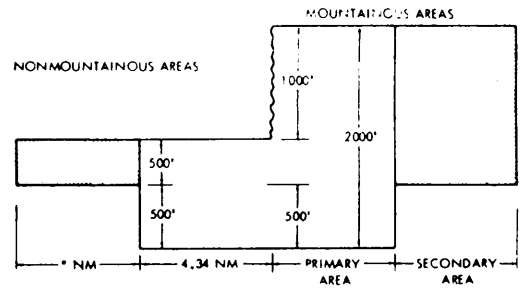


Figure 17-27. LF SEGMENT OBSTACLE CLEARANCE OVER 25 NM FROM ENROUTE FACILITY. Par 1750.d.

Section 6. Minimum Divergence Angles

1760. GENERAL.

a. Governing Facility. The governing facility for determining the minimum divergence angle depends upon how the fix is determined.

(1) Where the fix is predicated on an off-course radial or bearing, the distance from the fix to the facility providing the off-course radial or bearing is used.

(2) Where the fix is predicated on the radials or bearings of two intersecting airways or routes, the distance between the farthest facility and the fix will be used to determine the angle.

b. Holding. Where holding is to be authorized at a fix, the minimum divergence angle is 45 degrees.

1761. VHF FIXES.

a. The minimum divergence angles for those fixes formed by intersecting VHF radials are determined as follows:

(1) When both radio facilities are located within 30 NM of the fix, the minimum divergence angle is 30 degrees.

(2) When the governing facility is over 30 NM from the fix, the minimum allowable angle will be increased at the rate of 1 degree per NM up to 45 NM (45 degrees).

(3) Beyond 45 NM, the minimum divergence angle increases at the rate of 1/2 degree per NM.

Example: Distance from fix to governing facility is 51 NM. 51 − 45 = 6 NM. 6 × 1/2 = 3 additional degrees. Add to the 45 degrees required at 45 NM and get 48 degrees minimum divergence angle at 51 NM.

b. A graph (Figure 17-28) may be used to define minimum divergence angles. Using the foregoing example, enter the chart at the bottom with the facility distance (51 NM). Move up to the "VHF Fix" conversion line. Then move to the left to read the angle – 48 degrees.

1762. LF OR VHF/LF FIXES.

a. Minimum divergence angles for LF or integrated (VHF/LF) fixes are determined as follows:

(1) When the governing facility is within 30 NM of the fix, the minimum divergence angle is 45 degrees.

(2) Beyond 30 NM the minimum angle must be increased at the rate of 1 degree for each NM, except for fixes on long overwater routes where the fix will be used for reporting purposes and not for traffic separation.

Example: The distance from the governing facility is 51 NM. 51 − 30 = 21 NM. 21 × 1 = 21. Add 21 to 45 degrees required at 30 NM to get the required divergence angle of 66 degrees.

b. The graph (Figure 17-28) may be used to define minimum angles for LF or VHF/LF fixes. Using the foregoing example, enter at the bottom of the chart with the 51 NM distance between facility and fix. Move up to the "LF or INTEGRATED FIX" conversion line, then left to read the required divergence angle, 66 degrees.

1763.-1799. RESERVED.

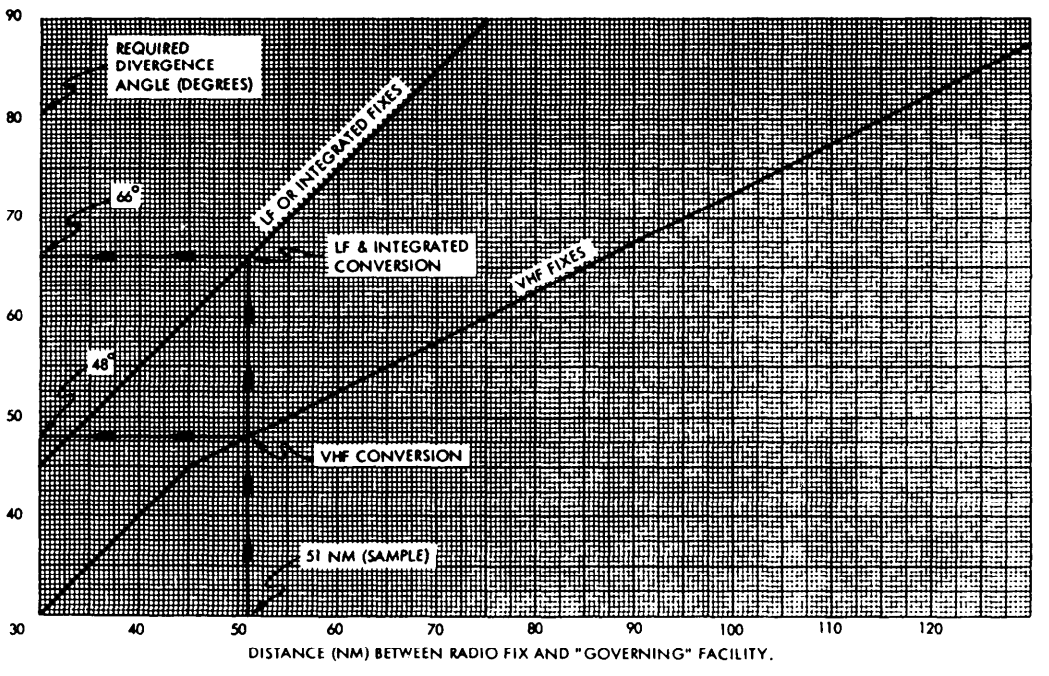


Figure 17-28. MINIMUM DIVERGENCE ANGLE FOR RADIO FIX. Par 1761.b. and 1762.b.

1. APPENDIX APPLICATION. The material contained in these appendices applies to support criteria contained in the several chapters of the handbook. Appendix material includes:

a. Appendix 1, Paragraph 2. Glossary. A listing of special terms and abbreviations to explain their meaning and application to procedures and criteria.

b. Appendix 2. Procedures Charts. These charts depict secondary area obstacle problems, solutions, methods of computing glide slope threshold crossing heights, glide slope antenna location, applications of ILS/PAR obstacle clearance criteria, and an analysis of obstacle clearances.

c. Appendix 3. This appendix contains lists of Figures, a list of Tables, and a list of References to other publications.

d. Appendix 4. Tangents. A complete list of tangents for angles from 0.0 to 9.0 degrees in hundredths of degrees for application in solving glide slope problems.

e. Appendix 5. Approach Lighting. This appendix contains descriptions of standard approach lighting systems and lists of other systems which may be given the same visibility credit in the development of military procedures.

f. Appendix 6. Alphabetical Index.

2. GLOSSARY. Definitions shown in this glossary apply to Terminal Instrument Procedures Criteria in this Handbook.

AL Approach and Landing (Chart).

Angle of Divergence (Minimum) The smaller of the angles formed by the intersection of two courses, radials, bearings, or combinations thereof.

Approach Surface Baseline An imaginary horizontal line at threshold elevation.

Approving Authority Headquarters representatives of the various signatory authorities shown in the Foreword, Page iv.

BC Back Course (Localizer).

Circling Approach Area The area in which aircraft circle to land under visual conditions after completing an instrument approach.

Controlling Obstacle The highest obstacle relative to a prescribed plane within a specified area.

Note: In precision approach procedures where obstacles penetrate the approach surface, the controlling obstacle is the one which results in the requirement for the highest decision height (DH).

Dead Reckoning The estimating or determining of position by advancing an earlier known position by the application of direction and speed data. For example, flight based on a heading from one VORTAC azimuth and distance fix to another is dead reckoning.

Diverse Vector An instruction issued by a radar controller to fly a specific course which is not a part of a predetermined radar pattern. Also referred to as a "random vector".

Decision Height (DH) The height, specified in MSL, above the highest runway elevation in the touchdown zone at which a missed approach shall be initiated if the required visual reference has not been established. This term is used only in procedures where an electronic glide slope provides the reference for descent, as in ILS or PAR.

DME Arc A course, indicated as a constant DME distance, around a navigation facility which provides distance information.

DME Distance The line of sight distance (slant range) from the source of the DME signal to the receiving antenna.

FAC Final Approach Course.

FAF Final Approach Fix.

Flight Inspection In-flight investigation and certification of certain operational performance characteristics of electronic and visual navigation facilities by an authorized inspector in conformance with the U.S. Standard Flight Inspection Manual.

Gradient A slope expressed in feet per mile, or as a ratio of the horizontal to the vertical distance. For example, 40:1 means 40 feet horizontally to 1 foot vertically.

GPI Ground Point of Intercept. A point in the vertical plane on the runway centerline at which it is assumed that the straight line extension of the glide slope intercepts the runway approach surface baseline.

HAA Height above airport elevation.

HAT Height above touchdown zone elevation.

IAC Initial Approach Course.

IAF Initial Approach Fix.

IC Intermediate Course.

IF Intermediate Fix.

JAL High Altitude Approach and Landing (Chart).

LOC Localizer. The component of an ILS which provides lateral guidance with respect to the runway centerline.

LDA Localizer type directional aid. A facility of comparable utility and accuracy to a LOC, but which is not part of a full ILS and may not be aligned with the runway.

MAP Missed Approach Point (Paragraph 272).

MDA Minimum Descent Altitude (Paragraph 320).

MHA Minimum Holding Altitude.

NDB(ADF) A combined term which indicates that a nondirectional beacon (NDB) provides an electronic signal for use with airborne automatic direction finding (ADF) equipment.

Obstacle An existing object, object of natural growth, or terrain at a fixed geographical location, or which may be expected at a fixed location within a prescribed area, with reference to which vertical clearance is or must be provided during flight operation. For example, with reference to mobile objects, a moving vehicle 17 feet high is assumed to be on an Interstate highway, 15 feet high on other highways, and 23 feet high on a railroad track, except where limited to certain heights controlled by use or construction. The height of a ship's mast is assumed according to the types of ships known to use an anchorage.

Obstacle Clearance The vertical distance between the lowest authorized flight altitude and a prescribed surface within a specified area.

Obstacle Clearance Boxes $\boxed{500}$ when used in figures which depict approach segments these boxes indicate the obstacle clearance requirements in feet.

Operational Advantage An improvement which benefits the users of an instrument procedure. Achievement of lower minimums or authorization for a straight-in approach with no derogation of safety are examples of an operational advantage. Many of the options in TERPs are specified for this purpose. For instance, the flexible final approach course alignment criteria may permit the ALS to be used for reduced visibility credit by selection of the proper optional course.

Optimum Most favorable. As used in TERPs, optimum identifies the value which should be used wherever a choice is available.

Positive Course Guidance A continuous display of navigational data which enables an aircraft to be flown along a specific course line.

Precipitous Terrain Terrain characterized by steep or abrupt slopes.

Precision and Nonprecision These terms are used to differentiate between navigational facilities which provide a combined azimuth and glide slope guidance to a runway (Precision) and those which do not. The term nonprecision refers to facilities without a glide slope, and does not imply an unacceptable quality of course guidance.

Primary Area The area within a segment in which full obstacle clearance is applied.

ROC Required Obstacle Clearance.

Runway Environment The runway threshold or approved lighting aids or other markings identifiable with the runway.

Secondary Area The area within a segment in which ROC is reduced as distance from the prescribed course is increased.

Segment The basic functional division of an instrument approach procedure. The segment is oriented with respect to the course to be flown. Specific values for determining course alignment, obstacle clearance areas, descent gradients, and obstacle clearance requirements are associated with each segment according to its functional purpose.

Service Volume That volume of airspace surrounding a VOR, TACAN, or VORTAC facility within which a signal of usable strength exists and where that signal is not operationally limited by co-channel interference. The advertised service volume is defined as a simple cylinder of airspace for ease in planning areas of operation.

Threshold Crossing Height The height of the straight line extension of the glide slope above the runway at the threshold.

TDZ Touchdown Zone.

Touchdown Zone The first 3000 feet of runway beginning at the threshold.

Touchdown Zone Elevation The highest runway centerline elevation in the touchdown zone.

Transition Level The flight level below which heights are expressed in feet MSL and are based on an approved station altimeter setting.

Visual Descent Point (VDP) The visual descent point is a defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided visual reference is established.

1. SECONDARY AREAS. The graphs contained in this Section and the sample problems which illustrate their use are provided to assist in computing secondary area widths and required obstacle clearance (ROC) at the location of an obstacle.

2. SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE PROBLEMS. Figure 121 illustrates the location of problem obstacles in the various approach segment secondary areas. It also identifies the appropriate figures in this section which apply to each particular problem obstacle.

3. INITIAL SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. The graph in Figure 123 is used to determine the required obstacle clearance in the initial approach secondary area.

a. Problem 1. The obstacle is in the secondary area .3 miles from the inner edge. Find the ROC.

b. Solution.

(1) Enter the graph in Figure 123 on the bottom scale at the distance the obstacle is from the inner edge (.3 miles).

(2) Proceed vertically to intersect with the 2 mile slant line.

(3) Move left horizontally and read the ROC, 425 feet.

4. WIDTH OF INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SECONDARY AREA. The graph in Figure 122 is used to determine the width of the intermediate approach secondary area at the location of a problem obstacle.

a. Problem 2. The FAF is 10 miles from the facility. An obstacle is 2.8 miles from the FAF and .48 miles from the inner edge of the secondary area. Find the width of the secondary area at the FAF and at location of the obstacle.

b. Solution.

(1) Determine the width of the secondary area at the FAF (.33 miles) by using Figure 124.

(2) Place a straight edge on Figure 122 between .33 miles on the secondary area width scale and 15 miles* on the length of segment scale.

(3) Locate 2.8 miles on the length of segment scale and proceed horizontally to intersect with the straight edge.

(4) Drop vertically from the intersection point to read .64 miles on the secondary area width scale. This is the width of the secondary area at the location of the obstruction.

**NOTE: Use the actual length of the intermediate segment. It may be between 5 and 15 miles long.*

5. INTERMEDIATE SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. The graph in Figure 123 is used to determine the required obstacle clearance (ROC) in the intermediate secondary area.

a. Problem 3. The obstacle is in the secondary area 2.8 miles from the FAF and .48 miles from the inner edge of the secondary area. Find the ROC.

b. Solution. From Figure 122 we have determined the width of the secondary area at the location of the obstacle. It is .64 miles.

(1) Enter the graph in Figure 123 on the bottom scale at the distance the obstacle is from the inner edge (.48 miles).

(2) Proceed vertically to intersect with the appropriate area width slanted line (.64 miles).

(3) Move horizontally to the left and read ROC 125 Feet.

6. WIDTH OF FINAL APPROACH SECONDARY AREA. The graph in Figure 124 is used to determine the width of the final approach secondary area at any given distance from the navigation facility.

a. Problem 4. In a procedure based on a VORTAC the FAF is 10 miles from the facility. Find the width of the secondary area at the FAF.

b. Solution.

(1) Enter the graph in Figure 124 at 10 on the distance from facility scale.

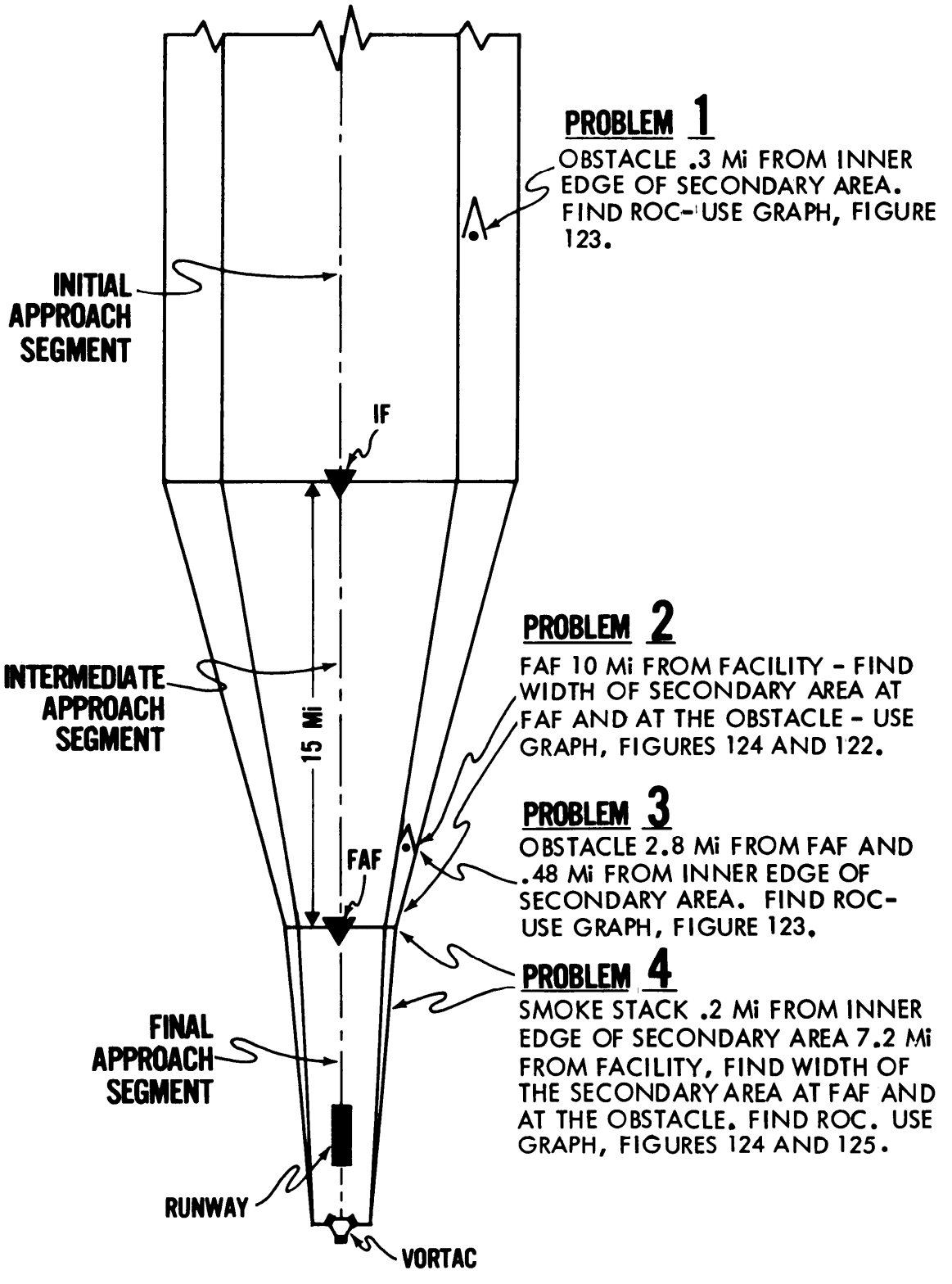


Figure 121. SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE PROBLEMS. Par 2 Appendix 2.

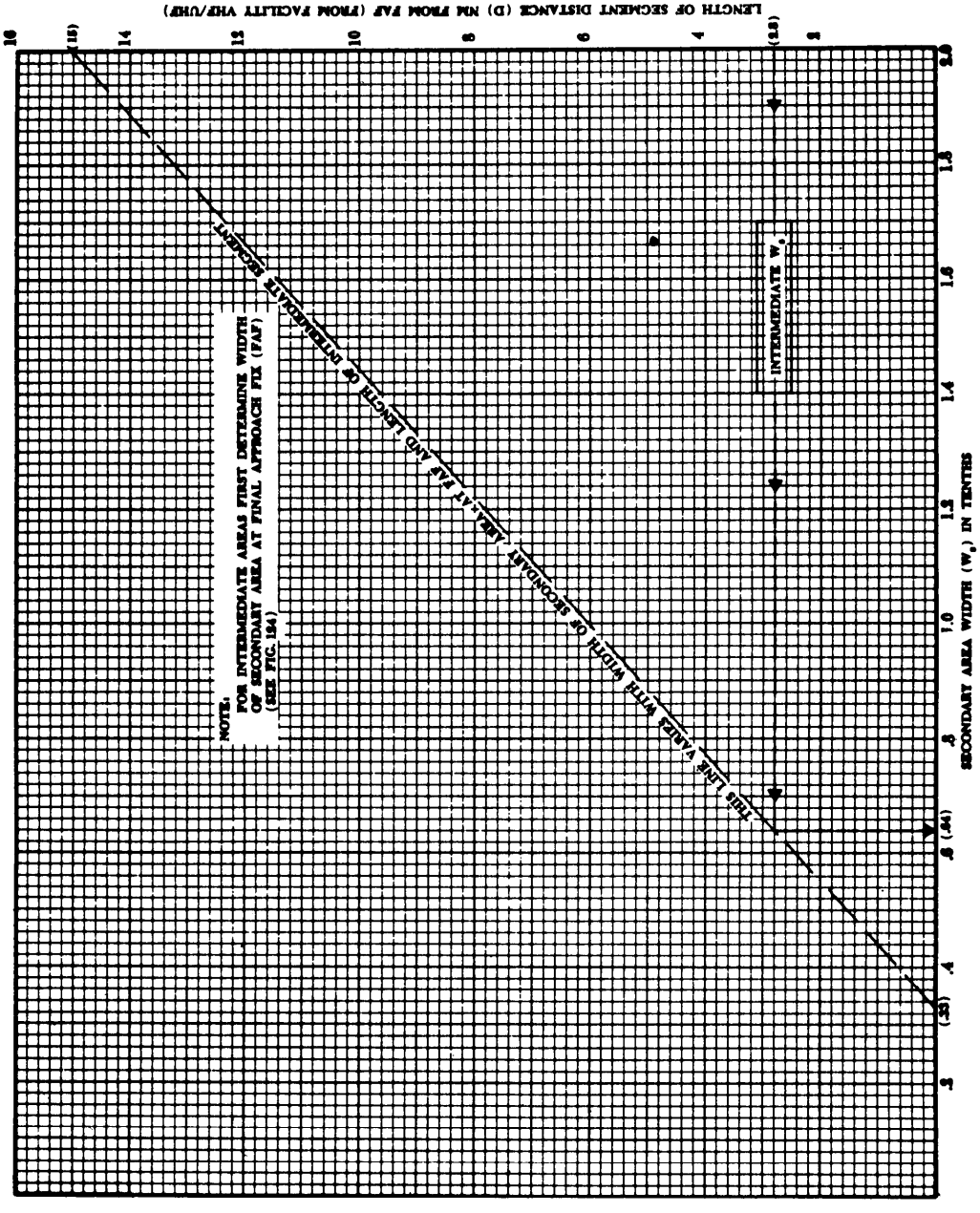


Figure 122. WIDTH OF INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SECONDARY AREA. Par 3, Appendix 2.

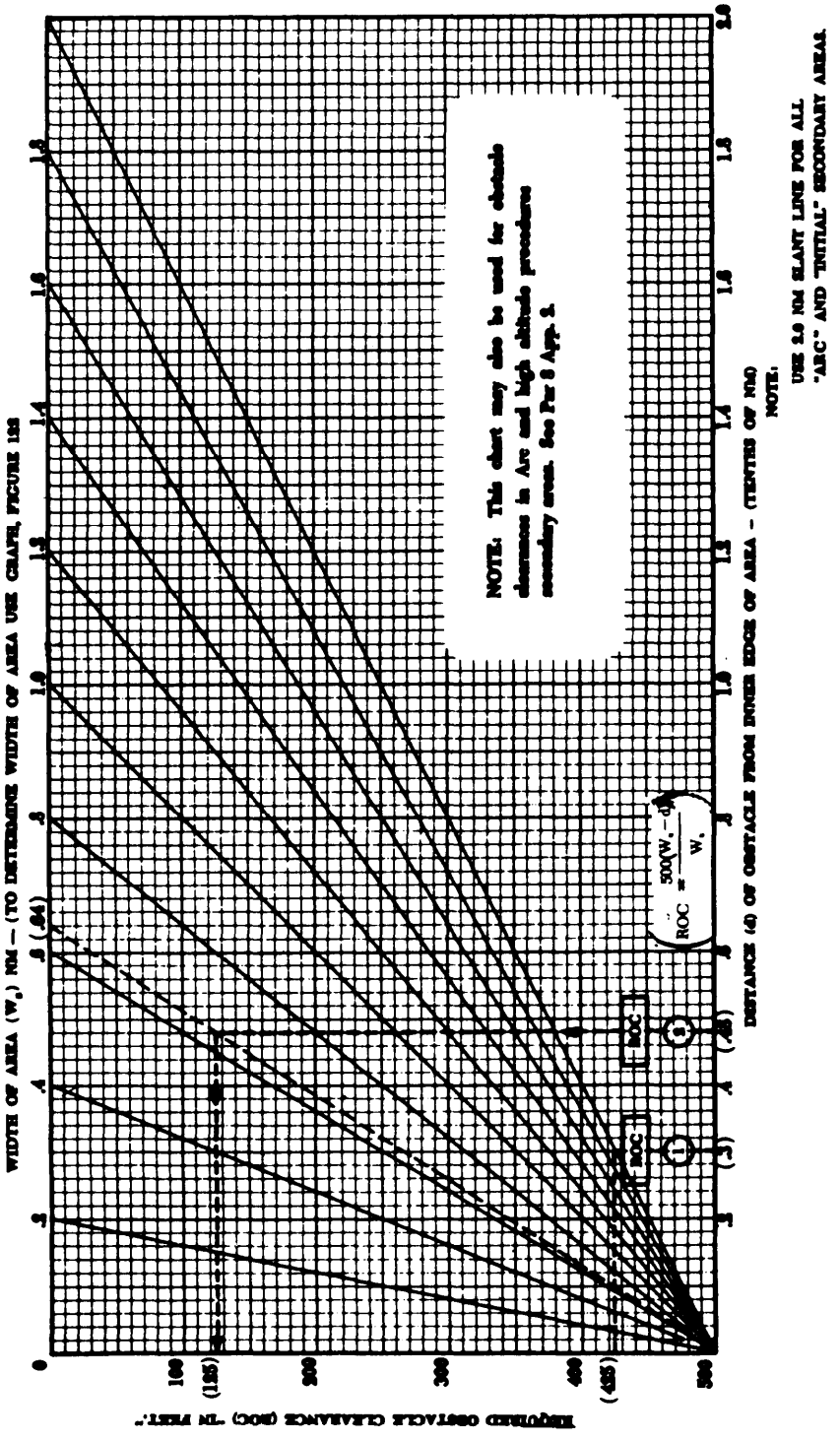


Figure 123. INITIAL AND INTERMEDIATE SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. Par 4 and 5, Appendix 2. (Also applies to holding pattern secondary areas).

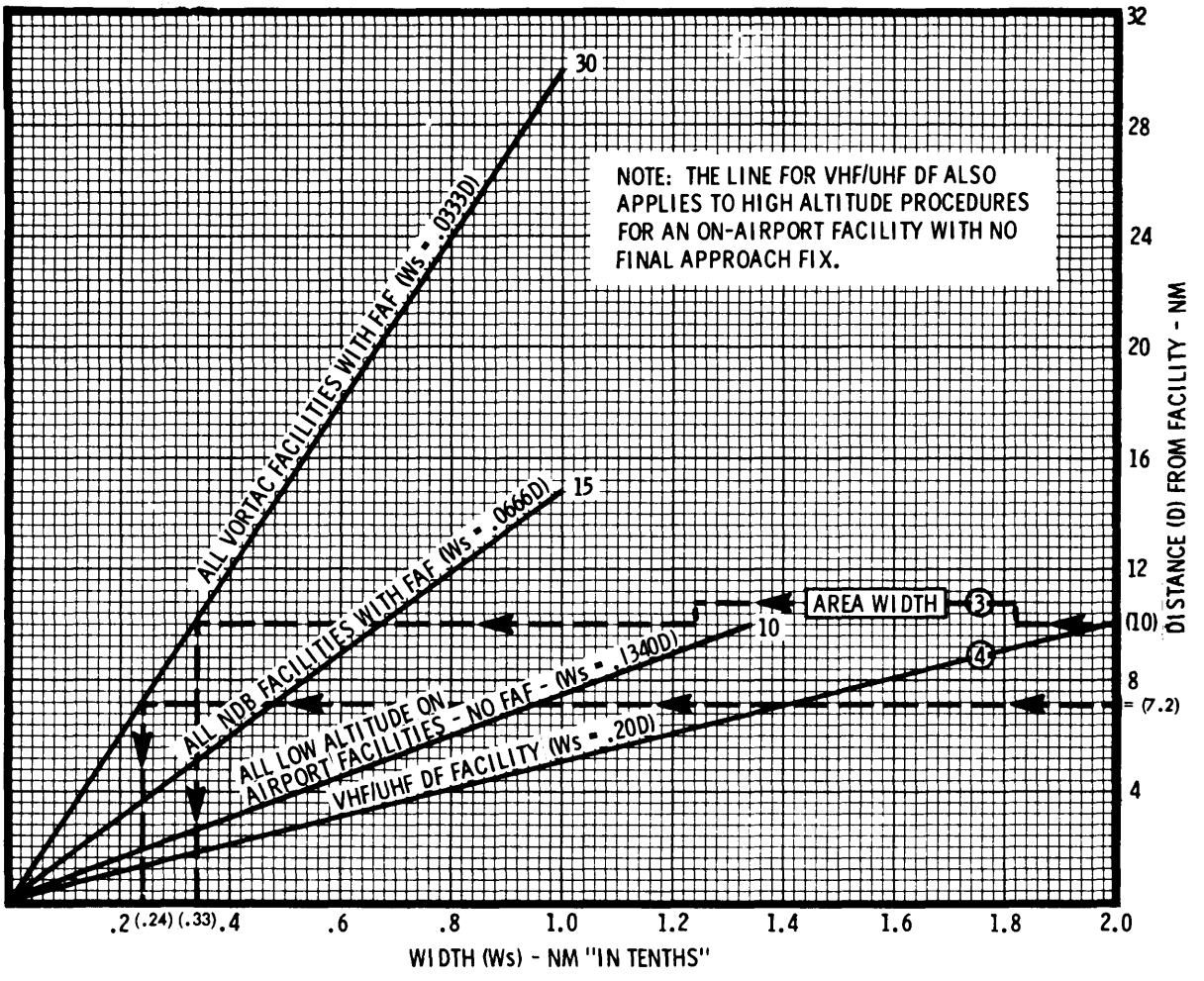


Figure 124. WIDTH OF FINAL APPROACH SECONDARY AREA. Par 6, Appendix 2.

(2) Proceed horizontally to a point of intersection with the slant line for VORTAC with FAF.

(3) Drop vertically from the intersection point to read the width of the secondary area at the FAF (.33 miles).

c. Problem 4. In a procedure based on a VOR with FAF an obstacle is 7.2 miles from the facility. Find the width of the secondary area at the obstacle location.

d. Solution.

(1) Enter the graph in Figure 124 at 7.2 on the distance from facility scale.

(2) Proceed horizontally to a point of intersection with the slant line for VORTAC with FAF.

(3) Drop vertically from the intersection point to read the width of the secondary area. (.24 miles).

NOTE: Figure 124 can be used to find the width of the final approach secondary area for the several conditions and facilities which are included in the figure.

7. FINAL APPROACH SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. The graph in Figure 125 is used to determine the required obstacle clearance in the final approach secondary area. Figure 125 applies only to procedures which require primary area obstacle clearance of 250 feet. Subsequent Figures 126 and 127 apply to procedures in which the primary area obstacle clearance is 300 and 350 feet respectively.

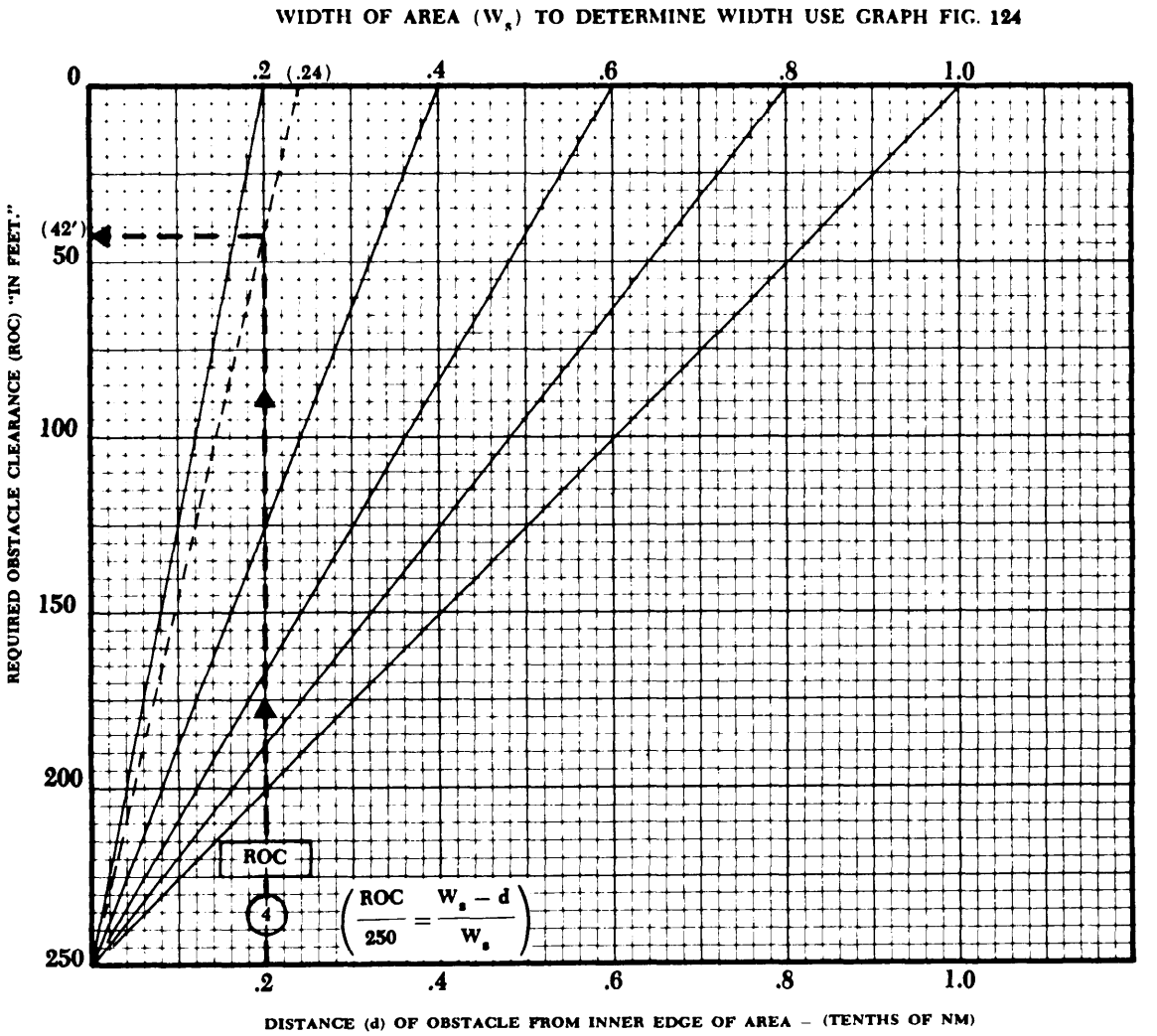


Figure 125. FINAL APPROACH SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. VOR/DME or TACAN with FAF. Par 7, App. 2.

a. Problem 4. In a procedure based on a VOR with FAF an obstacle is in the secondary area .2 miles from the inner edge and 7.2 miles from the facility. Find the ROC.

b. Solution. From Figure 124 we have determined the width of the secondary area at the obstacle location (.24 miles).

(1) Enter the graph in Figure 125 on the bottom scale at the distance the obstacle is from the inner edge (.2 miles).

(2) Proceed vertically to intersect with the appropriate area width slant line (.24 miles).

(3) Move left horizontally and read the ROC (42 feet).

8. UHF/VHF DF AND HIGH ALTITUDE PENETRATION. (No FAF). The required obstacle clearance in the final approach areas can be determined by the method prescribed in Paragraphs 6 and 7 of Appendix 2. However, the graph in Figure 123 must be used in lieu of the graph in Figure 127.

9. COMPUTING GLIDE SLOPE THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT.

a. Definitions.

(1) Straight Line Extension of Glide Slope. The assumed path which the glide slope would

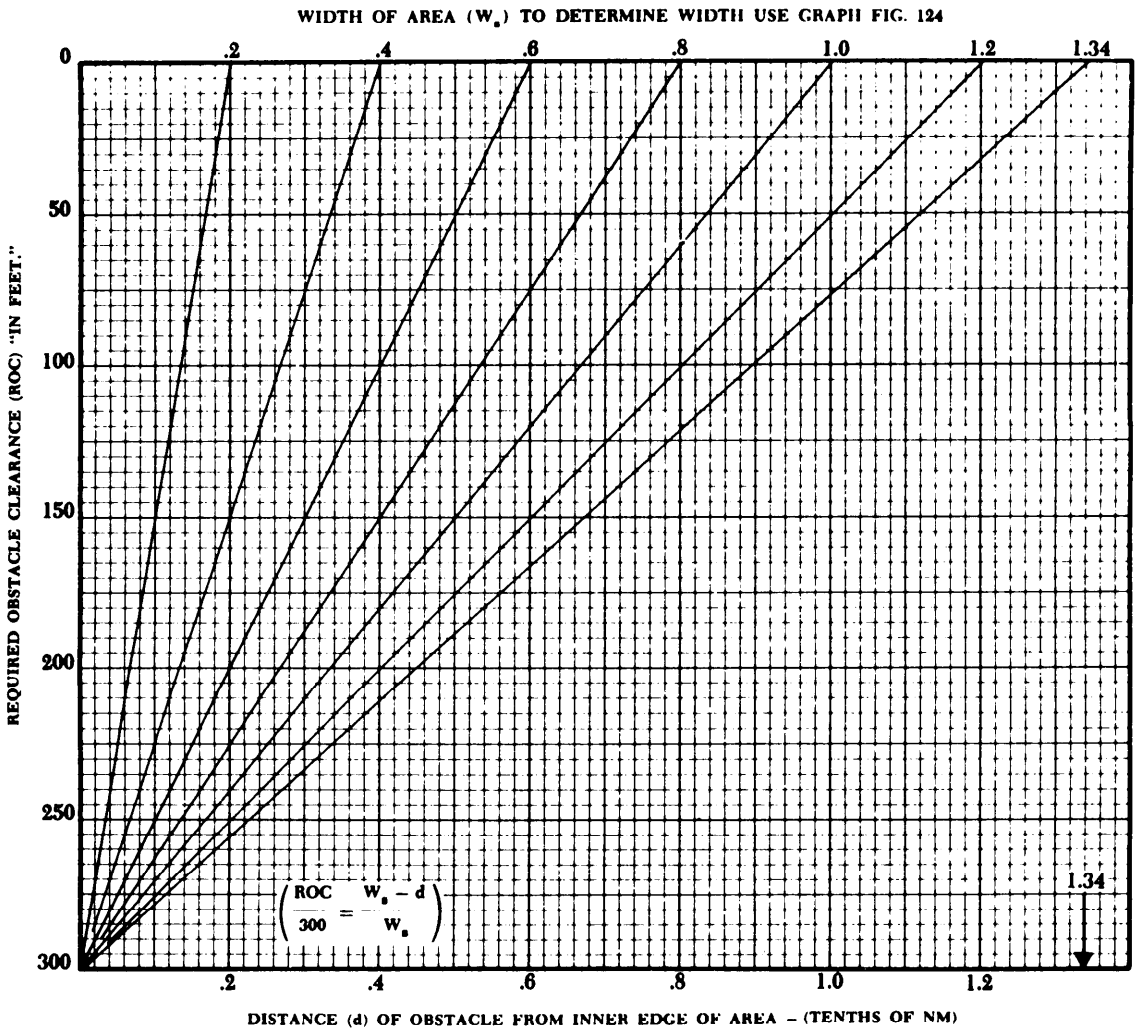


Figure 126. FINAL APPROACH SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. VOR without FAF and NDB with FAF. Par 7, Appendix 2.

follow if it were a straight line in space from a point over the outer marker to a point of interception with the approach surface baseline.

(2) Threshold Crossing Height (TCH). The height of the straight line extension of the glide slope above the runway at the threshold.

(3) Established Glide Slope Angle. The angle of the glide slope as determined by the currently effective commissioning flight check. Flight inspection will provide information concerning the height of the glide slope at the outer marker, middle marker or other point of known distance from the runway threshold on final approach.

(4) Runway Point of Intercept (RPI). The point where the extended glide slope intercepts the runway centerline on the runway surface.

b. Computation Method. The glide slope threshold crossing height is computed as follows: (See Figure 128).

(1) Multiply "D_1" (the distance in feet from the GPI to a point abeam the runway threshold "T") by the tangent of the established glide slope angle. The result is the TCH.

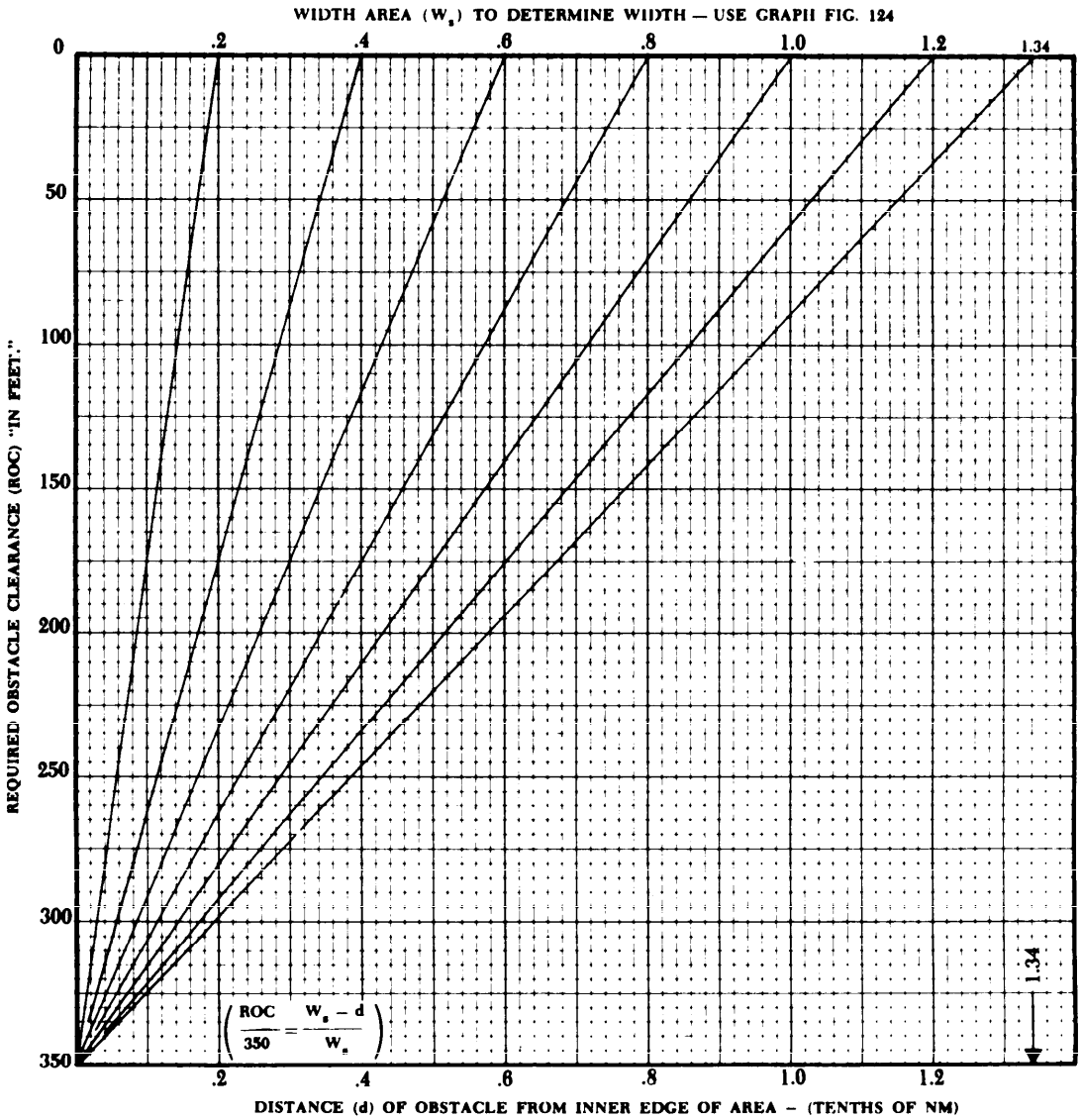


Figure 127. FINAL APPROACH SECONDARY AREA OBSTACLE CLEARANCE. NDB without FAF. Par 7, Appendix 2.

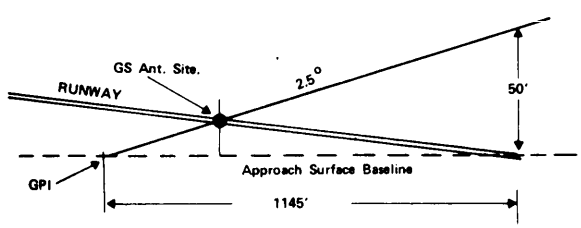


Figure 128. COMPUTING THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT. Par 9, App 2.

(2) Problem; find the TCH if:

GS angle is 2 1/2 degrees. (Tan is .04366).
Distance "D_1" is 1145 feet.

TCH = D_1 tan GS angle
= 1145 x .04366
= 50 feet.

c. Glide Slope Antenna Location. The glide slope antenna will be sited in accordance with ap-

propriate civil or military installation standards to provide the desired TCH and GPI.

d. Quick Reference of Relationships. Figure 130 provides a graphic presentation of the relationship between the GS angle, TCH, and D_1. The third value may be found if two are known.

(1) Example. With GS angle 2.6 degrees and TCH 48 feet, D_1 is 1057 feet.

(2) Example. With the same TCH, but a GS angle of 2.7 degrees, D_1 is 1017 feet.

(3) Example. D_1 is 1000 feet. For the optimum 50-foot TCH, the GS angle is 2.86 degrees.

(4) Example. GS angle is 2.7 degrees, and D_1 is 1050 feet. TCH is 49.5 feet.

10. COMPUTATION OF GPI WHEN TCH IS KNOWN. The GPI will be located abeam the glide slope antenna only when the terrain in the vicinity of the runway is perfectly flat. When the terrain slopes significantly between the runway threshold and the GS antenna location, the GPI will not be located abeam the GS antenna. This is because the GPI is the point at which the straight line extension of the glide slope intersects the approach surface base line (ASB). The ASB has the same elevation as the runway threshold. Therefore, the GPI will always be the same distance from the threshold when TCH and GS angles are the same. See figures 129, 129A, and 129B.

11. APPLICATION OF ILS/PAR OBSTACLE CLEARANCE CRITERIA. The Required Obstacle Clearance (ROC) may be defined as the minimum vertical separation between the glide slope and the final approach obstacle clearance surface. Since obstacle clearance requirements change in the final approach area, it has been segmented (paragraph b, below) for ease of application into "Zones 1, 2, and 3" for determining the appropriate obstacle clearance requirements. See figure 131.

a. Definitions and Symbols.

(1) Ground Point of Intercept (GPI). A point in the vertical plane of the runway centerline at which it is assumed that the straight line extension of the glide slope intercepts the approach surface baseline.

(2) Approach Surface Baseline. An imaginary horizontal line at the threshold elevation.

(3) Final Approach Obstacle Clearance Surface. An inclined plane which originates at the runway landing threshold elevation, and;

(a) In Zone 1: 200 feet out from the landing threshold.

(b) In Zones 2 and 3: 975 feet outward from the GPI.

(4) "d" - Distance from the GS antenna to the threshold.

(5) "D" - Distance from the GPI to an obstacle.

(6) "D_1" - Distance from the GPI to the threshold.

(7) "D(t)" - Distance from the threshold to an obstacle minus 200 feet.

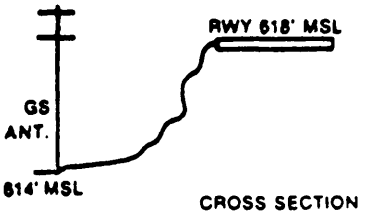
(8) "S(i)" - Slope of inner section approach surface.

b. Final Approach Critical Zones. See figure 131.

(1) Zone 1. This zone starts at a point 200 feet * outward from the landing threshold at the threshold elevation, and extends to the decision height (DH) point. See paragraph 935. The following formula may be used * to compute the ROC in this zone:

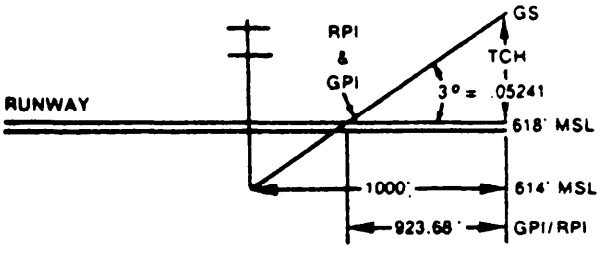
$$ROC = D(\tan GS\angle) - \frac{D(t)}{S(i)}$$

RPI/GPI/TCH COMPUTATIONS FOR ILS WITH RAPIDLY DROPPING TERRAIN



ILS ANTENNA ELEVATION IS MEASURED AT THE ANTENNA PAD (PROPOSED OR ESTABLISHED) WHEN TERRAIN DROPS OFF RAPIDLY FROM RUNWAY TO ANTENNA.

RUNWAYS WITH ZERO SLOPE



TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST ANT TO TH) - (TH ELEV-ANT ELEV)

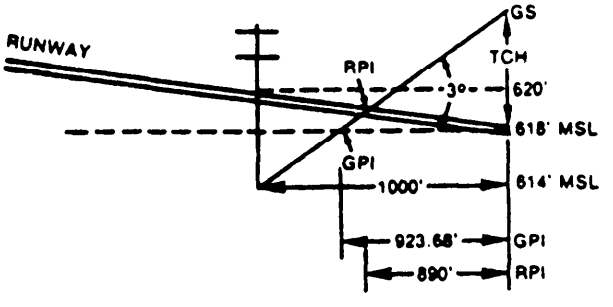
TCH = (.05241) (1000) - (618-614) = 48.41'

GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS

GPI = 48.41 ÷ .05241 = 923.68'

RPI = GPI

POSITIVE SLOPING RUNWAYS



TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST ANT TO TH) - (TH ELEV-ANT ELEV)

TCH = (.05241) (1000) - (618-614) = 48.41'

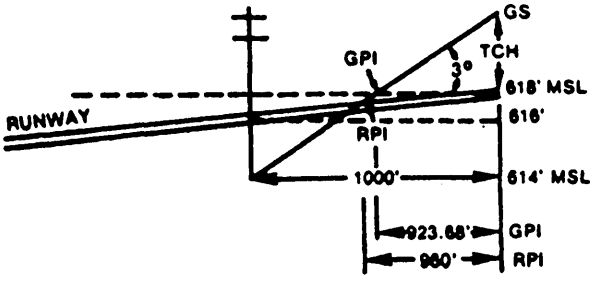
GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS

GPI = 48.41 ÷ .05241 = 923.68'

$$RPI = \frac{(TCH)(DIST\ ANT\ FROM\ TH)}{TCH + (RWY\ CROWN\ ELEV\ ABEAM\ ANT - ANT\ ELEV)}$$

$$RPI = \frac{(48.41)(1000)}{48.41 + (620-614)} = 890'$$

NEGATIVE SLOPING RUNWAYS



TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST ANT TO TH) - (TH ELEV - ANT ELEV)

TCH = (.05241) (1000) - (618-614) = 48.41'

GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS

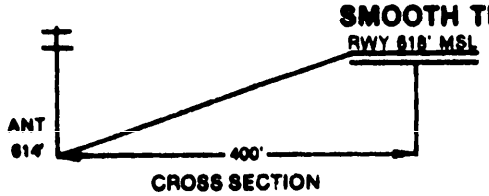
GPI = 48.41 ÷ .05241 = 923.68'

$$RPI = \frac{(TCH)(DIST\ ANT\ FROM\ TH)}{TCH + (RWY\ CROWN\ ELEV\ ABEAM\ ANT - ANT\ ELEV)}$$

$$RPI = \frac{(48.41)(1000)}{48.41 + (616-614)} = 960'$$

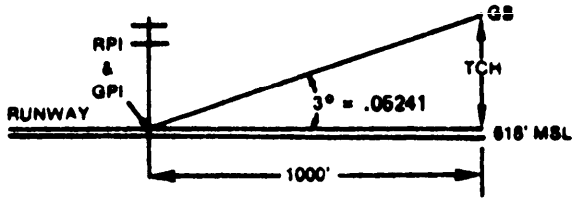
Figure 129. RPI/GPI/TCH COMPUTATIONS FOR ILS WITH RAPIDLY DROPPING TERRAIN. Par 10, Appendix 2.

RPI/GPI/TCH COMPUTATIONS FOR ILS WITH RELATIVELY SMOOTH TERRAIN



THE ILS GS ANTENNA IS ASSUMED TO BE AT RUNWAY CROWN ELEVATION WHEN TERRAIN FROM RUNWAY TO ANTENNA SITE (PROPOSED OR ESTABLISHED) HAS A RELATIVELY SMOOTH AND UNIFORM GRADIENT.

RUNWAY WITH ZERO SLOPE

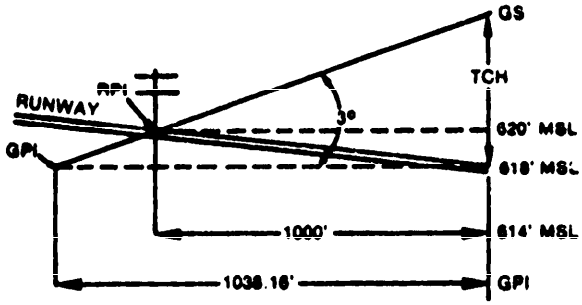


TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST ANT FROM TH)
TCH = (.05241) (1000) = 52.41'

GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS
GPI = 52.41 ÷ .05241 = 1000'

RPI = GPI

POSITIVE SLOPING RUNWAYS



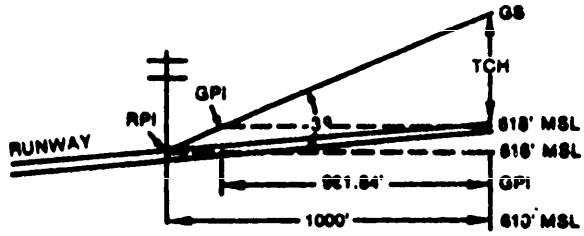
TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST ANT FROM TH) - (TH ELEV - RWY CROWN ELEV ABEAM ANT)
TCH = (.05241) (1000) - (618-620) = 54.41'

GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS
GPI = 54.41 ÷ .05241 = 1038.16'

$$RPI = \frac{TCH + (TH\ ELEV - RWY\ CROWN\ ELEV\ ABEAM\ ANT)}{TAN\ GS}$$

$$RPI = \frac{54.41 + (618-620)}{.05241} = 1000'$$

NEGATIVE SLOPING RUNWAYS



TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST ANT FROM TH) - (TH ELEV - RWY CROWN ELEV ABEAM ANT)
TCH = (.05241) (1000) - (618-616) = 50.41'

GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS
GPI = 50.41 ÷ .05241 = 961.84'

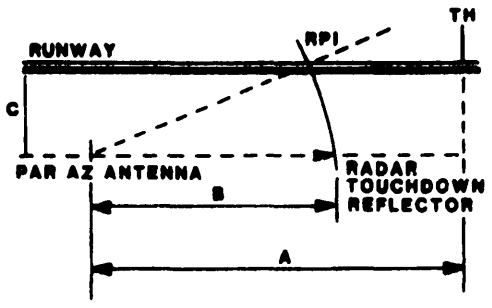
$$RPI = \frac{TCH + (TH\ ELEV - RWY\ CROWN\ ELEV\ ABEAM\ ANT)}{TAN\ GS}$$

$$RPI = \frac{50.41 + (618-616)}{.05241} = 1000'$$

Note: GPI has same elevation as end of runway. RPI is the point where the extended glide path intercepts the runway centerline.

FIGURE 129 A

RPI/GPI/TCH COMPUTATIONS FOR PRECISION APPROACH RADAR

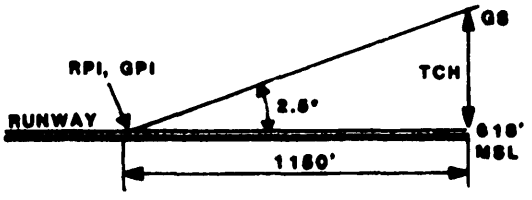


THE RPI IS LOCATED ON THE RUNWAY CENTERLINE. THE DISTANCE FROM THE PAR ANTENNA TO THE RPI IS EQUAL TO THE DISTANCE FROM THE PAR ANTENNA TO THE TOUCHDOWN REFLECTOR. RPI DISTANCE FROM THRESHOLD MAY BE DETERMINED FROM THE FORMULA.

$$RPI = A - \sqrt{B^2 - C^2}$$

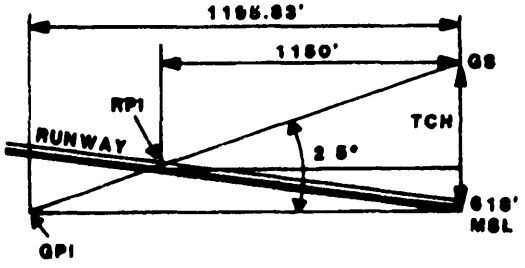
A = DIST ANT FROM TH
B = DIST REFLECT FROM ANT
C = DIST ANT FROM RWY CENTERLINE

RUNWAY WITH ZERO SLOPE



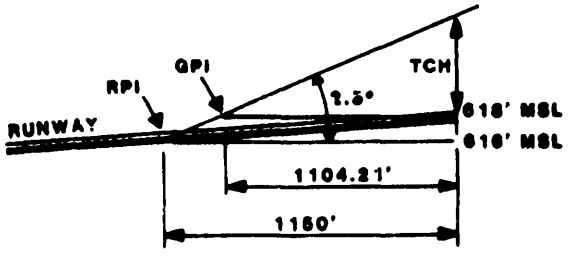
TCH (TAN GS) (DIST TH FROM RPI)
TCH = (0.04366) (1150) = 50.21'
GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS
GPI = 50.21' ÷ 0.04366 = 1150'
RPI = GPI

POSITIVE SLOPING RUNWAYS



TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST TH FROM RPI) +
(RPI EL − TH EL)
TCH = (0.04366) (1150) + (620 − 618) = 52.2
GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS
GPI = 52.21' ÷ 0.04366 = 1195.83'

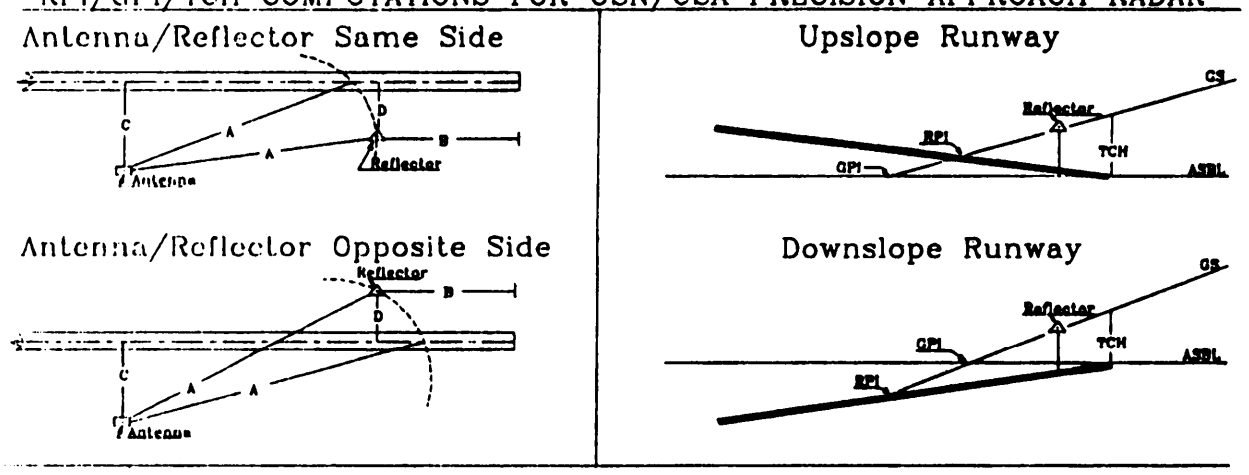
NEGATIVE SLOPING RUNWAYS



TCH = (TAN GS) (DIST TH FROM RPI) −
(TH EL − RPI EL)
TCH = (0.04366) (1150) − (618 − 616) = 48.21'
GPI = TCH ÷ TAN GS
GPI = 48.21' ÷ 0.04366 = 1104.21'

Figure 129B. RPI/GPI/TCH COMPUTATIONS FOR PRECISION APPROACH RADAR. Par. 10.

RPI/GPI/TCH COMPUTATIONS FOR USN/USA PRECISION APPROACH RADAR



REQUIRED INFORMATION

ELEVATIONS (MSL):		**DISTANCES (FEET):**	
Runway threshold	_____	**PAR AZ antenna to reflector**	**(A)** _____
Touchdown reflector	_____	**TD reflector to threshold**	**(B)** _____
Runway crown in TDZ	_____	**PAR AZ antenna to centerline**	**(C)** _____
RPI (if known)	_____	**TD reflector to centerline**	**(D*)** _____
GLIDE SLOPE ANGLE:	_____	**RUNWAY GRADIENT (if required)**	_____

***negative value if antenna and reflector are on same side of runway**

COMPUTATIONS

STEP 1. **Determine the parallel-to-centerline distance from the antenna to the touchdown reflector wh correcting for any difference in distance from antenna-to-centerline and reflector-to-centerline.**
Formula: $\sqrt{[A^2 - (C + (D))^2]}$

STEP 2. **Determine the parallel distance of the antenna-to-threshold.**
Formula: Step 1 + Reflector-to-threshold distance (B)

STEP 3. **Determine the parallel distance from the antenna to a point where the reflector would be if displaced to the runway centerline and subtract this distance from the parallel antenna-to-threshold distance. This is considered touchdown point (TDP) for Naval applications.**
Formula: Step 2 - $\sqrt{(A^2 - C^2)}$

STEP 4. **Determine the reflector height above the threshold elevation.**
Formula: Reflector height - Threshold elevation

STEP 5. **Determine the distance from displaced reflector position to GPI.**
Formula: Step 4 ÷ Tangent GS

STEP 6. **Determine the distance from threshold to GPI. Formula: Step 3 + Step 5**

STEP 7. **Determine the Threshold Crossing Height. Formula: GPI x Tangent GS**

STEP 8. **Determine runway gradient if required.**
Formula: (Runway crown elevation - threshold elevation) ÷ Threshold-to-crown distance.

STEP 9. **Determine the RPI distance from threshold.**
Formula:
RPI EL Known: **(TCH - (RPI El - TH El)) ÷ Tangent GS**
RPI EL Unknown: **(GPI x Tangent GS) ÷ [Tangent GS + (Gradient)]**

Figure 129C. RPI/GPI/TCH COMPUTATIONS FOR PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.
Paragraph 10.

☆U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1993 - 343-120/85873

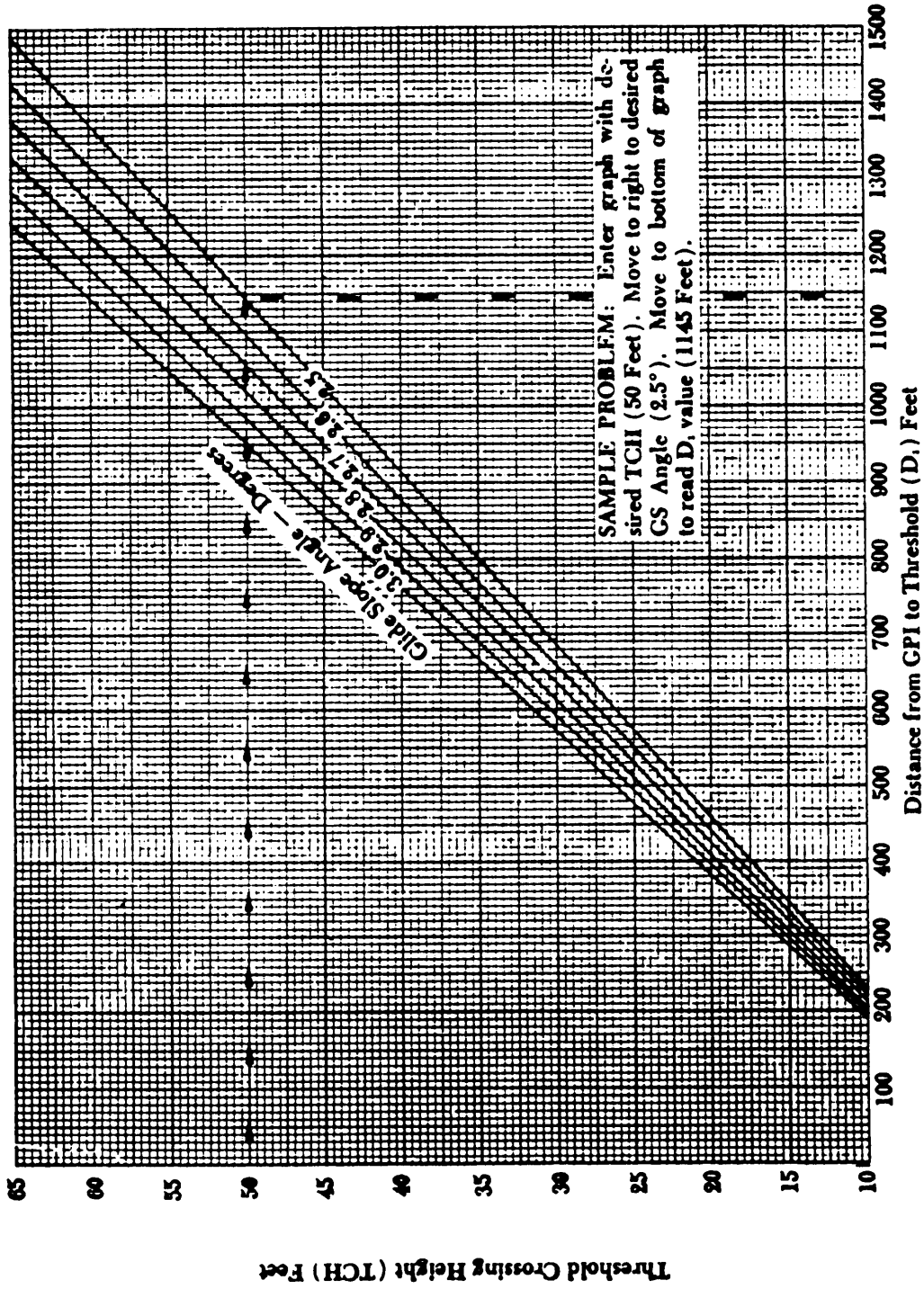


Figure 130. RELATIONSHIP OF GS ANGLE, TCH, AND DISTANCE FROM GPI. Par 10, Appendix 2.

*

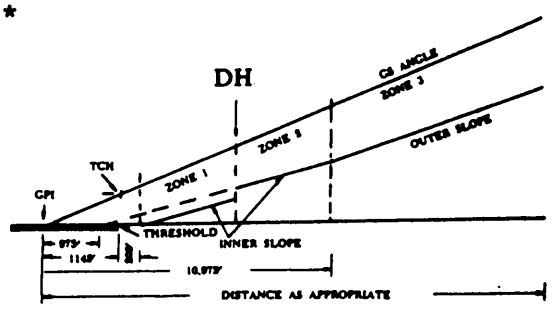


Figure 131. FINAL APPROACH AREA SEGMENTS. Par 11, Appendix 2 *

NOTE: The formula is equal to the separation of the glide slope and the associated slope of the approach surface inner section. See paragraph 931 and figure 132.

* **(2) Zone 2.** This zone starts at the DH, and extends outward to a point 10,975 feet from the GPI. See * parapgraph 934. The following formula may be used to compute the ROC in this zone:

ROC = .02366D + 20 feet.

NOTE: The Zone 2 ROC formula is approximately equal to the separation of the glide slope and the associated slope of the approach surface inner section. See paragraph 931 and table 19.

(3) Zone 3. This zone starts at a point 10,975 feet outward from the GPI and extends outward to a maximum distance of 15 miles or to a point where the glide slope interception occurs, whichever is the lesser. See paragraph 934 and figure 76. The following formula may be used to compute the ROC in this zone:

ROC = .01866D + 75 feet.

NOTE: The Zone 3 ROC formula is approximately equal to the separation of the glide slope and the associated slope of the approach surface outer section. See paragraph 931 and table 19.

12. ANALYSIS OF OBSTACLE CLEARANCE.

a. Problem. Runway threshold elevation is 342 feet MSL. Obstacles in the approach area are:

Zone 1: 22 feet above threshold & 1200 feet from threshold.

Zone 2: 228 feet above threshold & 8000 feet from threshold.

Zone 3: 450 feet above threshold & 20,000 feet from threshold.

b. Tentative GPI Location and Operating Parameters.

(1) Desired GS angle = 2.5 degrees.

(2) Desired TCH = 50 feet.

c. Obstacle Clearance Criteria Application. See figure 133.

$$D_1 = \frac{TCH}{\tan GS\angle}$$

$$= \frac{50}{.04366}$$

$$= \underline{1145 \text{ feet}}$$

or see figures 129 and 129a.

(2) Zone 1 ROC.

D = 1145 + 1200 = 2345 feet.

D(t) = 1200 - 200 = 1000 feet.

S(i) = 50 (See figure 132. 50:1 = 50, 40:1 = 40)

$$ROC = D(\tan GS\angle) - \frac{D(t)}{S(i)}$$

$$= 2345x.04366 - \frac{1000}{50}$$

$$= 102 - 20$$

$$= \underline{82 \text{ feet.}}$$

Actual Clearance

"C" = D(tan GS angle) - Obstacle height.

= (2345 x .04366) - 22

= 102 - 22 = <u>80 feet</u>. (Note Violation)

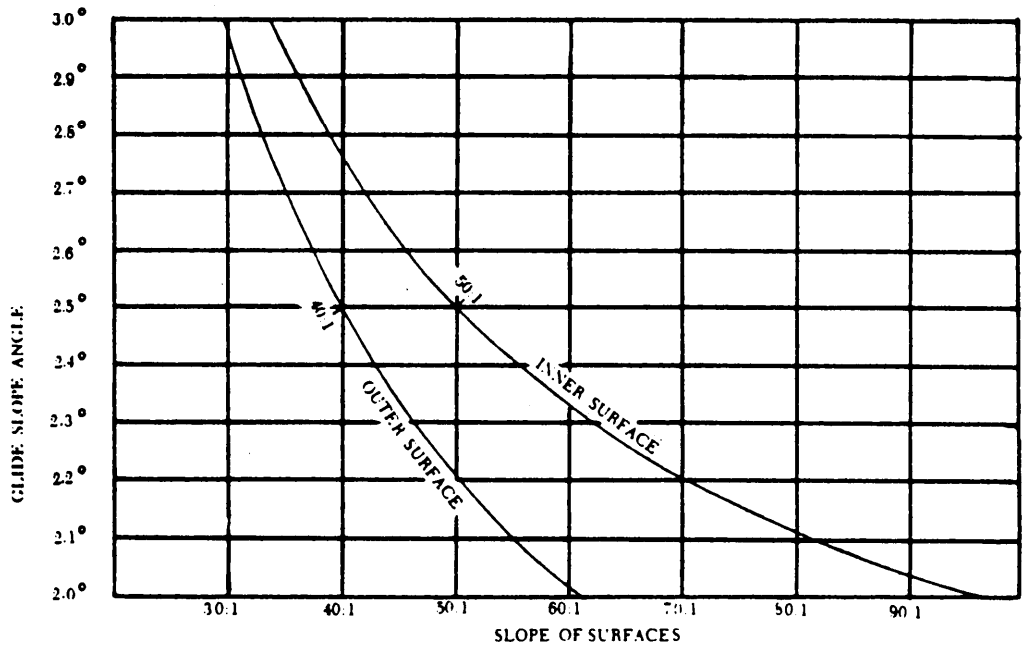


Figure 132. GS ANGLE VS. SLOPE OF SURFACES. Par 931, 1021, and App 2, Par 11.

(3) **Zone 2 ROC.**

D = 1145 + 8000 = 9145 feet.

ROC = .02366D + 20

= (.02366 x 9145) + 20

= 216 + 20 = <u>236 feet</u>.

Actual Clearance

"C" = D (tan GS angle) - Obstacle height

= (9145 x .04366) - 228

= 399 - 228 = <u>171 feet</u>. (Note Violation)

(4) **Zone 3 ROC.**

D = 1145 + 20,000 = 21,145 feet.

ROC = .01866D + 75

= (.01866 x 21,145) + 75

= 395 + 75 = <u>470 feet.</u>

Actual Clearance

"C" = D (tan GS angle) - Obstacle height

= (21,145 x .04366) - 450

= 923 - 450 = <u>473 feet</u>.

d. Analysis. It is noted that violations to ROC criteria exist in Zones 1 and 2.

(1) **Zone 1.** Violation could be corrected by:

(a) Raising the GS angle.

$$S(i) = \frac{D(t)}{\text{Obstacle height}}$$

$$= \frac{1000}{22}$$

= 45.5 (or 45.5:1)

Minimum angle from Figure 132 = <u>2.62 degrees</u>.

*

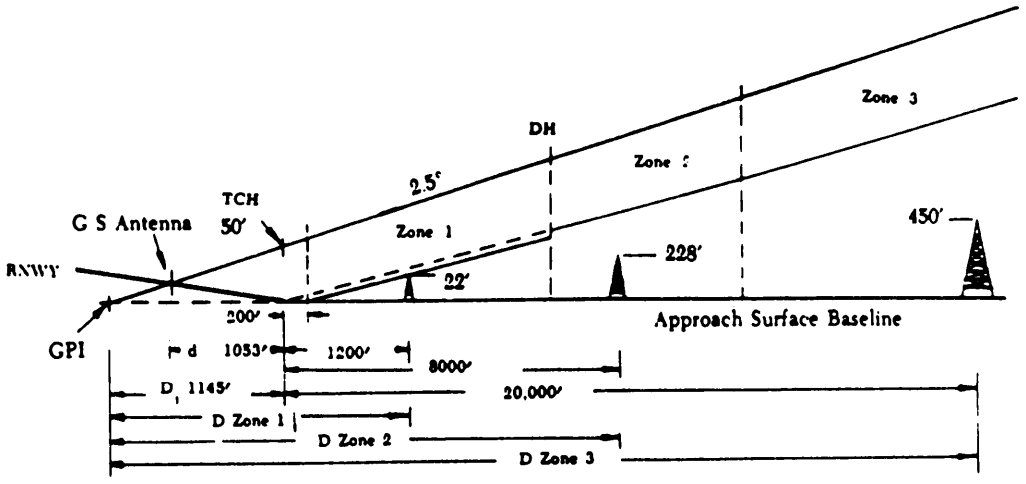


Figure 133. APPLICATION OF OBSTACLE CLEARANCE CRITERIA. App 2, Par 12. *

(b) Or; by retaining the 2.5 degree GS angle and displacing the threshold.

Minimum D(t) = S(i) (D tan GS angle - Actual Clearance)

= (50) x (2345 x .04366) - 80

= 50 x (102-80)

= 50 x 22 = 1100 feet. Requires displacement of threshold 100 feet.

(2) **Zone 2.** Violation could be corrected by:

(a) Raising the GS angle.

Minimum GS angle (arc tan) $= \frac{\text{ROC + Obstacle height}}{D}$

$= \frac{236 + 228}{9145}$

= .05074 (arc tan)

Table of tangents shows the angle for .05074 to be 2.91 degrees.

(b) Or; by retaining the 2.5 degree glide slope and increasing the distance D_1 between the GPI and the runway threshold. To do this, we must first determine the correct D based upon obstacle height and the ROC at the new D:

$$D \text{ (in Zone 2)} = \frac{\text{Obstacle Height + 20}}{.02}$$

$$= \frac{228 + 20}{.02} = 12{,}400'$$

Since the new D_1 is greater than 10,975', this movement of the GS would cause the obstacle to fall in Zone 3. Therefore, further analysis would require Zone 3 treatment.

$$D \text{ (in Zone 3)} = \frac{\text{Obstacle Height + 75}}{.025}$$

$$= \frac{228 + 75}{.025} = \frac{303}{.025}$$

D = 12120'

Minimum D_1 = D-8000

= 12120-8000

= 4120 feet

It should be noted that once the GPI is changed a recalculation of all ROC's must be performed and a new sketch made.

However, for the purpose of this analysis the new ROC for this obstacle will be computed and checked.

ROC = .01866D + 75 = (.01866 x 12120) + 75

= 226′ + 75

= 301′

Actual Clearance

C = D (tan GS angle) - obstacle height

= (12120 x .04366) - 228

= 529 - 228

= 301′

e. Conclusions. The above analysis shows that one of the following must be done to satisfy the Zone 1 and 2 ROC criteria, while limiting the glide slope angle to a maximum of 3 degrees and the TCH to a maximum of 60 feet:

(1) Increase the GS angle to 2.91 degrees without changing the position of the GPI. This will also increase the TCH to 58.2 feet:

TCH = D_1 (tan GS angle)

= 1145 x .05084

= 58.2 feet.

(2) Change the GS angle and reselect the GPI as follows: See Paragraph 11.d.(2)(b) above.

(a) When the GS angle is 3 degrees, the minimum D_1 to clear obstacles in Zones 1 and 2 would be 853 feet. However, this would provide a TCH of only 44.7 feet, which is below that desired.

(b) When the GS angle is 3 degrees and D_1 is 954 feet, a TCH of 50 feet is obtained. A recalculation of the ROC in Zone 3 will be required if this solution is chosen since D was decreased from the original.

(c) When the GS angle is 2.95 degrees and the minimum D_1 is 1004 feet, a TCH of 51.7 feet is obtained. A recalculation of the Zone 3 ROC will also be required if this solution is chosen.

(d) When the GS angle is 2.9 degrees and the minimum D_1 is 1159 feet, a TCH of 58.7 feet is obtained. It will also satisfy ROC requirements in Zone 3.

f. Recommendation. By analysis of the various solutions it can be concluded that the GS angle of 2.95, D_1 of 1004 feet, and TCH of 51.7 feet found in 11.e.(2)(c) above would provide the best solution since it satisfies the TCH requirement and all obstacle clearance requirements as well. Therefore, it is offered as the best recommendation.

1. REFERENCES

a. Federal Aviation Regulations.

FAR 77	Objects Affecting Navigable Airspace.
FAR 97	Standard Instrument Approach Procedures.
FAR 121	Certification & Operations: Air Carriers and Commercial Operators of Large Aircraft.
FAR 171	Non-Federal Navigation Facilities.

b. FAA Advisory Circulars.

AC 70/7460–1D	Obstruction Marking and Lighting.
AC 90–45A	Approval of Area Navigation Systems for Use in the U.S. National Airspace System.
AC 90–70	Straight-in nonprecision instrument approach procedures visual descent point (VDP).
AC 91–14B	Altimeter Setting Sources
AC 91–16	Category II Operations – General Aviation Airplanes.
AC 95–1	Airway and Route Obstruction Clearances.
AC 120–28A	Criteria for Approval of Category IIIa Landing Weather Minima.
AC 120–29	Criteria for Approving Category I and Category II Landing Minima for FAR 121 Operators.
AC 150/5300–2C	Airport Design Standards – Site Requirements for Terminal Navigational Facilities.
AC 150/5340–1D	Marking of Paved Areas on Airports.
AC 150/5340–4B	Installation Details for Runway Centerline and TDZ Lighting Systems.
AC 150/5340–13B	High Intensity Lighting Systems.
AC 150/5340–14B	Economy Approach Lighting Aids.
AC 150/5340–16B	MIRL System and Visual Approach Slope Indicators for Utility Airports.

c. FAA Directives.

1010.3A	Selection Order; Runway CL & TDZ Lighting.
1010.11	Selection Order; Separation of Parallel Runways for Simultaneous ILS Approaches.
1010.39A	Selection Order; Category II ALS.
1010.43	Selection Order; MALS.
1010.52	Selection Order; Lead-In Lighting System.
1010.55	Selection Order; US National Aviation System for the VORTAC System.
6700.1	Non-Federal Navigational Facilities.
6700.10B	Non-Federal Navigational Facilities.
6700.12B	Criteria for FAA Assumption of Non-federal Navigational and Air Traffic Control Facilities.
6850.2	Visual Guidance Lighting System.
6990.3	Implementation of Standard FAA STD-008 "Siting and Installation Standards for RVR Equipment for Category I & II Operations."
7130.3	Holding Pattern Criteria.
7230.13	U.S. Air Force Special Training Instrument Approach Procedures.
7232.5D	Reduced Hours of Operation for Airport Traffic Control Towers.
7400.2B	Procedures for Handling Airspace Cases.
OA P 8200.1	U.S. Standard Flight Inspection Manual.
8200.28A	Simplified Directional Facilities.
8260.1	Designated RVR Runway.
8260.15A	U.S. Army Terminal Instrument Procedures Service.
8260.18A	Establishing Requirements for Visual Approach Aids.
8260.19	Flight Procedures and Airspace.
8260.24B	Category I ILS Threshold Crossing Height.

8260.26	Establishing and Scheduling Instrument Approach Procedure Effective Dates
8260.27	Effect of Runway Markings on SIAP Visibility Minimums.
8260.28	IFR Approval of the Interim Standard Microwave Landing System (ISMLS).
8430.1A	Operations Inspection & Surveillance Procedures – Air Taxi Operators & Commercial Operators of Small Aircraft.
8430.6A	Air Carrier Operations Inspector's Manual.
8430.10B	IFR Approval of Private-Use Microwave Landing Systems.

d. Other

IACC No. 4	U.S. Government Specifications for Flight Information Publications – Low Altitude Instrument Approach Procedure.

1. TABLE OF TANGENTS

Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent
0.0 =	.00000	1.36=	.02374	1.82=	.03178	2.28=	.03981
0.1 =	.00175	1.37=	.02392	1.83=	.03195	2.29=	.03999
0.2 =	.00349	1.38=	.02409	1.84=	.03213	2.3 =	.04016
0.3 =	.00524	1.39=	.02426	1.85=	.03230	2.31=	.04034
0.4 =	.00698	1.4 =	.02444	1.86=	.03247	2.32=	.04051
0.5 =	.00873	1.41=	.02461	1.87=	.03265	2.33=	.04069
0.6 =	.01047	1.42=	.02479	1.88=	.03282	2.34=	.04086
0.7 =	.01222	1.43=	.02496	1.89=	.03300	2.35=	.04104
0.8 =	.01396	1.44=	.02514	1.9 =	.03317	2.36=	.04121
0.9 =	.01571	1.45=	.02531	1.91=	.03335	2.37=	.04139
1.0 =	.01746	1.46=	.02549	1.92=	.03352	2.38=	.04156
1.01=	.01763	1.47=	.02566	1.93=	.03370	2.39=	.04174
1.02=	.01780	1.48=	.02584	1.94=	.03387	2.4 =	.04191
1.03=	.01798	1.49=	.02601	1.95=	.03405	2.41=	.04209
1.04=	.01815	1.5 =	.02619	1.96=	.03422	2.42=	.04226
1.05=	.01833	1.51=	.02636	1.97=	.03440	2.43=	.04244
1.06=	.01850	1.52=	.02654	1.98=	.03457	2.44=	.04261
1.07=	.01868	1.53=	.02671	1.99=	.03475	2.45=	.04279
1.08=	.01885	1.54=	.02688	2.0 =	.03492	2.46=	.04296
1.09=	.01903	1.55=	.02706	2.01=	.03510	2.47=	.04314
1.1 =	.01920	1.56=	.02723	2.02=	.03527	2.48=	.04331
1.11=	.01938	1.57=	.02741	2.03=	.03545	2.49=	.04349
1.12=	.01955	1.58=	.02758	2.04=	.03562	2.5 =	.04366
1.13=	.01972	1.59=	.02776	2.05=	.03579	2.51=	.04384
1.14=	.01990	1.6 =	.02793	2.06=	.03597	2.52=	.04401
1.15=	.02007	1.61=	.02811	2.07=	.03614	2.53=	.04419
1.16=	.02025	1.62=	.02828	2.08=	.03632	2.54=	.04436
1.17=	.02042	1.63=	.02846	2.09=	.03649	2.55=	.04454
1.18=	.02060	1.64=	.02863	2.1 =	.03667	2.56=	.04471
1.19=	.02077	1.65=	.02881	2.11=	.03684	2.57=	.04489
1.2 =	.02095	1.66=	.02898	2.12=	.03702	2.58=	.04506
1.21=	.02112	1.67=	.02916	2.13=	.03719	2.59=	.04523
1.22=	.02130	1.68=	.02933	2.14=	.03737	2.6 =	.04541
1.23=	.02147	1.69=	.02950	2.15=	.03754	2.61=	.04558
1.24=	.02165	1.7 =	.02968	2.16=	.03772	2.62=	.04576
1.25=	.02182	1.71=	.02985	2.17=	.03789	2.63=	.04593
1.26=	.02199	1.72=	.03003	2.18=	.03807	2.64=	.04611
1.27=	.02217	1.73=	.03020	2.19=	.03824	2.65=	.04628
1.28=	.02234	1.74=	.03038	2.2 =	.03842	2.66=	.04646
1.29=	.02252	1.75=	.03055	2.21=	.03859	2.67=	.04663
1.30=	.02269	1.76=	.03073	2.22=	.03877	2.68=	.04681
1.31=	.02287	1.77=	.03090	2.23=	.03894	2.69=	.04698
1.32=	.02304	1.78=	.03108	2.24=	.03912	2.7 =	.04716
1.33=	.02322	1.79=	.03125	2.25=	.03929	2.71=	.04733
1.34=	.02339	1.8 =	.03143	2.26=	.03946	2.72=	.04751
1.35=	.02357	1.81=	.03160	2.27=	.03964	2.73=	.04768

Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent
2.74=	.04786	3.22=	.05626	3.7 =	.06467	4.18=	.07308
2.75=	.04803	3.23=	.05643	3.71=	.06484	4.19=	.07326
2.76=	.04821	3.24=	.05661	3.72=	.06502	4.2 =	.07344
2.77=	.04838	3.25=	.05678	3.73=	.06519	4.21=	.07361
2.78=	.04856	3.26=	.05696	3.74=	.06537	4.22=	.07379
2.79=	.04873	3.27=	.05713	3.75=	.06554	4.23=	.07396
2.8 =	.04891	3.28=	.05731	3.76=	.06572	4.24=	.07414
2.81=	.04908	3.29=	.05748	3.77=	.06589	4.25=	.07431
2.82=	.04926	3.3 =	.05766	3.78=	.06607	4.26=	.07449
2.83=	.04943	3.31=	.05783	3.79=	.06624	4.27=	.07466
2.84=	.04961	3.32=	.05801	3.8 =	.06642	4.28=	.07484
2.85=	.04978	3.33=	.05818	3.81=	.06660	4.29=	.07501
2.86=	.04996	3.34=	.05836	3.82=	.06677	4.3 =	.07519
2.87=	.05013	3.35=	.05854	3.83=	.06695	4.31=	.07537
2.88=	.05031	3.36=	.05871	3.84=	.06712	4.32=	.07554
2.89=	.05048	3.37=	.05889	3.85=	.06730	4.33=	.07572
2.9 =	.05066	3.38=	.05906	3.86=	.06747	4.34=	.07589
2.91=	.05083	3.39=	.05924	3.87=	.06765	4.35=	.07607
2.92=	.05101	3.4 =	.05941	3.88=	.06782	4.36=	.07624
2.93=	.05118	3.41=	.05959	3.89=	.06800	4.37=	.07642
2.94=	.05136	3.42=	.05976	3.9 =	.06817	4.38=	.07659
2.95=	.05153	3.43=	.05994	3.91=	.06835	4.39=	.07677
2.96=	.05171	3.44=	.06011	3.92=	.06852	4.4 =	.07695
2.97=	.05188	3.45=	.06029	3.93=	.06870	4.41=	.07712
2.98=	.05206	3.46=	.06046	3.94=	.06887	4.42=	.07730
2.99=	.05223	3.47=	.06064	3.95=	.06905	4.43=	.07747
3.0 =	.05241	3.48=	.06081	3.96=	.06923	4.44=	.07765
3.01=	.05258	3.49=	.06099	3.97=	.06940	4.45=	.07782
3.02=	.05276	3.5 =	.06116	3.98=	.06958	4.46=	.07800
3.03=	.05293	3.51=	.06134	3.99=	.06975	4.47=	.07817
3.04=	.05311	3.52=	.06151	4.0 =	.06993	4.48=	.07835
3.05=	.05328	3.53=	.06169	4.01=	.07010	4.49=	.07853
3.06=	.05346	3.54=	.06186	4.02=	.07028	4.5 =	.07870
3.07=	.05363	3.55=	.06204	4.03=	.07045	4.51=	.07888
3.08=	.05381	3.56=	.06221	4.04=	.07063	4.52=	.07905
3.09=	.05398	3.57=	.06239	4.05=	.07080	4.53=	.07923
3.1 =	.05416	3.58=	.06256	4.06=	.07098	4.54=	.07940
3.11=	.05433	3.59=	.06274	4.07=	.07115	4.55=	.07958
3.12=	.05451	3.6 =	.06291	4.08=	.07133	4.56=	.07976
3.13=	.05468	3.61=	.06309	4.09=	.07151	4.57=	.07993
3.14=	.05486	3.62=	.06327	4.1 =	.07168	4.58=	.08011
3.15=	.05503	3.63=	.06344	4.11=	.07186	4.59=	.08028
3.16=	.05521	3.64=	.06362	4.12=	.07203	4.6 =	.08046
3.17=	.05538	3.65=	.06379	4.13=	.07221	4.61=	.08063
3.18=	.05556	3.66=	.06397	4.14=	.07238	4.62=	.08081
3.19=	.05573	3.67=	.06414	4.15=	.07256	4.63=	.08099
3.2 =	.05591	3.68=	.06432	4.16=	.07273	4.64=	.08116
3.21=	.05608	3.69=	.06449	4.17=	.07291	4.65=	.08134

Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent
4.66=	.08151	5.14=	.08995	5.62=	.09840	6.1 =	.10687
4.67=	.08169	5.15=	.09013	5.63=	.09858	6.11=	.10705
4.68=	.08186	5.16=	.09030	5.64=	.09876	6.12=	.10722
4.69=	.08204	5.17=	.09048	5.65=	.09893	6.13=	.10740
4.7 =	.08221	5.18=	.09066	5.66=	.09911	6.14=	.10758
4.71=	.08239	5.19=	.09083	5.67=	.09928	6.15=	.10775
4.72=	.08257	5.2 =	.09101	5.68=	.09946	6.16=	.10793
4.73=	.08274	5.21=	.09118	5.69=	.09964	6.17=	.10811
4.74=	.08292	5.22=	.09136	5.7 =	.09981	6.18=	.10828
4.75=	.08309	5.23=	.09154	5.71=	.09999	6.19=	.10846
4.76=	.08327	5.24=	.09171	5.72=	.10017	6.2 =	.10863
4.77=	.08345	5.25=	.09189	5.73=	.10034	6.21=	.10881
4.78=	.08362	5.26=	.09206	5.74=	.10052	6.22=	.10899
4.79=	.08380	5.27=	.09224	5.75=	.10069	6.23=	.10916
4.8 =	.08397	5.28=	.09242	5.76=	.10087	6.24=	.10934
4.81=	.08415	5.29=	.09259	5.77=	.10105	6.25=	.10952
4.82=	.08432	5.3 =	.09277	5.78=	.10122	6.26=	.10969
4.83=	.08450	5.31=	.09294	5.79=	.10140	6.27=	.10987
4.84=	.08468	5.32=	.09312	5.8 =	.10158	6.28=	.11005
4.85=	.08485	5.33=	.09330	5.81=	.10175	6.29=	.11022
4.86=	.08503	5.34=	.09347	5.82=	.10193	6.3 =	.11040
4.87=	.08520	5.35=	.09365	5.83=	.10211	6.31=	.11058
4.88=	.08538	5.36=	.09382	5.84=	.10228	6.32=	.11075
4.89=	.08555	5.37=	.09400	5.85=	.10246	6.33=	.11093
4.9 =	.08573	5.38=	.09418	5.86=	.10263	6.34=	.11111
4.91=	.08591	5.39=	.09435	5.87=	.10281	6.35=	.11128
4.92=	.08608	5.4 =	.09453	5.88=	.10299	6.36=	.11146
4.93=	.08626	5.41=	.09470	5.89=	.10316	6.37=	.11164
4.94=	.08643	5.42=	.09488	5.9 =	.10334	6.38=	.11181
4.95=	.08661	5.43=	.09506	5.91=	.10352	6.39=	.11199
4.96=	.08679	5.44=	.09523	5.92=	.10369	6.4 =	.11217
4.97=	.08696	5.45=	.09541	5.93=	.10387	6.41=	.11234
4.98=	.08714	5.46=	.09558	5.94=	.10405	6.42=	.11252
4.99=	.08731	5.47=	.09576	5.95=	.10422	6.43=	.11270
5.0 =	.08749	5.48=	.09594	5.96=	.10440	6.44=	.11287
5.01=	.08766	5.49=	.09611	5.97=	.10457	6.45=	.11305
5.02=	.08784	5.5 =	.09629	5.98=	.10475	6.46=	.11323
5.03=	.08802	5.51=	.09647	5.99=	.10493	6.47=	.11341
5.04=	.08819	5.52=	.09664	6.0 =	.10510	6.48=	.11358
5.05=	.08837	5.53=	.09682	6.01=	.10528	6.49=	.11376
5.06=	.08854	5.54=	.09699	6.02=	.10546	6.5 =	.11394
5.07=	.08872	5.55=	.09717	6.03=	.10563	6.51=	.11411
5.08=	.08890	5.56=	.09735	6.04=	.10581	6.52=	.11429
5.09=	.08907	5.57=	.09752	6.05=	.10599	6.53=	.11447
5.1 =	.08925	5.58=	.09770	6.06=	.10616	6.54=	.11464
5.11=	.08942	5.59=	.09787	6.07=	.10634	6.55=	.11482
5.12=	.08960	5.6 =	.09805	6.08=	.10652	6.56=	.11500
5.13=	.08978	5.61=	.09823	6.09=	.10669	6.57=	.11517

Figure 15.11. VOR/DME SECONDARY points abeam the primary expansion area where it

Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent
6.58=	.11535	7.06=	.12385	7.54=	.13236	8.02=	.14090
6.59=	.11553	7.07=	.12402	7.55=	.13254	8.03=	.14107
6.6 =	.11570	7.08=	.12420	7.56=	.13272	8.04=	.14125
6.61=	.11588	7.09=	.12438	7.57=	.13290	8.05=	.14143
6.62=	.11606	7.1 =	.12456	7.58=	.13307	8.06=	.14161
6.63=	.11623	7.11=	.12473	7.59=	.13325	8.07=	.14179
6.64=	.11641	7.12=	.12491	7.6 =	.13343	8.08=	.14196
6.65=	.11659	7.13=	.12509	7.61=	.13361	8.09=	.14214
6.66=	.11677	7.14=	.12527	7.62=	.13378	8.1 =	.14232
6.67=	.11694	7.15=	.12544	7.63=	.13396	8.11=	.14250
6.68=	.11712	7.16=	.12562	7.64=	.13414	8.12=	.14268
6.69=	.11730	7.17=	.12580	7.65=	.13432	8.13=	.14286
6.7 =	.11747	7.18=	.12597	7.66=	.13449	8.14=	.14303
6.71=	.11765	7.19=	.12615	7.67=	.13467	8.15=	.14321
6.72=	.11783	7.2 =	.12633	7.68=	.13485	8.16=	.14339
6.73=	.11800	7.21=	.12651	7.69=	.13503	8.17=	.14357
6.74=	.11818	7.22=	.12668	7.7 =	.13521	8.18=	.14375
6.75=	.11836	7.23=	.12686	7.71=	.13538	8.19=	.14392
6.76=	.11853	7.24=	.12704	7.72=	.13556	8.2 =	.14410
6.77=	.11871	7.25=	.12722	7.73=	.13574	8.21=	.14428
6.78=	.11889	7.26=	.12739	7.74=	.13592	8.22=	.14446
6.79=	.11907	7.27=	.12757	7.75=	.13609	8.23=	.14464
6.8 =	.11924	7.28=	.12775	7.76=	.13627	8.24=	.14481
6.81=	.11942	7.29=	.12793	7.77=	.13645	8.25=	.14499
6.82=	.11960	7.3 =	.12810	7.78=	.13663	8.26=	.14517
6.83=	.11977	7.31=	.12828	7.79=	.13681	8.27=	.14535
6.84=	.11995	7.32=	.12846	7.8 =	.13698	8.28=	.14553
6.85=	.12013	7.33=	.12864	7.81=	.13716	8.29=	.14571
6.86=	.12031	7.34=	.12881	7.82=	.13734	8.3 =	.14588
6.87=	.12048	7.35=	.12899	7.83=	.13752	8.31=	.14606
6.88=	.12066	7.36=	.12917	7.84=	.13769	8.32=	.14624
6.89=	.12084	7.37=	.12934	7.85=	.13787	8.33=	.14642
6.9 =	.12101	7.38=	.12952	7.86=	.13805	8.34=	.14660
6.91=	.12119	7.39=	.12970	7.87=	.13823	8.35=	.14678
6.92=	.12137	7.4 =	.12988	7.88=	.13841	8.36=	.14695
6.93=	.12154	7.41=	.13005	7.89=	.13858	8.37=	.14713
6.94=	.12172	7.42=	.13023	7.9 =	.13876	8.38=	.14731
6.95=	.12190	7.43=	.13041	7.91=	.13894	8.39=	.14749
6.96=	.12208	7.44=	.13059	7.92=	.13912	8.4 =	.14767
6.97=	.12225	7.45=	.13076	7.93=	.13930	8.41=	.14785
6.98=	.12243	7.46=	.13094	7.94=	.13947	8.42=	.14802
6.99=	.12261	7.47=	.13112	7.95=	.13965	8.43=	.14820
7.0 =	.12278	7.48=	.13130	7.96=	.13983	8.44=	.14838
7.01=	.12296	7.49=	.13147	7.97=	.14001	8.45=	.14856
7.02–	.12314	7.5 =	.13165	7.98=	.14018	8.46=	.14874
7.03=	.12332	7.51=	.13183	7.99=	.14036	8.47=	.14892
7.04=	.12349	7.52=	.13201	8.0 =	.14054	8.48=	.14909
7.05=	.12367	7.53=	.13219	8.01=	.14072	8.49=	.14927

Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent	Degrees	Tangent
8.5 =	.14945	8.63=	.15177	8.76=	.15409	8.89=	.15642
8.51=	.14963	8.64=	.15195	8.77=	.15427	8.9 =	.15660
8.52=	.14981	8.65=	.15213	8.78=	.15445	8.91=	.15677
8.53=	.14999	8.66=	.15231	8.79=	.15463	8.92=	.15695
8.54=	.15016	8.67=	.15249	8.8 =	.15481	8.93=	.15713
8.55=	.15034	8.68=	.15266	8.81=	.15499	8.94=	.15731
8.56=	.15052	8.69=	.15284	8.82=	.15517	8.95=	.15749
8.57=	.15070	8.7 =	.15302	8.83=	.15534	8.96=	.15767
8.58=	.15088	8.71=	.15320	8.84=	.15552	8.97=	.15785
8.59=	.15106	8.72=	.15338	8.85=	.15570	8.98=	.15803
8.6 =	.15124	8.73=	.15356	8.86=	.15588	8.99=	.15821
8.61=	.15141	8.74=	.15374	8.87=	.15606	9.0 =	.15838
8.62=	.15159	8.75=	.15392	8.88=	.15624		

1. APPROACH LIGHTING SYSTEMS. An approach lighting system is a configuration of signal lights disposed symmetrically about the extended runway centerline starting at the landing threshold and extending outward into the approach zone. Several systems are designed with rows of lightbars, wing lightbars, and distinguishable crossbars to provide visual cues for runway alignment, height perception, roll guidance, and horizon references. Some systems are augmented with a single row of flashing lights aligned on the extended runway centerline. When a single row of flashing lights is employed as an independent system, only the runway alignment cue is provided. At civil airports, systems used in conjunction with precision approaches (such as an ILS) shall be a minimum length of 2,400 feet at locations which have a glide slope of 2.75° or higher. Locations which have a glide slope less than 2.75° require a 3,000 foot system. For nonprecision approaches, the systems are 1,400 feet. Detailed configurational layouts and specifications are depicted in FAA Handbooks 6850.2 and 6850.5 for U.S. standard installations. For military airports, see applicable service directives.

a. Sequenced Flashers. Those approach lighting systems designated with flashing lights are augmented with a system of sequenced flashing lights. Such lights are installed at each centerline bar normally starting 1,000 feet from the threshold out to the end of the system. These lights emit a bluish-white light and flash in sequence toward the threshold at a rate of twice per second.

b. RAIL. Runway Alignment Indicator Lights. RAIL consists of sequenced flashing lights installed on the extended runway centerline beyond the associated approach lighting system. The first light is located 200 feet from the lightbar farthest from the runway threshold. Successive units are spaced 200 feet apart outward into the approach zone for a specified distance.

2. NONSTANDARD SYSTEMS. Approach lighting systems other than the U.S. standard installations may be considered equivalent to the standard systems for the purpose of formulating minimums authorized for military procedures, provided requirements of paragraph 344 are met. This appendix illustrates several non-U.S. standard systems and is offered as a guide to the determination of equivalency.

3. ALSF-1 (Type A_1)*. Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashing Lights, Category I Configuration.

a. System Description. The category I ALSF (ALSF-1) consists of a centerline lightbar approximately 13 1/2 feet long with five equally spaced lights at each 100-foot interval, starting 300 feet from the runway threshold and continuing out to 2,400 or 3,000 feet from the threshold. The centerline lightbar at 1,000 feet from the threshold is 100 feet long and contains 21 lights. All of the aforementioned lights are white. The lightbar 200 feet from the threshold is 50 feet long, contains 11 red lights, and is called the terminating bar. Two lightbars, each containing five red lights, are located 100 feet from the threshold, one on either side of the centerline, and are called wingbars. A row of green lights on 5-foot centers is located near the threshold and extends across the runway threshold and outwards a distance of approximately 45 feet from the runway edge on either side of the runway. See Figure 134.

b. Equivalent Systems. When the characteristics described in paragraph 3a exist in the following systems, the appropriate visibility reductions may be applied to MILITARY instrument approach procedures and FAR 121 operations at foreign airports.

Type*	Description
B	U. S. Configuration B
BN	Former NATO Standard C
BP	NATO Standard
J	Calvert (United Kingdom)
O	Centerline High Intensity (Europe)
T	Centre Row DOT Standard High Intensity (Canada)

*NOTE: *"Type" refers to the system identification letters assigned to approach lighting as shown in the Interagency Air Cartographic Committee (IACC) Specification IACC No. 4. These identification letters are shown on the Approach Lighting Legend Sheets published with Civil and Military Instrument Approach Procedures.*

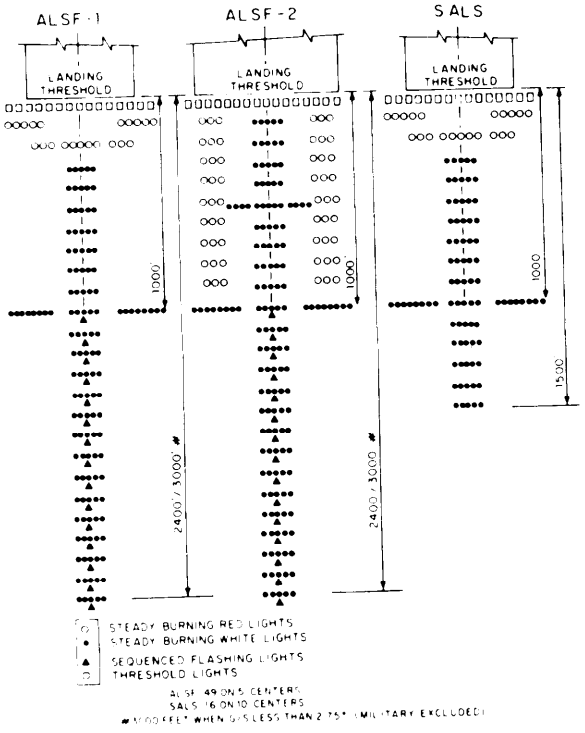


Figure 134. APPROACH LIGHTING SYSTEMS.

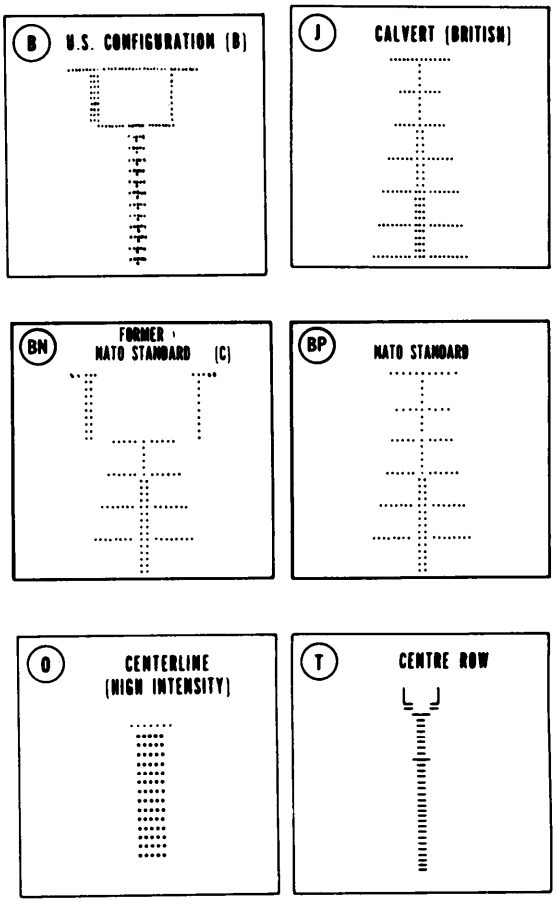


Figure 135. SYSTEMS EQUIVALENT TO U.S. STANDARD A_{II}, ALSF—I.

4. ALSF–2 (Type A). Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashing Lights.

a. System Description. The category II ALSF (ALSF–2) differs from the category I configuration only in the inner 1,000 feet (nearest the threshold) of the system. The outer 1,400 or 2,000 feet of both systems are identical. The 2,400–foot system is authorized by Order 6850.9 when the glide slope angle is 2.75° or higher, while the 3,000–foot system is authorized when the glide slope angle is less than 2.75°. The terminating bar and wingbars of the category I configuration are replaced with centerline bars of five white lights each. In addition, there are lightbars (three red lights each) on either side of the centerline bars at each light station in the inner 1,000 feet. These are called siderow bars. Also there is an additional bar 500 feet from the threshold. These lights form a crossbar referred to as the 500–foot bar. The category II configuration is shown in Figure 134.

b. Equivalent Systems. None.

* 5. SALS. (Type A_2) Short Approach Light System.

a. System Description. The Short Approach Light System is an installation which consists of the inner 1,500 feet of the standard ALSF-1 TYPE A_1 described in paragraph 3 of this appendix. The system provides roll guidance, a distinctive marker at 1,000 feet from the threshold, and distinctive threshold. See Figure 134.

NOTE: *SALS is programed to be phased out or retrofitted.*

b. Equivalent Systems. When the characteristics described in paragraph 5a exist in the following systems, the appropriate visibility reductions may be applied to MILITARY instrument approach procedures and to FAR 121 operations at foreign airports. See Figure 136.

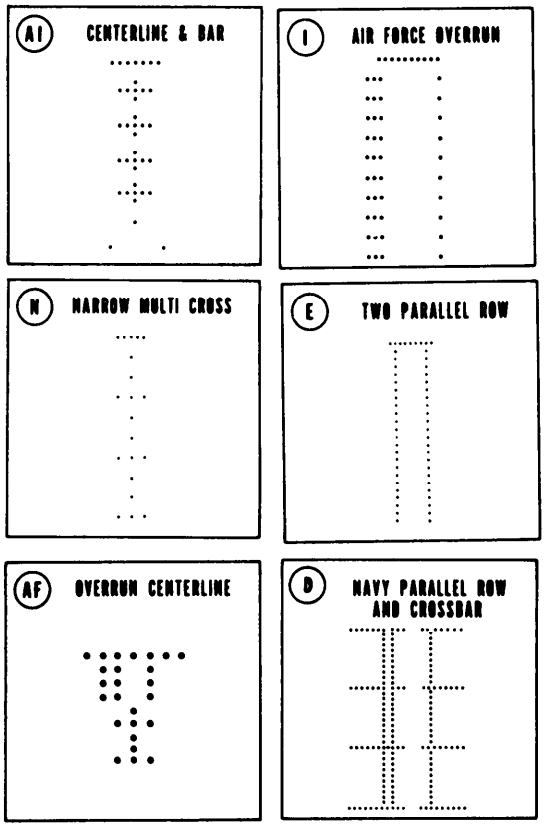


Figure 136. SYSTEMS EQUIVALENT TO SALS, SSALS, SSALF, MALS, AND MALSF.

Type	Description
AI	Centerline and Bar (South America)
I	Air Force Overrun (U.S.)
N	Narrow Multi–Cross (British)
E	Two Parallel Rows (U.S.)
AF	Overrun Centerline High Intensity (Europe)
D	Navy Parallel Row and Crossbar (U.S.)

6. SSALS, SSALF, and SSALR. (Type A_3). Short Simplified Approach Lighting System; Short Simplified Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashers; and, Short Simplified Approach Lighting System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights, respectively. See Figure 137.

NOTE: *SSALS and SSALF are being phased out.*

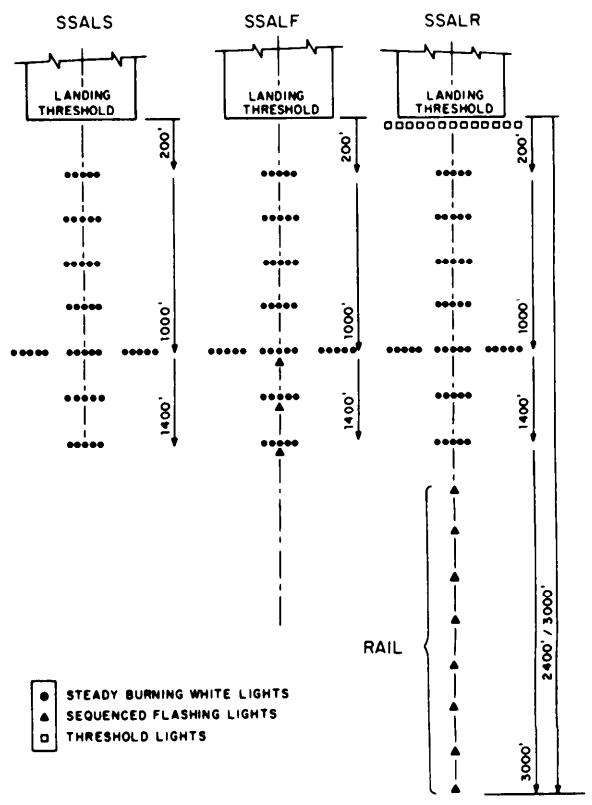


Figure 137. SIMPLIFIED SHORT APPROACH LIGHTING SYSTEMS *

a. Systems Description.

(1) **SSALS.** The SSALS consists of seven five–light bars located on the extended runway centerline with the first bar located 200 feet from the runway threshold. Two additional five–light bars are located one on each side of the centerline bar, 1,000 feet from the runway threshold, forming a crossbar 70 feet long. All lights of the system are white.

(2) **SSALF.** The SSALF consists of a SSALS with three sequenced flashers that are located at the last three lightbar stations.

(3) **SSALR.** The RAIL portion of the SSALR consists of five or eight sequenced flashers located on the extended runway centerline. The first flasher is located 200 feet from the approach end of the SSALS with successive units located at each 200–foot interval out to 2,400 or 3,000 feet from the runway threshold.

b. Equivalent Systems.

(1) **SSALS and SSALF.** When the characteristics described in paragraphs 6a (1) and (2) exist in the systems shown in Figure 136, the appropriate visibility reduction may be applied to MILITARY instrument approach procedures.

(2) SSALR. When the characteristics described in paragraphs 6a (1) and (3) exist in the systems shown in Figure 138, the appropriate visibility reduction may be applied to MILITARY instrument approach procedures.

Type	Description
BQ	Centre and Double Row RCAF Standard (Canada)
BO	Centre Row Modified Calvert (Canada)

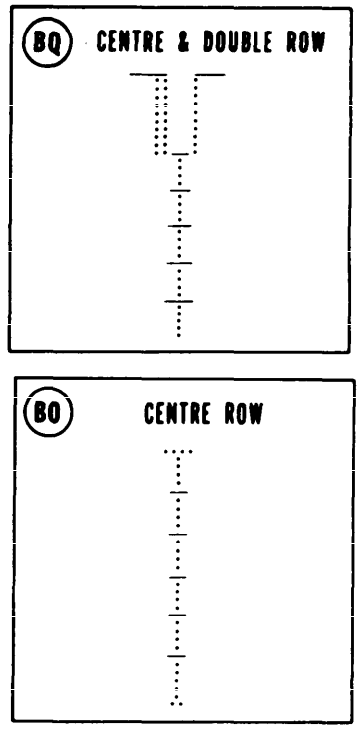


Figure 138. SYSTEMS EQUIVALENT TO SSALR AND MALSR.

7. MALS, MALSF (Type A_4), and MALSR (Type A_5). Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System; Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System with Sequenced Flashers; and, Medium Intensity Approach Lighting System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights, respectively. See Figure 139.

a. Systems Description.

(1) **MALS.** The MALS consists of seven five–light bars located on the extended runway centerline with the first bar located 200 feet from the runway threshold and at each 200–foot interval out to 1,400 feet from the threshold. Two additional five–light bars, one on each side of the centerline bar, 1,000 feet from the runway threshold form a crossbar 66 feet long.

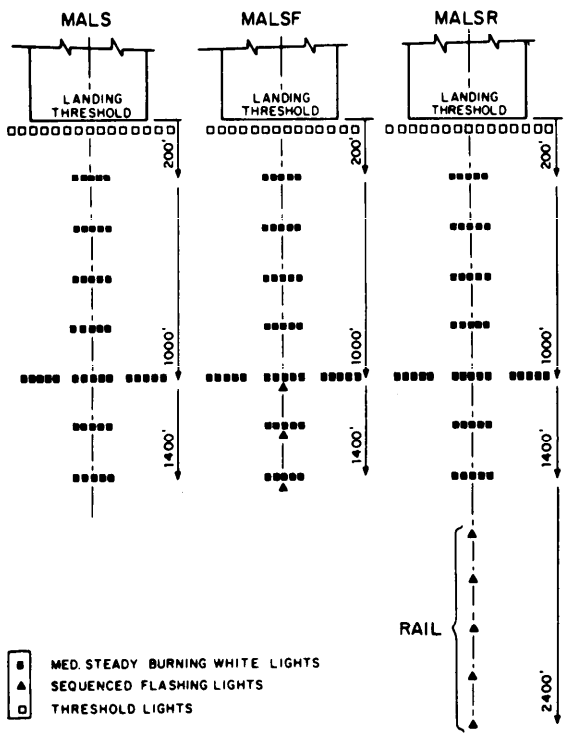


Figure 139. MEDIUM INTENSITY APPROACH LIGHTING SYSTEMS.

(2) **MALSF.** The MALSF consists of a MALS with three sequenced flashers located at the last three lightbar stations.

(3) **MALSR.** The RAIL portion of the MALSR consists of five or eight sequenced flashers located on the extended runway centerline. The first flasher is located 200 feet from the approach end of the MALS with successive units located at each 200–foot interval out to 2,400 feet from the runway threshold.

b. Equivalent Systems.

(1) **MALS and MALSF.** When the characteristics described in paragraphs 7a (1) and (2) exist in the systems shown in Figure 136, the appropriate visibility reductions may be applied to MILITARY instrument approach procedures.

(2) **MALSR.** When the characteristics described in paragraphs 7a (1) and (3) exist in the systems shown in Figure 138, the appropriate visibility reductions may be applied to MILITARY instrument approach procedures.

8. ODALS. Omnidirectional Approach Lighting System.

a. System Description. The system consists of seven strobe lights located in the approach area of a runway. Five of these strobes are located on the extended runway centerline starting 300 feet from the runway landing threshold and each 300–foot interval out to and including 1,500 feet from the threshold. The other two strobes are located on the sides of the runway threshold. The strobe lights flash in sequence toward the runway at a rate of once per second with the two units located at the runway end flashing simultaneously. The strobes have three intensity steps. See Figure 140.

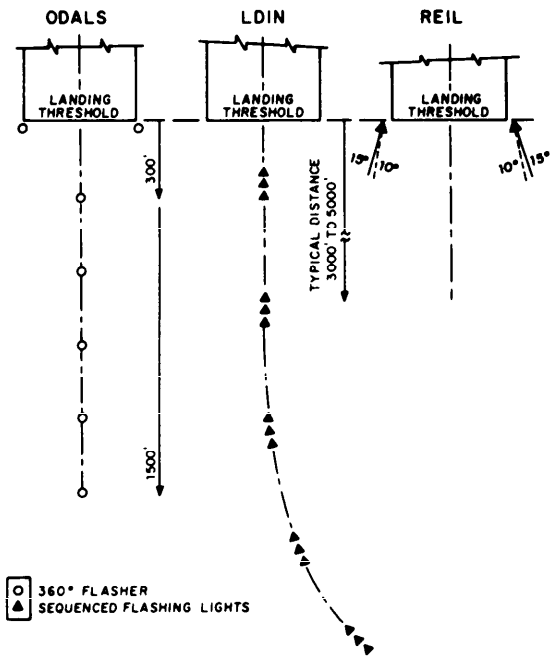


Figure 140. OMNIDIRECTION, LEAD-IN, AND RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTING SYSTEMS

b. Equivalent Systems. When the characteristics described in paragraph 8a exist in the systems shown in Figure 141, the appropriate visibility reductions may be applied to MILITARY instrument approach procedures. *

Type	Description
BG	Left Single Row (Canada)
BR	Centre Row RCAF (Canada)
S	Cross (Europe–Africa)
M	Single Row Centerline (Europe–Asia–South America)
BF	Centre Row RCAF (Canada)
X	Centerline, Two Crossbars (Europe–Africa)

9. LDIN, Lead–In Lighting System.

a. System Description. The LDIN is usually installed as a supplement to a MALS or SSALS. This portion of the facility consists of a number of sequenced flashing lights beginning at a distance from the threshold determined by the need and terrain. These lights flash twice per second in sequence toward the threshold, have no intensity control, and operate on all brightness steps of the controlling system. The LDIN configuration is shown in Figure 140.

b. Equivalent Systems. The Hong Kong Curve (British), Type BE, is equivalent to the LDIN system. See Figure 142.

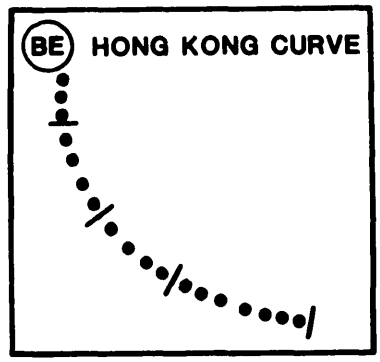


Figure 142. SYSTEM EQUIVALENT TO LDIN.

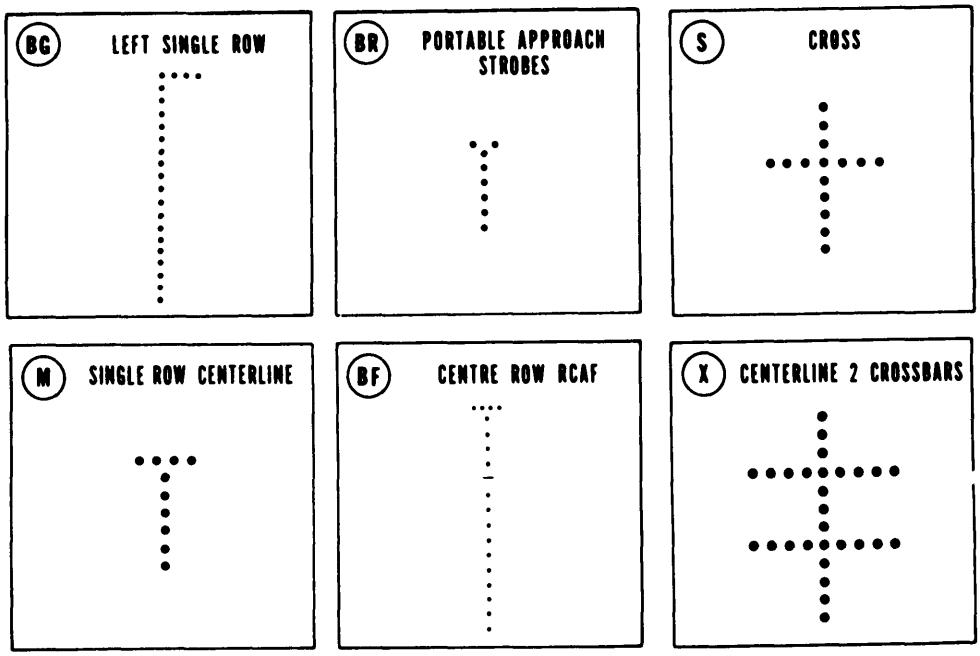


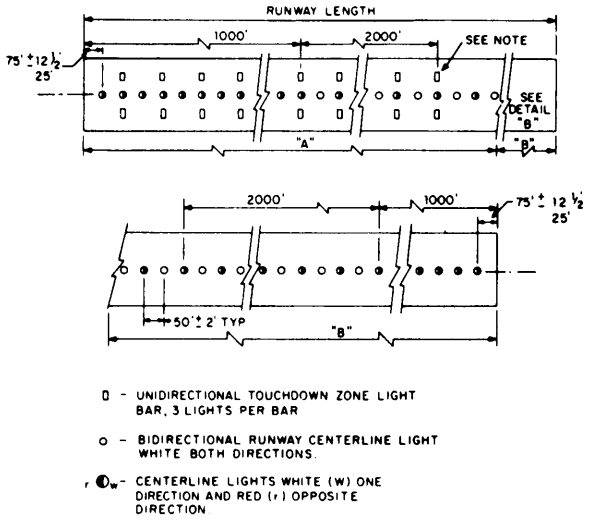
Figure 141. SYSTEMS EQUIVALENT TO U.S. ODALS paragraph 8, appendix 5.

* **10. REIL.** The Runway End Identifier Lights consist of a pair of condenser discharge fixtures identical to the sequenced flasher light system. The optimum location for the fixtures is at the runway threshold, 40 feet out on each side, measured from the runway edge. See Figure 140.

11. HIRL. High Intensity Runway Lights are used to outline the edges of paved runways during periods of darkness and low visibility. The light units are elevated and equipped with lenses which project two main light beams. Standards for design, installation, and maintenance are found in AC–150/5340–24.

12. MIRL. Medium Intensity Runway Lights are elevated and omnidirectional fixtures, with clear lenses. They may be used to light paved runways or unpaved landing strips. Standards for design, installation, and maintenance may be found in AC–150/5340–24.

13. TDZ/CL. Runway Centerline and Touchdown Zone Lighting. This system consists of touchdown zone lights and runway centerline lights. In the touchdown zone, two rows of transverse lightbars are located symmetrically about the runway centerline. The bars are spaced longitudinally at 100–foot intervals. Each lightbar consists of three unidirectional lights facing the landing threshold. The rows of lightbars extend to a distance of 3,000 feet, or one–half the runway length for runways less than 6,000 feet, from the threshold with the first lightbar located 100 feet from the threshold. The runway centerline lighting system consists of bidirectional fixtures installed at 50–foot intervals along the entire length of the runway centerline. The last 3,000–foot portion of the lighting system is color coded to warn pilots of the impending runway end. Alternate red and white lights are installed as seen from 3,000 feet to 1,000 feet from the runway end, and red lights are installed in the last 1,000–foot portion. Installation details may be found in AC 150/5340–4C.



NOTE: *The touchdown zone lightbars are not required to be located at the same stations as the centerline lights.*

Figure 143. TOUCHDOWN ZONE CENTERLINE LIGHTS. *

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Adjustment of DH, ILS 938
Adjustment of DH, PAR (Heli.) 1167
Adjustment of DH, PAR 1028
Adjustment to MDA 323
Air Force Procedures Issuance 171
Air Traffic, Coordination of Procedures 150
Airborne Radar 1000, 1060
Airborne Receiver Performance . . . . . Foreword
Airport Surveillance Radar . . . . . See ASR
Airports, Requirements for Procedures 122
Airport Waypoint 1501, 1506
Airspace Action, Coordination of Procedures 150
Airspeeds, Units Used 210
Air-ground Communications Required 122
Alignment of Initial Approach Segments 232
Alignment Options, NDB Final 613, 713
Alignment, Approach Course 342
Alignment, Arc Initial Course 232
Alignment, Arc Intermediate Approach Segment 243
Alignment, ASR Diverse Vectors 1041
Alignment, ASR Final 1044
Alignment, ASR Initial 1041
Alignment, ASR Intermediate 1042
Alignment, Circling Final Approach Area 260
Alignment, DF Final 813
Alignment, DR Initial Approach Segment 233
Alignment, Final Approach, VOR 413, 423
Alignment, Holding 291
Alignment, ILS Final 930
Alignment, Initial and Intermediate Segments 232
Alignment, Localizer 952
Alignment, Missed Approach 271
Alignment, NDB Final Approach 613, 623, 713
Alignment, PAR Final 1020
Alignment, Procedure Turn Initial Approach Segment 234
Alignment, RNAV Final 1523
Alignment, RNAV Initial 1521
Alignment, RNAV Intermediate 1522
Alignment, SDF Final Approach 1413
Alignment, Straight Initial Course 232
Alignment, Straight Intermediate Approach Segments 242
Alignment, TACAN Arc Final 523
Alignment, Teardrop Penetration Initial Approach 235
Alignment, VDP 251
Alignment, VOR Final 513
Alignment, VORTAC Arc Final 523
Alignment, VOR/DME Arc Final 523
Alongtrack Distance Fix 1501

Alongtrack Fix Displacement 1501, 1520
ALS for ILS Category II A5-2
ALSF-1 341
ALS A5-1
Alternate Minimums 360
Alternate Missed Approach Procedure 270
Altitude Difference, Procedure Turn Completion 234
Altitude Loss, Penetration Turn Initial Approach 235
Altitude Selection 231
Altitude Selection, ASR 1043
Altitude Selection, ILS 924
Altitude Selection, Initial Approach 231
Altitude Selection, Intermediate Approach 241
Altitude Selection, PAR 1016
Altitude Selection, Simultaneous ILS 994
Altitudes (Heli.) 1126
Altitudes, Emergency Safe 221
Altitudes, Minimum Safe 221
Altitudes, Minimum Sector 221
Altitude, Initial, ILS 924
Altitude, Intermediate Approach 924
Altitude, Minimum Descent ..... See MDA
Altitude, Minimum Safe, DF 810
Altitude, Minimum Sector 221
Altitude, Minimum, Initial Approach 231
Altitude, Missed Approach 270
Altitude, Penetration Turn 423, 924
Altitude, Penetration Turn, DF 813
Altitude, Procedure Turn Completion 234
Altitude, Procedure Turn, DF 813
Altitude, Procedure Turn, ILS 924
Altitude, Procedure Turn, NDB 613, 623
Altitude, Units Used 210
Ambiguity - Cone 1502
Analysis of Obstacle Clearance A2-12
Angle of Convergence, NDB Final 613
Angle of Divergence A1-2
Angle of Divergence, Holding Fix 287
Angle of Divergence, Teardrop Procedure Turn 234
Angle of Interception, Initial and Intermediate Segments 232
Angle of Interception, Simultaneous ILS Localizer 994
Angle of Intercept, DR Initial Segment 233
Angle of Intercept, PAR 1014
Angle of Intersection, ILS 923
Angles, Minimum Divergence 1760
Angle, Glide Slope, PAR 1026
Angle, ILS Glide Slope 936
Antenna Mast Height, ILS 936
Application of Appendix A1-1
Application of Approach Category 213
Application (Heli.) 1106, 1125

Application, Departure Criteria 1201
Application, Turning Area Criteria 1714
Approach Categories (Heli.) 1108
Approach Categories 212
Approach Category Application 213
Approach Course Alignment 342
Approach Lights, Visibility Credit 340
Approach Minimums, DF 830
Approach Segments, Typical 230, 240
Approach Surface Baseline A1-2, A2-9, A2-11
Approach, Circling 4, 260
Approach, Final 250
Approach, Initial ..... See Initial Approach
Approach, Intermediate ..... See Intermediate Approach
Approach, Light Plane A1-1
Approach Lighting Systems A5-1
Approach, Missed ..... See Missed Approach
Approach, NDB ..... See NDB
Approach, Precision 5
Approach, Procedures 5
Approach, Simultaneous 5
Approach, Straight-in 5
Approval of Procedures 122
Approval, Nonstandard Procedures 141
Approving Authority A1-2
Arc Final Approach Segment Alignment, TACAN, VOR/DME and VOR with FAF (Heli.) 1137
Arc Final Approach Segment Radius, TACAN, VOR/DME and VOR with FAF (Heli.) 1136
Arc Final Approach, TACAN 523
Arc Final Approach, VORTAC 523
Arc Final Approach, VOR/DME 523
Arc, DME A1-2
Arc, Initial Approach 232
Arc, Intermediate Approach Segment 240, 243
Area, Arc Intermediate Approach Segment 243
Area, ASR Final 1044
Area, ASR Initial 1041
Area, ASR Intermediate 1042
Area, Circling Approach A1-2, 260
Area, Departure 1202, 1203
Area, DF Final 813
Area, Diverse Vectors, ASR 1041
Area, DR Initial Approach Segment 233
Area, Final Approach, VOR 413, 423
Area, ILS Final 930
Area, Initial Approach Segment 232
Area, Intermediate (with Procedure Turn 244
Area, Localizer & LDA Final 953
Area, Missed Approach, ILS 944
Area, NDB Final Approach 613, 623
Area, Obstacle Clearance, En Route 1710, 1711, 1712
Area, Obstacle Clearance, Holding 292

Area, Obstacle Clearance, NDB 713
Area, Obstacle Clearance, VOR 513
Area, PAR Final 1020
Area, PAR Missed Approach 1033
Area, Procedure Turn 234
Area, RNAV Final 1523
Area, RNAV Initial 1521
Area, RNAV Intermediate 1522
Area, SDF Obstacle Clearance 1413
Area, Straight Intermediate Approach Segment 242
Area, TACAN Arc Final 523
Area, Teardrop Penetration Initial Approach 235
Area, Turning Missed Approach 275
Area, VDP 251
Area, VORTAC Arc Final 523
Area, VOR/DME Arc Final 523
Army Procedures Issuance 171
ARSR Fixes 283
ARSR, Use as Course Vector 283
ASR Fixes 283
ASR Procedures 1000, 1040
ASR, Use as a Course Vector 211
ATD Fixes, Use 1502
Authorities, Approving ..... Forward, A1-2
Back Course Procedures, SDF 1415
Baseline, Approach Surface A1-2, A2-9, A2-11
BC A1-2
Bearings, Units Used 210
Cancellation of Directives 2
Cancellation of Procedures 123
Categories of Aircraft for Approach 212
Ceiling, Departure 1208
Changeover Points (COP), En Route 1716
Changes to Procedures 142
Circling Alignment, VOR 513
Circling Approach Area Not Considered for Obstacle Clearance 261
Circling Approach Area A1-2
Circling Approach Minimums 323
Circling Approach, Missed Approach Point 514
Circling Approach, NDB 613, 713
Circling Approach, SDF 1413
Circling Approach, VOR 400, 413
Circling Descent Gradient 513
Circling Descent Gradient, NDB Final 713
Circling Final Approach 260
Circling Minimums 322, 351
Circling NDB Approach 600
Circling NDB Missed Approach 714
Circling NDB Obstacle Clearance 613
Circling NDB Procedures 600
Circling Obstacle Clearance, ASR 1044

TAC azimuth and distance fix to another is dead

Circling Obstacle Clearance, NDB 623
Circling Obstacle Clearance, VOR 413, 423, 513
Circling Procedures Identification 162
Circling 4
Civil Airport Procedures Responsibility 130
Civil Airports, Coordination of Procedures 150
Civil Procedures Issuance 171
Civil Procedures, Coordination Conflicts 151
Civil Takeoff Minimums 370
Clearance, Obstacle ..... See Obstacle Clearance
Climb Gradients, Departure 1205
Coast Guard Procedures Issuance 171
Combination Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 277
Combination Missed Approach, ILS 945
Combination Missed Approach, PAR 1035
Combination Missed Approach, RNAV 1535
Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach PAR (Heli.) 1171
Combination Straight and Turning Missed Approach (Heli.) 1122
Common Information 210
Communications for PAR 1012
Communications in Holding 1731
Communications Loss for ASR 1047
Communications Required for Procedures 122
Communications, DF Procedure 820
Compass Locator 911
Component Failure, PAR 1011
Components, ILS Cat I 910
Components, ILS 913
Computing TCH A2-9
Cone of Ambiguity 1502
Construction of Procedure 214
Controlling Obstacle A1-2
Convergence Angle, NDB Final 613
Convergence NDB Final 713
Coordination Conflicts 151
Coordination of Procedures 123, 150, 172
Course Change, En Route 1717
Course Divergence, Penetration Turn Initial Approach 235
Course Reversal, RNAV 1521
Course, Straight, Initial Approach, Angle of Intersection 232
Course, Units Used 210
Criteria, ILS Category I 920
Crosstrack Fix Displacement 1501
Dead Reckoning Initial 233
Dead Reckoning A1-2
Decision Height ..... See DH
Definition of ILS Type 901
Departure Ceiling 1208
Departure Minimums 370, 1280
Departure Procedure Publication 1207
Departure Procedures 4, 1200

Departure Routes 1203, 1205
Departure Visibility 1208
Departures Straight 1203
Departures, Turning 1203
Departure, End of 1206
Descent Altitude, Minimum . . . . . See MDA
Descent Angle, RNAV 1523
Descent Fix Distance 288
Descent Fix 288
Descent Gradient 513
Descent Gradient, Approach Segment 288
Descent Gradient, Arc Initial Segment 232
Descent Gradient, ASR 1044
Descent Gradient, ASR Diverse Vectors 1041
Descent Gradient, ASR Initial 1041
Descent Gradient, ASR Intermediate 1042
Descent Gradient, DR Initial Segment 233
Descent Gradient for Final Approach 252
Descent Gradient (Heli.) 1110
Descent Gradient, ILS 923
Descent Gradient, Initial Approach Area 232, 235
Descent Gradient, Intermediate Approach Segment 243
Descent Gradient, Localizer & LDA Final 955
Descent Gradient, NDB 623, 713
Descent Gradient, PAR 1015
Descent Gradient, Procedure Turn Initial Approach 234
Descent Gradient, RNAV Initial 1521
Descent Gradient, RNAV Intermediate 1522
Descent Gradient, Straight Intermediate Segment 242
Descent Gradient, TACAN Arc Final 523
Descent Gradient, VOR Final 423
Descent Gradient, VORTAC Arc Final 523
Descent Gradient, VOR 413
Descent Gradient, VOR/DME Arc Final 523
Deviation from Established Radar Patterns 1045
DF Procedures 800, 810
DF & High Altitude Penetration A2-8
DII Adjustment, PAR 1028
DH 324, A1-2
DH, ILS 938
DH, PAR 1028
Discontinuance of ILS Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 944
Discontinuance of PAR Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 1034
Displacement, Fix 281, 284, 285, 286
Distance Effect on Visibility Minimums 331
Distance & Bearing Information 210
Distance & Divergence, Penetration Turn 235
Distance, Units Used 235
Distance, DME A1-2
Distance, Holding Fix Facility 287
Distance, Penetration Turn Initial Approach Area 235

Distance, Procedure Turn vs. Intermediate Segment 244
Distance, Procedure Turn 234
Distribution (FAA) 2
Distribution (U.S.A., USAF) . . . . . Page viii
Distribution (U.S.N., USMC, USCG) . . . . . Page vii
Divergence Angle, Holding Fix 287
Divergence Angle, Teardrop Procedure Turn 234
Diverse Departures 1202, 1205
Diverse Vectors, ASR 1041
DME Accuracy 286
DME Arc A1-2
DME Distance A1-2
DME Distance Waypoints 1505
DME Fixes 282
DME 912
Dogleg Segment, En Route 1716
Doppler, RNAV 1500, 1501
DR 232
Early Turns 1204, 1205
Effective Date of Procedure 172
Eligibility for Procedures 120
Eligibility, Civil Airports 120
Eligibility, Military 120
Elimination of Procedure Turn 234
Emergency Dissemination of Procedures 150, 172
Emergency Safe Altitude 221
End of Departure 1206
End of Missed Approach 278
End Point Waypoints 1505
En Route Holding 1731
En Route Obstacle Clearance Areas 1710
En Route Operations 220
En Route RNAV 1510
En Route Turning Areas 1510
Entry Zone, Procedure Turn 234
Equivalents to ALS A5-2
Equivalents to LDIN A5-8
Equivalents to MALS A5-3
Equivalents to ODALS A5-5
Equivalents to SALS A5-3
Equivalents to SSALF A5-3
Equivalents to SSALS A5-3
Established GS Angle A2-9
Establishment of Procedures 140
Existing Procedures 4
Expanded Turning Area, RNAV 1510
Facilities for which Criteria Are Not Provided (Heli.) 1104
FAC A1-2
FAF A1-2
Feeder Routes 220, 410, 420, 510, 520, 610, 620, 710, 730, 920, 950, 993, 1013
Feeder Routes, RNAV 1512

Final Approach Alignment PAR (Heli.) 1159
Final Approach Area PAR (Heli.) 1160
Final Approach Fix Error 287
Final Approach Length, Effect on MDA 323
Final Approach NDB 613, 623
Final Approach Obstacle Clearance Surface A2-11
Final Approach, RNAV 1523
Final Approach Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance A2-7
Final Approach Secondary Area Width A2-7
Final Approach Segment ASR (Heli.) 1174
Final Approach Segment ILS (Heli.) 1152
Final Approach Segment NDB with FAF (Heli.) 1142
Final Approach Segment NDB, No FAF (Heli.) 1140
Final Approach Segment on Heliport VOR (No FAF)(Heli.) 132
Final Approach Segment PAR (Heli.) 1158
Final Approach Segments A2-11
Final Approach Segment 250
Final Approach Segment, Parallel ILS 996
Final Approach Segment, TACAN, VOR/DME and VOR with FAF (Heli.) 1133
Final Approach Segment, Visual Portion 251
Final Approach Segment, VOR (High ALT) 423
Final Approach Segment, VOR (Low ALT) 413
Final Approach Surface, PAR (Heli.) 1162
Final Approach Trapezoid, NDB 713
Final Approach (Heli.) 1116
Final Approach - Only One Specified 250
Final Approach, ASR 1044
Final Approach, DF 813
Final Approach, ILS 930
Final Approach, PAR 1020
Final Approach, SDF 1413
Final Approach, TACAN 523
Final Approach, VORTAC 523
Final Approach, VOR 513
Final Approach, VOR/DME 523
Final Secondary Area A2-6
Fix Displacement, RNAV 1502
Fix Distance, Descent 288
Fix Error, Final Approach 287
Fix Formed by Intersection 281
Fix Stepdown, NDB 613, 623
Fixes, LF 1762
Fixes, NDB Final 713
Fixes, Radar 283
Fixes, TACAN Arc Final 523
Fixes, Use of 513
Fixes, VHF, En Route 1761
Fixes, VORTAC Arc Final 523
Fixes, VOR/DME Arc Final 523
Fix, Descent 288
Fix, Displacement 281, 284, 285, 286

Fix, DME 282
Fix, Holding 287
Fix, Initial Approach 230, 287
Fix, Intermediate 287
Fix, Obstacle Clearance 288
Fix, Obstacles Close-in 289
Fix, Stepdown 288
Fix, Terminal Area 280
Flight Inspection A1-2
Flight Levels, Units Used 210
Formulation of Procedures 140
Gaps, Navigational 1740
Glide Slope Extension A2-9
Glide Slope, ILS 936
Glide Slope, PAR (Heli.) 1165
Glide Slope, PAR 1026
Glossary A1-2
GPI A1-2, A2-7
GPS, RNAV 1500, 1501
Gradient, Departure Climb 1205
Gradient, Descent . . . . . See Descent Gradient
Ground Point of Intercept A2-11
Ground System Performance . . . . . Foreword
GS Angle A2-9
GS Antenna Height, ILS 936
GS Antenna Location A2-9
GS Relocation, ILS 937
GS Relocation, PAR 1027
Guidance, Positive, Course, Requirements 211
HAA A1-2
HAT A1-2
Height Antenna Mast, ILS 936
Height, Threshold Crossing, ILS 936
Helicopter Procedures 1100
High Altitude Penetrations . . . . . Chap 4, Sect 2
High Altitude Penetration A2-8
High Altitude Procedures Identification 163
HIRL for RVR Approval 334
Holding 290
Holding Alignment (Heli.) 1123
Holding Area (Heli.) 1124
Holding at Initial Fix 230
Holding, En Route 1731
Holding Fix 287
Holding Obstacle Clearance Area 292
Holding Obstacle Clearance 293
Holding Obstacle Clearance, En Route 1731
Holding Pattern as Initial Segment 230
Holding Pattern Over Final Approach Fix 234
Holding Pattern Over Intermediate Fix 234
Holding Patterns 290

Holding, RNAV 1507
Holding Waypoints 1505
IAC A1-2
IAF A1-2
IAF, Initial Approach Fix 230
IC A1-2
Identification of Procedures 160
IF A1-2
ILS Category II ALS A5-9
ILS Category III 970
ILS Category II 960
ILS Category I 901
ILS Criteria 920
ILS GS Angle vs. Slope of Surface 931
ILS Procedures, Simultaneous 990
ILS 900
ILS/PAR Obstacle Clearance A2-11
Inertial RNAV 1500, 1501
Initial Altitudes, ILS 924
Initial and Intermediate Segments on Heliport VOR (No FAF)(Heli.) 1131
Initial Approach Altitude Selection 231
Initial Approach Area, Penetration Turn 235
Initial Approach Penetration Turn Altitude 235
Initial Approach Segment ASR (Heli.) 1172
Initial Approach Segment Based on Procedure Turn (Heli.) 1112
Initial Approach Segment Based on Procedure Turn 234
Initial Approach Segments Based on Straight Courses and Arcs with Positive Course Guidance (Heli.) 1111
Initial Approach Segment, VOR 411, 421, 511
Initial Approach 230
Initial Approach, ASR 1041
Initial Approach, DF 811
Initial Approach, ILS 921
Initial Approach, Localizer & LDA 950
Initial Approach, NDB 611, 621, 711
Initial Approach, RNAV 1521
Initial Approach, Simultaneous ILS 994
Initial Fix 287
Initial Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance A2-5
Initial Segments 230
Initial Segment, PAR 1013
Initial Segment, TACAN 521
Initial Segment, VORTAC 521
Initial Segment, VOR/DME 521
Initiation of Missed Approach 270
Inoperative Components, ILS 913
Inoperative Components, PAR 1011
Instrument Landing System ..... See ILS
Intercept Angle, DR Initial Approach Segment 233
Interception Angle, Simultaneous ILS 994
Intermediate Approach Altitude 924

Intermediate Approach Segment ASR (Heli.) 1173
Intermediate Approach Segment Based on an Arc (Heli.) 1114
Intermediate Approach Segment Based on Straight Courses (Heli.) 1113
Intermediate Approach Segment ILS (Heli.) 1151
Intermediate Approach Segment PAR (Heli.) 1156
Intermediate Approach Segment, Arc 243
Intermediate Approach 240
Intermediate Approach, DF 812
Intermediate Approach, ILS 922
Intermediate Approach, NDB 612, 621, 712
Intermediate Approach, Straight 242
Intermediate Approach, VOR 412
Intermediate Fix 287
Intermediate RNAV 1522
Intermediate Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance A2-4
Intermediate Secondary Area A2-3
Intermediate Segment within a Procedure Turn Segment (Heli.) 1115
Intermediate Segment within a Procedure Turn Segment 244
Intermediate Segment, ASR 1042
Intermediate Segment, NDB 612
Intermediate Segment, PAR 1014
Intermediate Segment, Simultaneous ILS 995
Intermediate Segment, TACAN 522
Intermediate Segment, VOR (High ALT) 422
Intermediate Segment, VOR (Low ALT) 412
Intermediate Segment, VORTAC 522
Intermediate Segment, VOR/DME 522
Intermediate, Localizer & LDA 950
Intersection Angle, Arc Initial Approach 232
Intersection Angle, ILS 923
Intersection Angle, Initial to Intermediate Segments 232
Intersection Angle, Straight Initial Segment 232
Intersection Fix Displacement 285
Intersection Fix 281
Issuance of Procedures 171
JAL A1-2
Jurisdiction of Procedures 131
Landing Systems, Instrument ..... See ILS
Lateral Distance of GS Antenna A2-9
Latitude/Longitude Waypoints 1505
LDA Procedures 950
LDA 901, A1-2
LDIN 341, A5-8
Lead Radial, Arc Initial Approach Segment 232
Lead Radial, Arc Initial Segment 232
Length, Arc Intermediate Approach Segment 243
Length, ASR Final 1044
Length, ASR Intermediate 1042
Length, DR Initial Approach Segment 233
Length, Final Approach Segment, VOR 513
Length, ILS Final Approach Area 930

Length, Initial Approach Segment 232
Length, Intermediate Segment (with Procedure Turn) 244
Length, Intermediate, ILS 923
Length, NDB Final Approach Course 713
Length, PAR Final 1020
Length, Straight Intermediate Approach Segment 242
Lighting Required for Procedures 122
Lighting Systems 341
Lighting & Marking Obstacles 122
Lighting, Approach A5-1
Lights, Visibility Credit 340
LMM 911
Localizer Accuracy 285
Localizer and LDA (Heli.) 1155
Localizer Approach 901
Localizer Interception, Simultaneous ILS 994
Localizer Only, Use 951
Localizer Procedures 950
Location of GS Antenna 936, A2-9
LOC A1-2
LOM 911
Loran-C 1500, 1501
Lost Communications, ASR 1047
Low Altitude NDB Procedures 610
Low Altitude Procedures, VOR 410
Lowest Minimums, ILS 935
MALSR 341, A5-10
MALS 341, A5-6
Maneuvering Zone, Procedure Turn 234
MAP A1-2
MAP, ILS 941
MAP, NDB 714
MAP, PAR 1031
MAP, VOR 514
Marker Beacon Accuracy 286
Marking of Runways 342
Marking & Lighting Obstacles 122
Maximum Intermediate Segment Length (with Procedure Turn) 244
MCAs 1730
MDA Adjustment 323
MDA Effect on Visibility Minimums 331
MDA for Circling Approach 322, 351
MDA for Straight-in Approach 321
MDA 320, 513, A1-2
MDA, Arc Procedures 523
MDA, DF 813
MDA, Localizer & LDA 956
MDA, NDB Procedures 613, 623, 713
MDA, VOR 413, 423
Measurement, Units of 210
MEAs 1718

MHA A1-2
Microwave ILS (Heli.) 1154
Military Airports, Coordination of Procedures 150
Military Airports, Procedures Responsibility 130
Military Minimums 350
Military Procedures at Civil Airports, Responsibility 130
Military Procedures, Nonstandard 141
Military Takeoff Minimums 370
Minimum Altitude, Intermediate Segment 241
Minimum Arc Radius, Initial Approach 232
Minimum Crossing Altitude (MCA) 1730
Minimum Descent Altitude . . . . . See MDA
Minimum DH, ILS 938
Minimum DH, PAR 1028
Minimum Divergence Angles 1760
Minimum En Route Instrument Altitudes (MEA) 1718
Minimum Length of NDB Final Approach Segment 713
Minimum Length, Intermediate Course 242
Minimum Obstacle Clearance in Initial Approach 235
Minimum Safe Altitude 221
Minimum Safe Altitude, DF 810
Minimum Sector Altitude 221
Minimum Straight Intermediate Course Length 242
Minimums, Alternate 360
Minimums, Approach, Aircraft Category Descriptions 212
Minimums, Circling 351
Minimums, Departure 370, 1208
Minimums, DF 830
Minimums, Establishment 310
Minimums, ILS 935
Minimums, Military 350
Minimums, PAR Final 1025
Minimums, Standard 350
Minimums, Takeoff & Landing 300
Minimums, Takeoff 370
MIRL A5-13
Missed Approach Alignment 271
Missed Approach Area ILS (Heli.) 1153
Missed Approach Area, Combination 277
Missed Approach ILS, Combination 945
Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 274
Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance, ILS 944
Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance, PAR (Heli.) 1168
Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance, PAR 1034
Missed Approach Point (Heli.) 1117
Missed Approach Point 272
Missed Approach Point, ASR (Heli.) 1175
Missed Approach Point, NDB with FAF (Heli.) 1143
Missed Approach Point, RNAV 1532
Missed Approach Point, TACAN, VOR/DME and VOR with FAF (Heli.) 1135
Missed Approach Segment 514, 524

Missed Approach 40:1 Surface 274
Missed Approach 270
Missed Approach, ASR 1048
Missed Approach, DF 814
Missed Approach, End 278
Missed Approach, ILS 940, 942, 943
Missed Approach, Localizer & LDA 957
Missed Approach, NDB 614, 624, 714
Missed Approach, Overhead a Fix 287
Missed Approach, RNAV 1530, 1531
Missed Approach, SDF 1414
Missed Approach, Simultaneous ILS 997
Missed Approach, VOR 413, 424, 514
Mountainous Areas, En Route 1720
Multi-Sensor RNAV 1500, 1501
Navigation Facility, Requirement for Procedures 122
Navigational Gaps 1740
Navy & Marine Corps Procedures Issuance 171
NDB Procedures 600, 700, 710
NDB A1-2
No Transgression Zone, Simultaneous ILS 996
Nonprecision Approach 5
Nonprecision Approach Minimums 330
Nonprecision A1-2
Nonstandard Lighting Systems 344
Nonstandard Procedures 141
Notams, Use for Procedures 150, 172
Obstacle Clearance Analysis A2-10
Obstacle Clearance Areas, En Route 1710
Obstacle Clearance Areas, Penetration Turn Initial Approach 235
Obstacle Clearance Area, Holding 292
Obstacle Clearance Area, NDB 713
Obstacle Clearance Area, VOR 513
Obstacle Clearance Boxes A1-2
Obstacle Clearance Criteria, ILS/PAR A2-10
Obstacle Clearance PAR (Heli.) 1164
Obstacle Clearance Past a Fix 288
Obstacle Clearance 342, A1-2
Obstacle Clearance, Arc Intermediate Segment 243
Obstacle Clearance, ASR Diverse Vectors 1041
Obstacle Clearance, ASR Initial 1041
Obstacle Clearance, ASR Intermediate 1042
Obstacle Clearance, ASR 1044
Obstacle Clearance, Circling Final Approach 260
Obstacle Clearance, DF Final 813
Obstacle Clearance, DR Initial Segment 233
Obstacle Clearance, Emergency Safe Altitude 221
Obstacle Clearance, En Route 1720, 1721
Obstacle Clearance, En Route RNAV 1510, 1511
Obstacle Clearance, Facility Sectors 221
Obstacle Clearance, Final Approach Secondary A2-7

Obstacle Clearance, Holding 293
Obstacle Clearance, ILS 934
Obstacle Clearance, Initial Approach Area 232
Obstacle Clearance, Initial Secondary Area A2-5
Obstacle Clearance, LF 1750
Obstacle Clearance, Localizer & LDA Final 954
Obstacle Clearance, Minimum Safe Altitude 221
Obstacle Clearance, Minimum Sector Altitude 221
Obstacle Clearance, Missed Approach, ILS 944
Obstacle Clearance, NDB Final 613, 713
Obstacle Clearance, NDB 623
Obstacle Clearance, PAR Final 1024
Obstacle Clearance, PAR Missed Approach 1034
Obstacle Clearance, Penetration Turn Initial Approach 235
Obstacle Clearance, Procedure Turn Initial 234
Obstacle clearance, RNAV Feeder 1512
Obstacle Clearance, RNAV Final 1523
Obstacle Clearance, RNAV Initial 1521
Obstacle Clearance, RNAV Intermediate 1522
Obstacle Clearance, SDF 1413
Obstacle Clearance, Secondary Area A2-4, A2-5, A2-7
Obstacle Clearance, Sector, DF 810
Obstacle Clearance, Straight Intermediate Approach Segment 242
Obstacle Clearance, Straight Missed Approach 274
Obstacle Clearance Surface, VDP 251
Obstacle Clearance, TACAN Arc Final 523
Obstacle Clearance, Turning Missed Approach 276
Obstacle Clearance, VDP 251
Obstacle Clearance, VORTAC Arc Final 523
Obstacle Clearance, VOR 413, 513
Obstacle Clearance, VOR/DME Arc Final 523
Obstacle Identification Surface (OIS) 1202, 1203
Obstacle Marking & Lighting 122
Obstacle Problems A2-2
Obstacles Close-in to Fix 289
Obstacles, Secondary Areas A2-2
Obstacle A1-2
Obstacle, Controlling A1-2
Offset COP, En Route 1716
Off-Airport Facilities, Missed Approach 514
Omega, RNAV 1500, 1501
On-Airport Facilities, Missed Approach Point 514
On-Airport VOR, No FAF 400
Operational Advantage A1-2
Optimum A1-2
PAR Missed Approach 1030
PAR Procedures 1010
PAR System Components 1010
PAR 1000
PAR, Simultaneous 1050
Penetration Turn Altitude, DF 813

Penetration Turn Altitude, Initial Approach 235
Penetration Turn Altitude, VOR 423
Penetration Turn Distance vs. Divergence 235
Penetration Turn Initial Approach Obstacle Clearance 234
Penetration Turn Table 235
Penetration Turn, ILS 924
Penetration Turn, NDB 623
Penetration Turn, VOR 423
Penetrations as Initial Segments 230
Pilotage Error Standards ..... Foreword
Point in Space Approach (Heli.) 1107
Positive Course Guidance for Final Approach 250
Positive Course Guidance in Missed Approach 273
Positive Course Guidance, Requirements 211
Positive Course Guidance, RNAV 1502
Precipitous Terrain, Effect on MDA 323, A1-2
Precision Approach Minimums 323
Precision Approach Radar ..... See PAR
Precision Approach 5, A1-2
Primary Areas, En Route 1711
Primary Area A1-2
Primary Area, RNAV 1510
Private Procedures, Eligibility 120
Procedure Construction (Heli.) 1109
Procedure Construction 214
Procedure Identification (Heli.) 1105
Procedure Segments 214
Procedure Turn Altitude, DF 813
Procedure Turn Altitude, NDB 613
Procedure Turn Altitude, VOR 413
Procedure Turn Area 234
Procedure Turn as Initial Segment 230
Procedure Turn Completion Altitude Difference 234
Procedure Turn Distance 234
Procedure Turn, Elimination 234
Procedure Turn, ILS 924
Procedure Turn, Initial Descent Gradient 234
Procedure Turn, Point of Origin 234
Procedure Approval 122
Procedures Cancellation 123
Procedures, Airport Requirements 122
Procedures, Changes to 142
Procedures, Communications Required 122
Procedures, Coordination 123, 130, 150, 172
Procedures, Departure 5
Procedures, Dissemination by Notam 150, 172
Procedures, Effective Date 170
Procedures, Eligibility 120
Procedures, Emergency Dissemination 150, 172
Procedures, Formulation 140
Procedures Identification 160

Procedures, Issuance 171
Procedures, Jurisdiction 131
Procedures, Lighting Required 122
Procedures, Military, Nonstandard 141
Procedures, Navigation Facility Requirement 122
Procedures, NDB ..... See NDB
Procedures, Nonstandard 141
Procedures, Notams for 150
Procedures, Obstacle Marking & Lighting 122
Procedures, Obstructions to 122
Procedures, Publication 170
Procedures, Requests 121
Procedures, Responsibility 130
Procedures, Retention 123
Procedures, Submission 170
Procedures, Types 5
Procedures, Weather Information Required 122
Procedure, Missed Approach 270
Publication of Departure Procedures 1207
Publication of Minimums 311
Publication of Procedures 170
Purpose of TERPS 1
Radar Accuracy 286
Radar Fix 283
Radar Monitor 1046
Radar Pattern Deviation ASR 1045
Radar Patterns, ASR 1041
Radar Procedures 1000
Radar, Airborne 1060
Radar, Airport Surveillance ..... See ASR
Radar, Precision Approach ..... See PAR
Radial Final Approach, TACAN 523
Radial Final Approach, VORTAC 523
Radial Final Approach, VOR/DME 523
Radial Intermediate Segment 240
Radials, Units Used 210
Radius, Arc Intermediate Approach Segment 243
Radius, Arc, Initial Segment 232
Random Routes 1501
Random Vector A1-2
Range, Runway Visual ..... See RVR
Reckoning, Dead A1-2
Reference Facility 1501, 1502, 1504
References A3-5
REIL A5-11
Relocation of GS, PAR 1027
Relocation of the Glide Slope PAR (Heli.) 1166
Remote Altimeter Source, Effect on MDA 323
Requests for Procedures 121
Responsibility for Procedures 130
Retention of Procedures 123

Review, Annual . . . . . Foreword
Rho-Rho, RNAV 1500, 1501
RNAV Descent Angle 1501
RNAV - General 1500
RNAV Procedure Construction 1502
RNAV Procedure Identification 1503
RNAV Routes 1501
ROC A1-2, A2-4, A2-9
Rounding MDA 321, 322
Route Change Waypoints 1505
Routes, Departure 1203, 1205
Route Width, RNAV 1502
Runway Environment A1-2
Runway Lights for RVR Approval 334
Runway Markings 334, 342
Runway Requirements 334
Runway Separation, Parallel ILS 992
Runway Visual Range . . . . . See RVR
Runway Waypoint 1501, 1506
RVR Approval, Runway Requirements 334
RVR Substitute Values 335
RVR Units Used 210
RVR 333
SALS A5-3
Scope of TERPS 1
SDF Procedures 1400
Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance, Final Approach A2-7
Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance, Initial A2-5
Secondary Area Obstacle Clearance, Intermediate A2-4
Secondary Area Width, Final Approach A2-6
Secondary Areas A1-2, A2-1, A2-3
Secondary Areas, En Route 1712
Secondary Area, Missed Approach, ILS 944
Secondary Area, RNAV 1510
Sector Altitudes, Minimum 221
Segment A1-2
Segment Length, PAR 1014
Segments of a Procedure 214
Segment, Initial 230
Segment, Intermediate Approach 240
Segments, RNAV 1502
Selection, Altitude 231
Service Volume A1-2
Simultaneous Approach 5
Simultaneous ILS Procedures 990
Simultaneous ILS 901
Simultaneous PAR 1050
Simultaneous Radar Procedures 1000
Size-Circling Final Approach Area 260
Size, Penetration Turn Initial Approach Area 235
Slope, ILS Surfaces 931

Special Procedures Cancellation 123
Speeds, Units Used 210
SSALF 341, A5-4
SSALS 341, A5-4
Standard ALS A5-1
Standard Lighting System 341
Standard Minimums 350
Station Elevation, RNAV 1505
Station Passage Fix Error 286
Stepdown Fix 288
Stepdown Fix, NDB 613, 623
Stepdown Fix, VOR 413, 423
Steps, MEA 1740
Straight Departures 1203
Straight Intermediate Approach Segment 242
Straight Line Extension of GS A2-9
Straight Missed Approach Area (Heli.) 1118
Straight Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance (Heli.) 1119
Straight Missed Approach 273
Straight Missed Approach, ILS 942, 944
Straight Missed Approach, PAR (Heli.) 1169
Straight Missed Approach, PAR 1032, 1034
Straight Missed Approach, RNAV 1533
Straight-in Alignment VOR 513
Straight-in Alignment, NDB Final 613
Straight-in Approach Minimums 321
Straight-in Approach Missed Approach Point 514
Straight-in Approach 5
Straight-in Approach, VOR 400
Straight-in Descent Gradient 513
Straight-in Descent Gradient, NDB 713
Straight-in Final Approach Alignment, VOR 413, 513
Straight-in Final Approach, SDF 1413
Straight-in Minimums 330, 350
Straight-in NDB Alignment 613
Straight-in NDB Approach 600
Straight-in NDB Final 713
Straight-in NDB Missed Approach 714
Straight-in NDB Obstacle Clearance 613
Straight-in NDB Procedures 600
Straight-in Obstacle Clearance, ASR 1044
Straight-in Obstacle Clearance, NDB Final 713
Straight-in Obstacle Clearance, NDB 623
Straight-in Obstacle Clearance, VOR 413, 423, 513
Straight-in Procedures Identification 161
Submission of Procedures 170
Surface, ILS Final Approach 931
Surface, PAR Final 1021
System Accuracy Factors ..... Foreword
System Accuracy, En Route 1711, 1712
System Accuracy, Turning Areas 1713

System Components, ILS 910
System Components, PAR 1010
System Components, Simultaneous ILS 991
TACAN Procedures 500
TACAN RNAV Systems 1500, 1501
Takeoff Minimums (Heli.) 1129
Takeoff Minimums 370
Tangents A4-1
Tangent Point 1501
Tangent Point Distance 1501
TCH A2-9
TCH, ILS 936
TCH, PAR 1026
TDZ A1-2, A5-7
Teardrop Penetration Initial Approach 235
Teardrop Penetration, VOR 420
Teardrop Procedure Turn, Angle of Divergence 234
Template, Turning Area 1715
Terminal Area Fixes 280
Terminal Turning Area, RNAV 1520
Termination Point, En Route 1711, 1712
Termination Point, RNAV 1510
Terminology (Heli.) 1101
Terrain, Precipitous A1-2
Threshold Crossing Height, ILS 936
Time Difference 1501
Touchdown Zone Elevation A1-2
Touchdown Zone A1-2
TPD/WP Limitation, RNAV 1510
Transition Level A1-2
Transitional Surfaces, ILS 932
Transitional Surfaces, PAR (Heli.) 1163
Transitional Surfaces, PAR 932
Transitional Surface, SDF 1413
Transmission Interval, DF 820
Transmissometer Locations, RVR 334
Turning Areas, En Route 1713, 1714
Turning Areas, RNAV 1502
Turning Departures 1203
Turning Missed Approach Area (Heli.) 1120
Turning Missed Approach Area 275
Turning Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance (Heli.) 1121
Turning Missed Approach Obstacle Clearance 276
Turning Missed Approach, ILS 943, 944
Turning Missed Approach, PAR (Heli.) 1170
Turning Missed Approach, PAR 1033, 1034
Turning Missed Approach, RNAV 1534
Turns, Early 1204, 1205
Turn Anticipation 1501
Turn, Penetration ..... See Penetration Turn
Turn, Procedure ..... See Procedure Turn

Turn, Waypoint 1501
Type of Procedure (Heli.) 1103
Types of Procedures 5
UHF/VHF DF & Height Altitude Penetration A2-8
Units of Measurement 210
Unstandard Lighting Systems 344
Variations of Lighting Systems 344
Vectors, ASR, Diverse 1041
Vector, Diverse A1-2
Vector, Random A1-2
VHF Fixes 1761
VHF Obstacle Clearance Areas 1710
Visibilities, Units Used 210
Visibility Credit for Lights 340
Visibility Credit (Heli.) 1128
Visibility Minimums 330
Visibility Reduction 343
Visibility Reduction, Operational Conditions 342
Visibility Values for RVR 335
Visibility (Heli.) 1127
Visibility, Departure 1208
Visual Descent Point (VDP) 251
Visual Portion of the Final Approach Segment 251
Volume, Service A1-2
VOR Procedures 500
VOR/DME Procedures 500
VOR/DME RNAV Systems 1500, 1501
VOR/TACAN Accuracy 285
VORTAC Procedures 523
VORTAC RNAV Systems 1500, 1501
VOR, On Airport, No FAF 400
VOR Radial Waypoints 1505
Waypoint Displacement Area 1501
Waypoint, Instrument Approach 1501, 1502, 1505
Weather Information Required 122
Width of Final Approach Secondary Area A2-6
Width of Intermediate Secondary Area A2-3
Width, Arc Intermediate Approach Segment 243
Width, ASR Final 1044
Width, ASR Intermediate 1042
Width, DR Initial Approach Segment 233
Width, ILS Final Approach Area 930
Width, Initial Approach Segment 232
Width, Intermediate Segment (with Procedure Turn) 244
Width, PAR Final 1020
Width, Straight Intermediate Segment 242
Width, Straight Missed Approach Area 273
Width, Turning Missed Approach 275
Word Meaning 6
Zone of No Transgression, Simultaneous ILS 990

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 1

2/6/79

Army ..... TM 95-226
Navy ..... OPNAV Inst 3722.16C
Air Force ..... AFM 55-9
Coast Guard ..... CG 318

Cancellation Date: RETAIN

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. In addition to minor revisions, clarifications, and editorial corrections, this change transmits a new Table 6, Effect of HAT/HAA on Visibility Minimums (chapter 2), and adds new Chapter 12, Departure Procedures.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
iii thru vi	7/76	iii thru vi	2/79
xvii thru xx	7/76	xvii thru xxi	2/79
1 thru 8	7/76	1	7/76
		2 thru 8	2/79
11 thru 16	7/76	11 and 12	2/79
		13	7/76
		14 thru 16	2/79
19 thru 30	7/76	19 thru 29	2/79
		30	7/76
33 and 34	7/76	33	2/79
		34	7/76
39 thru 44	7/76	39 thru 44	2/79
53 and 54	7/76	53	7/76
		54	2/79
75 thru 92	7/76	75 thru 92	2/79
95 thru 102	7/76	95 thru 102	2/79
105 thru 110	7/76	105	7/76
		106 thru 110	2/79
113 (and 114)	7/76	113 thru 124	2/79
Appendix 2		Appendix 2	
Pages 1 and 2	7/76	Pages 1 and 2	2/79
5 and 6	7/76	5 and 6	2/79
11 and 12	7/76	11 and 12	2/79
Appendix 4		Appendix 4	
Pages 1 thru 6	7/76	Pages 1 thru 6	2/79
Appendix 6		Appendix 6	
Pages 11 and 12	7/76	Page 11	7/76
		12	2/79

J. A. Ferrarese

J. A. FERRARESE, Acting Director, Flight Standards Service

Distribution: ZFS-827 **Initiated By:** AFS-700

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 2

Army ..... TM 95-226
Navy ..... OPNAV Inst 3722.16C
Air Force..... AFM 55-9
Coast Guard ..... CG 318

10/22/79

Cancellation Date: Retain

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. Provide artwork for Figure 101 and related page revisions inadvertently omitted in the initial printing process of Change 1.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
7 and 8	2/79	7	2/79
		8	10/79
91 thru 94	7/76	91	7/76
		92 and 93	10/79
		94	7/76

Kenneth S. Hunt

KENNETH S. HUNT
Director of Flight Operations

Distribution: ZFS-827

Initiated By: AFO-700

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 3

Army .....TM 95-226
Navy ... OPNAV Inst 3722.16C
Air Force ..... AFM 55-9
Coast Guard ..... CG 318

6/3/80

Cancellation Date: Retain

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. This change incorporates a new Chapter 17, Enroute Criteria into the TERPs handbook and is concurred in by the TERPs signatories. These criteria formerly were contained in FAA Handbook 8260.19, Flight Procedures and Airspace, Chapter 8, Criteria. This administrative action focalizes all instrument procedures related criteria into the TERPs handbook for reasons of homogeneity. A change to 8260.19 will be issued to withdraw Chapter 8. TERPS Chapters 13, 14, 15, and 16 are reserved for future use.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
xvii thru xviii	2/79	xvii thru xxiii	6/80
xix	7/76	Chapter 17	
xx thru xxi	2/79	Pages 173 thru 187	6/80
Appendix 6		Appendix 6	
Pages 1 thru 11	7/76	Pages 1 thru 20	6/80
12	2/79		
13 thru 20	7/76		

KENNETH S. HUNT
Director of Flight Operations

Distribution: ZFS-827

Initiated By: AFO-700/500

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 4

4/1/83

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. This change updates references to responsible FAA organizations; defines the use of shall, should, and may; removes reference to L/MFR; adds Chapter 14 SDF Procedures: adds Figure 129B PAR, corrects minor typographical errors; and completely updates Appendix 5, Approach Lighting Systems and Appendix 6, Alphabetical Index.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
v thru xvi	7/76	v thru xxv	4/1/83
xvii thru xxiii	6/80		
1	7/76	1 thru 26	4/1/83
2 and 3	2/79	29 thru 34	4/1/83
4	7/76	37 and 38	4/1/83
5(and 6)	2/79	39 thru 44-1(and 44-2)	4/1/83
7	2/79	65 thru 68	4/1/83
8	10/79	77 and 78	4/1/83
9 thru 11	7/76	87 thru 90	4/1/83
12	2/79	99 and 100	4/1/83
13	7/76	137 and 138	4/1/83
14 thru 16	2/79	175 and 176	4/1/83
17 and 18	7/76	181 and 182	4/1/83
19 and 20	2/79		
21 and 22	7/76		
23 thru 26	2/79		
29	2/79		
30 thru 32	7/76		
33	2/79		
34	7/76		
37 and 38	7/76		
39 thru 44	2/79		
65 thru 68	7/76		
77	7/76		
78	2/79		
87	2/79		
88	7/76		
89 and 90	2/79		
99	7/76		
100	2/79		
175 and 176	6/80		
181 and 182	6/80		

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AVN-200/AFO-700

PAGE CONTROL CHART CONTINUED

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
APPENDIX 2		APPENDIX 2	
3 and 4	7/76	3 and 4	4/1/83
9 and 10	7/76	9 thru 17(and 18)	4/1/83
11	2/79		
12	7/76		
13 thru 16	7/76		
APPENDIX 5		APPENDIX 5	
1 thru 10	7/76	1 thru 8	4/1/83
APPENDIX 6		APPENDIX 6	
1 thru 20	6/80	1 thru 19(and 20)	4/1/83

Kenneth S. Hunt
Director of Flight Operations

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 5

Army. . . . . TM 95-226
Navy. . . . . OPNAV Inst 3722.16C
Air Force. . . . . AFM 55-9
Coast Guard. . . . . CG 318

11/15/83

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. This change updates references to Federal agencies, corrects distribution lists, and makes minor changes to criteria references which were made necessary by the automation of procedures development. Several minor typographical errors are also corrected.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
iii - iv	2/79	iii - iv	11/15/83
v - vi	4/1/83	v	11/15/83
		vi	4/1/83
5 (and 6)	4/1/83	5 (and 6)	11/15/83
17 and 18	4/1/83	17	11/15/83
		18	4/1/83
23 and 24	4/1/83	23	4/1/83
		24	11/15/83
27 and 28	2/79	27	11/15/83
		28	2/79
31 and 32	4/1/83	31	11/15/83
		32	4/1/83
33 and 34	4/1/83	33 through 34-2	11/15/83
181 and 182	4/1/83	181	4/1/83
		182	11/15/83

William T. Brennan
William T. Brennan
ting Director of Flight Operations

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AVN-200/AFO-200

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 6

1/27/84

Army. . . . . TM 95-226
Navy. . . . . OPNAV Inst 3722.16C
Air Force. . . . . AFM 55-9
Coast Guard. . . . . CG 318

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. This change corrects three errors included in previous changes. It deletes the requirement to apply excessive length of final penalty to circling procedures, includes the formula for one-half the width of the primary area in figure 65, and replaces incorrect NATO STANDARD (C) lighting figure with figures showing the two systems being used.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
37 and 38	4/1/83	37 38	4/1/83 1/27/84
65 and 66	4/1/83	65 66	4/1/83 1/27/84
APPENDIX 5 1 and 2	4/1/83	APPENDIX 5 1 and 2	1/27/84

William T. Brennan
Acting Director of Flight Operations

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AFO-230

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 7

Army	TM 95-226	12/6/84
Navy	OPNAV Inst 3722 16C	
Air Force	AFM 55-9	
Coast Guard	. . . . . .CG 318	

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. This change updates Navy distribution requirements, updates portions of the Table of Contents, revises reference to aircraft categories, provides easier to follow instructions on dead reckoning (DR) initial segments, gives revised criteria on step-down fixes, revised holding areas/obstacle clearance, revised standard alternate minimums, a revised Section 1 for PAR straight missed approach, and corrects several typographical errors in references in Chapter 17.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
v	11/15/83	v	12/6/84
vi	4/1/83	vi	12/6/84
vii	4/1/83	vii	4/1/83
viii	4/1/83	viii	12/6/84
xxi & xxii	4/1/83	xxi & xxii	12/6/84
xxiii	4/1/83	xxiii	4/1/83
xxiv	4/1/83	xxiv	12/6/84
xxv (and xxvi)	4/1/83	xxv (and xxvi)	12/6/84
7	4/1/83	7	12/6/84
8	4/1/83	8	4/1/83
11 through 14	4/1/83	11 through 14	12/6/84
33	11/15/83	33	12/6/84
34	11/15/83	34	12/6/84
35 & 36	7/76	35 & 36	12/6/84
41 & 42	4/1/83	41 & 42	12/6/84
89	4/1/83	89	4/1/83
90	4/1/83	90	12/6/84
173	6/80	173	12/6/84
174	6/80	174	6/80
177	6/80	177	12/6/84
178	6/80	178	6/80
179	6/80	179	12/6/84
180	6/80	180	6/80

Kenneth S. Hunt
Director of Flight Operations

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AVN-200/AFO-200

CHANGE

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 8

Army. . . . . TM 95-226
Navy. . . . . OPNAV Inst 3722.16C
Air Force. . . . . AFM 55-9
Coast Guard. . . . . CG 318

3/24/86

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

PURPOSE. This change adds new criteria to TERPS to permit course reversal using non-collocated navigational aids and procedure turn criteria where the turn fix is other than the facility or final approach fix (FAF).

PAGE CONTROL CHART

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
vii	4/1/83	vii	4/1/83
viii	12/6/84	viii	3/24/86
xxi and xxii	12/6/84	xxi and xxii	3/24/86
15 and 16	4/1/83	15 and 16	3/24/86
		16-1	3/24/86
		16-2	3/24/86
17	11/15/83	17	3/24/86
18	4/1/83	18	3/24/86
19 and 20	4/1/83	19 and 20	3/24/86
		20-1	3/24/86
		20-2	3/24/86
21 and 22	4/1/83	21	3/24/86
		22	4/1/83

William T. Brennan
Acting Director of Flight Standards

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AFO-200/AVN-200

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402

CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 9

ARMY . . . . . TM 11-2557-26
NAVY . . OPNAV INST 3722.16B
USAF . . . . . AFM 55-9
USCG . . . . . UNNUMBERED

7/26/90

SUBJ: UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)

1. PURPOSE. This change transmits Chapter 15, Area Navigation (RNAV), to the United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS), Order 8260.3B; Department of the Army Technical Manual, TM 11-2557-26; Department of the Navy, OPNAV INST 3722.16B; Department of the Air Force Manual, AFM 55-9; and the United States Coast Guard manual, unnumbered.

2. SUMMARY OF CHANGES. Chapter 15, Area Navigation (RNAV), is a major change and addition of criteria. Appendix 6 is revised to include additional terminology. The Table of Contents is revised to include chapter 15 with additional figures and tables.

3. DISPOSITION OF TRANSMITTAL. Retain this page after changed pages have been filed.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
vii	4/1/83	vii thru xxix (and xxx)	7/26/90
viii	3/24/86		
ix thru xx	4/1/82		
xxi, xxii	3/24/86		
xxiii	4/1/83		
xxiv thru xxv (and xxvi)	12/6/84		
		15-1 thru 15-32	7/26/90
Appendix 6 1 thru 19 (and 20)	4/1/83	Appendix 6 1 thru 21 (and 22)	7/26/90

DC Beaudette
Daniel C. Beaudette
Director, Flight Standards Service

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AVN-540/AFS-420

CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 10

ARMY . . . . . TM 11-2557-26
NAVY . . OPNAV INST 3722.16B
USAF . . . . . AFM 55-9
USCG . . . . . UNNUMBERED

12/4/90

SUBJ: **UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)**

1. PURPOSE. This change makes minor changes to table 9, chapter 3, Civil Straight-in Minimums, as a follow-up to Action Notice A8260.6. The change removes reference to middle marker (MM) in note 3 under nonprecision minimums; references operations specifications regarding MM under precision approach (line 14); and reduces "D" category runway visual range (RVR) in line 13, precision approach.

2. DISPOSITION OF TRANSMITTAL. Retain this page after changed page has been filed.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
43-44	4/1/83	43	12/4/90
		44	4/1/83

William C. Withycombe
William C. Withycombe
Acting Director, Flight Standards Service

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AVN-540/AFS-420

CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 11

ARMY . . . . . TM 11-2557-26
NAVY . . OPNAV INST 3722.16B
USAF . . . . . AFM 55-9
USCG . . . . . UNNUMBERED

5/7/92

SUBJ: **UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)**

1. PURPOSE. This change refines criteria in paragraph 323b for adjustments to minimums required for obstacle clearance necessary when utilizing a remote altimeter setting source (RASS). The method in which procedures specialists apply required adjustments is changed. The concepts of non-homogeneous weather and precipitous terrain are absorbed within the computational formula and further adjustments for those situations are not required. Figure 37B on page 41 was renumbered 37D to accommodate two new figures, 37B and 37C, page 38-2.

2. DISPOSITION OF TRANSMITTAL. Retain this page after changed page has been filed.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
xxv-xxvi	7/26/90	xxv	
		xxvi	7/26/90
37	4/1/83	37	4/1/83
38	1/27/84	38	
		38-1	
		38-2	
41	12/6/84	41	
42	12/6/84	42	12/6/84

Thomas C. Accardi
Director, Flight Standards Service

Distribution: **ZVS-827**

Initiated By: **AVN-540/AFS-420**

CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 12

ARMY . . . . . TM 11-2557-26
NAVY . . OPNAV INST 3722.16B
USAF . . . . . AFM 55-9
USCG . . . . . UNNUMBERED

5/21/92

SUBJ: **UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)**

1. PURPOSE. This change provides a descent gradient table for high altitude jet penetrations using arcs of less than 15 miles (par 232a). Table 10 is changed to provide 1/4 mile credit for ODALS on a precision straight-in. Appendix 2 is changed to provide specific guidance to computed required procedural parameters for some military PAR systems.

2. DISPOSITION OF TRANSMITTAL. Retain this page after changed page has been filed.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
11-12	12/6/84	11	5/21/92
		12	~~12/6/84~~
		12-1 (and 12-2)	12/6/84
~~43-44~~	~~12/4/90~~	~~43~~	~~12/4/90~~
	4/1/83	44	5/21/92
Appendix 2 11-12	4/1/83	Appendix 2 11	4/1/83
		12	5/21/92

Thomas C. Accardi
Director, Flight Standards Service

Distribution:

ZVS-827

Initiated By:

AVN-540/AFS-420

CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 13

3/12/93

ARMY ..... TM 95-226
NAVY ..... OPNAV INST 3722.16C
USAF ..... AFM 55-9
USCG ..... UNNUMBERED

SUBJ: **UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)**

1. PURPOSE. This change adds criteria to chapter 9, section 9, for triple simultaneous ILS procedures. Previously, this section covered only dual simultaneous ILS procedures. Existing figure 96 becomes figure 96A. Figure 96B is new. Existing figure 97 becomes figure 97A. In figure 97A, coverage of normal operating zones has been increased for clarity. Figure 97B is new. This change also includes corrections to change 12, published 5/21/92.

2. DISPOSITION OF TRANSMITTAL. Retain this page after changed page has been filed.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
xv	7/26/90	xv	3/12/93
xvi	7/26/90	xvi	7/26/90
xxiii	7/26/90	xxiii	3/12/93
xxiv	7/26/90	xxiv	3/12/93
xxv	5/7/92	xxv	5/7/92
xxvi	7/26/90	xxvi	3/12/93
xxix (and xxx)	7/26/90	xxix (and xxx)	3/12/93
11	5/21/92	11	3/12/93
12	5/21/92	12	5/21/92
12-1 (and 12-2)	12/6/84	12-1 (and 12-2)	5/21/92
13	12/6/84	13	12/6/84
14	12/6/84	14	3/12/93
83	7/76	83	7/76
84-85 (and 86)	2/79	84-87 (and 88)	3/12/93
Appendix 2		Appendix 2	
11	4/1/83	11	4/1/83
12	5/21/92	12	4/1/83
		12-1 (and 12-2)	3/12/93

Thomas C. Accardi
Director, Flight Standards Service

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AVN-540/AFS-420

CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

8260.3B CHG 14

3/12/93

ARMY ..... TM 95-226
NAVY ..... OPNAV INST 3722.16C
USAF ..... AFM 55-9
USCG ..... CG 318

SUBJ: **UNITED STATES STANDARD FOR TERMINAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES (TERPS)**

1. **PURPOSE. This change refines criteria in chapter 11, section 3, Takeoff and Landing Minimums, to more closely align with FAR 97.3(d.1) and applicable military regulations. Separate criteria have been developed for computing visibility for "copter-to-runway" approaches to minimum visibility values of one-half the corresponding Cat "A" fixed-wing value.**

2. **DISPOSITION OF TRANSMITTAL. Retain this page after changed page has been filed.**

PAGE CONTROL CHART

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
101	2/79	101	2/79
102	2/79	102	3/12/93
103	7/76	103	3/12/93
104	7/76	104	3/12/93

Thomas C. Accardi
Director, Flight Standards Service

Distribution: ZVS-827

Initiated By: AVN-540/ AFS-420

*U.S. G.P.O.:1993-343-273:80151